

Numeral Classifier Structures in Mandarin Chinese

Niina Ning Zhang

National Chung Cheng University

<http://www.ccunix.ccu.edu.tw/~lngnz/> Oct. 3, 2012

This monograph, *Numeral Classifier Structures in Mandarin Chinese*, addresses the fundamental syntactic issues of numeral classifier constructions within the framework of generative grammar, based on a thorough study of a typical classifier language, Mandarin Chinese. It aims to clarify three major issues: the relationship between classifiers and the count-mass contrast, the relationship between classifiers and plural markers, and the constituency and thus the syntactic structures of numeral classifier constructions. First, the book shows that the contrast between count and mass is not binary. Instead, there are two independently attested features: Numerability, the ability of a noun to combine with a numeral directly, and Delimitability, the ability of a noun to be modified by a delimitive (size, shape, or boundary) modifier. The positive value of Numerability alone indicates the count status of a nominal, but it is the combination of the negative values of both features that indicates the mass status of a nominal. The theory proposed in this book enables us to identify count and mass nominals in any language that has attributive numerals and delimitive modifiers. Although all nouns in Chinese are non-count nouns, there is still a mass/non-mass contrast, with mass nouns selected by individuating classifiers and non-mass nouns selected by individual classifiers. Second, it is possible to express number features by morphological forms of classifiers in a classifier language. Third, for numeral expressions, while individual, individuating, and kind classifier constructions are right-branching, partitive and collective classifier constructions are left-branching. The book explains formal contrasts between languages with and without numeral classifiers.

Word count: 90639

Acknowledgments	4
Abbreviations	4
Chapter 1 Introduction	5
Chapter 2 Classifiers and Countability	
2.1. Introduction	8
2.2. Decomposing countability	8
2.2.1 Identifying two new features syntagmatically	8
2.2.2 Defining count and mass by the two features	13
2.2.3 Attesting the two features in co-occurrence restrictions	14
2.2.4 Attesting the two features in pronominalization	16
2.2.5 Attesting the two features in shifts	16
2.2.6 Numerability and number	20
2.3. The two features in nouns	23
2.3.1 Numerability of nouns	23
2.3.2 Delimitability of nouns	26
2.4. The two features in unit words	27
2.4.1 Classification of unit words	27
2.4.2 Unit words as the unique Numerability bearers in Chinese	35

2.4.3 Delimitability of unit words	36
2.4.4 Two special <i>yi</i> -X-NP constructions	37
2.5. Numerability and quantifiers in Chinese	42
2.5.1 Quantifiers that occur with [+Numerable]	43
2.5.2 Quantifiers that occur with [-Numerable]	43
2.5.3 The ambiguous cases	44
2.6. Remarks on the studies of countability	45
2.6.1 What's new?	45
2.6.2 The semantic approach to the count-mass contrast	47
2.6.3 The morphological approach to the count-mass contrast	48
2.6.4 The multi-criteria approach	50
2.6.5 Other non-binary analyses	50
2.6.6 Experimental perspective	54
2.7. Remarks on the studies of CLs in numeral expressions	55
2.7.1 The syntactic foundations of the presence of CLs	55
2.7.2 How special are the CLs of CL languages?	55
2.7.3 The sortal-mensural contrast and CLs that do not classify	57
2.7.4 The unreliability of the <i>de</i> and pre-CL adjective arguments	62
2.7.5 Experimental perspective	64
2.8. Chapter summary	65
Chapter 3 Classifiers and Plurality	
3.1. Introduction	66
3.1.1 The independent status of number	66
3.1.2 General number and the optionality of number marking	67
3.1.3 Abundant plural	69
3.2. Unit plurality	70
3.2.1 RUWNs as unit plurality-denoting nominals	70
3.2.2 The productivity	70
3.2.3 The problems of the distributive plural analysis	73
3.2.4 <i>Yi</i> 'one', definiteness, and specificity of RUWNs	74
3.2.5 Numerability of number markers	77
3.3. Unit singularity	80
3.3.1 SUWNs as unit singularity-denoting nominals	80
3.3.2 The productivity	81
3.3.3 The problems of the numeral-deletion analysis	82
3.3.4 The issue of definiteness and specificity of SUWNs	84
3.4. Morphological and semantic markedness	86
3.5. PL marking in CL languages	88
3.5.1 Reviewing Sanches-Greenberg's Generalization	88
3.5.2 PL marking strategies in CL languages	90
3.6. Chapter summary	92
Chapter 4 The Syntactic Constituency of Numeral Expressions	
4.1. Introduction	93
4.2. Four arguments for the non-unified analysis	94
4.2.1 The scope of a left-peripheral modifier	94
4.2.2 The effect of adjective-association	96
4.2.3 The independence of syntactic function	98
4.2.4 Semantic selection	100

4.2.5 Two possible structures	102
4.3. Three invalid arguments	104
4.3.1 The adjacency of a numeral and a unit word	104
4.3.2 The positions of the partitives <i>duo</i> ‘more’ and <i>ban</i> ‘half’	105
4.3.3 The movement argument	108
4.4. Remarks on a semantic mapping analysis	109
4.5. Constituency and the occurrence of <i>de</i> following a unit word	113
4.5.1 Background	113
4.5.2 The quantity-reading condition	114
4.5.3 Different sources of <i>de</i>	117
4.6. Chapter summary	122
 Chapter 5 Syntactic Representations of Numeral Expressions	
5.1. Introduction	123
5.2. The projection of UnitP	123
5.2.1 Unit words and the head of UnitP	123
5.2.2 The Spec-Head relation between a numeral and a unit word	127
5.2.3 The surface position of numerals and other quantifiers	129
5.3. The co-occurrence of QuantP, UnitP, and NumP	132
5.3.1 CLs and NumP	132
5.3.2 Certain attested numeral and quantifier constructions	134
5.4. The projection of DelP	137
5.4.1 Delimitive adjectives and DelP	137
5.4.2 The syntax and morphology of pre-unit-word adjectives	138
5.5. The right- and left-branching numeral constructions in Chinese	142
5.5.1 The representations of the right-branching structure	143
5.5.2 The representation of the left-branching structure	144
5.5.3 The occurrence of <i>de</i> and the order of adjectives	147
5.5.4 The structure of attributive numeral expressions	150
5.6. Various realizations of the head of UnitP	151
5.6.1 Representing noun types and shifts of countability	151
5.6.2 Major typological patterns of null head of UnitP	153
5.6.3 A comparison with numeral-oriented approaches	155
5.7. Chapter summary	158
 Chapter 6 Noun-Classifier Compounds and Place-Holder Classifiers	
6.1. Introduction	160
6.2. Basic properties of N-CL compounds	161
6.2.1 The components of N-CL compounds	161
6.2.2 The distributions and readings of N-CL compounds	163
6.3. Delimitability, Numerability and N-CL compounds	163
6.3.1 Compound-internal CL as a realization of Del	163
6.3.2 The non-count status of an N-CL compound	165
6.4. The relations between the higher and the lower CLs	165
6.4.1 No multiple individuating	165
6.4.2 No multiple counting-units	166
6.4.3 The semantic interactions between the two CLs	166
6.5. The place-holder CLs	167
6.5.1 <i>Ge</i> as the higher CL	167
6.5.2 The CL copying constructions	169

6.5.3 The alternation possibility	170
6.5.4 The significance of place-holder CLs	171
6.6. The syntactic representations of N-CL numeral expressions	171
6.6.1 The constructions without a place-holder CL	171
6.6.2 The constructions with a place-holder CL	174
6.7. Chapter summary	176
Chapter 7 Conclusions	177
References	181
Index	

Acknowledgment

To be updated.

Abbreviations

To be completed.

Chapter 1 Introduction

Three kinds of new knowledge are offered to you in this book: new observations, new generalizations, and new analyses.

The facts discussed in this book are about a kind of formatives, numeral classifiers. The word *zhi* in the Mandarin Chinese example in (1a) is a numeral classifier (unless specified otherwise, I will call this use of classifier CL henceforth). A CL occurs with a numeral and an NP, such as, respectively, *san* ‘three’ and *bi* ‘pen’ in (1a). In (1b), *di* is also a CL.

- (1) a. Yaoyao kanjian-le san zhi bi.
Yaoyao see-PRF three CL pen
‘Yaoyao saw three pens.’
b. Yaoyao kanjian-le san di you.
Yaoyao see-PRF three CL oil
‘Yaoyao saw three drops of oil’.

Some languages have CLs and some do not. Some languages have the counterpart of the CL in (1b), but not that in (1a). From the English translations of the two examples we can see that English has the word *drop* to correlate with the CL *di* in (1b), but does not have a counterpart to the CL *zhi* in (1a).¹ CLs like *zhi* are called individual measures in Chao (1968: 585). I call such CLs individual CLs. CLs like *di* are called individuating CLs in this book (they are grouped into partitive measures in Chao 1968). Languages that have both types of CLs, such as Mandarin Chinese, Japanese, and Mayan languages, are called CL languages.

Mandarin Chinese is a typical CL language. This is because, first, in this language, the occurrence of a CL in a numeral expression (or ‘numeral-plus-noun construction’, as it is called in Gil 2008) is obligatory (except in idiomatic expressions, compounds, or certain list contexts), whereas in some other CL languages such as Indonesian, the occurrence of a CL in numeral expressions can be optional in certain constructions. Second, the word order of a numeral expression is consistent in this language: the CL follows the numeral and precedes the noun, and there is no other order variant for the three elements. This is different from Japanese and Korean. Third, the three elements are next to each other, and thus no other functional elements such as case markers intervene in the numeral expression. This is again different from languages such as Japanese and Korean. These characteristics of Mandarin Chinese represent a simple pattern of numeral expressions. In this book, we try to give a thorough syntactic analysis of CL constructions of this simple pattern.

One hypothesis about the contrast between CL languages and other languages is that nouns like *bi* ‘pen’ in Chinese are mass nouns, therefore, like the word *oil* in English, such nouns also require CLs. Accordingly the function of individual CLs like *zhi* in (1a) is to individuate mass. Such a hypothesis is falsified in this book. While falsifying problematic hypotheses like this, we have developed a new understanding of the relation between mass nouns and other types of nouns. The traditional binary count-mass division is shown to be not fine-grained enough to reach an acceptable level of descriptive adequacy. Instead, we have identified two new properties (or called features, in a technical way) to capture the contrasts among four basic types of nominals, represented by the English words *pen*, *oil*, *belief*, and *furniture*. We argue that Chinese *bi* ‘pen’ correlates with the *furniture*-type only, not with the

¹ The word *head* in the English example (i), and the word *Stück* in the German example (ii) function as a CL. (i) means the same as *four cattles*. But such examples are not systematic in the languages.

(i) four head cattle (ii) vier Stück Vieh
four piece cattle
‘four cattles’

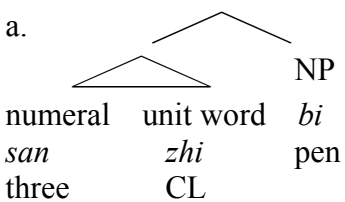
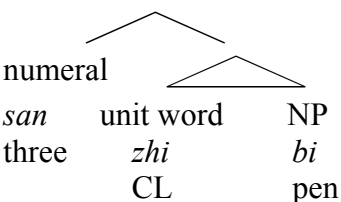
oil-type. There are also languages in which neither the *zhi*-type of CLs in (1a) nor the *di*-type of CLs in (1b) occurs in numeral expressions, in contrast to both English and Chinese. For instance, it is perfect to say *txabĩa apeta* ‘three blood’ in Yudja (an indigenous language spoken in Brazil; Lima 2010; 2011). This type of languages has been generally ignored in the literature, although their existence has been noted since early forties (Whorf 1941). While introducing and discussing examples of these under-studied languages, we are informed that the shape of an elephant looks or feels like not only a pillar and a fan, but also a rope!

Another influential hypothesis regarding the contrast between CL languages and other languages is that the CL *zhi* in (1a) is required to correlate with the plural marker *s* in the English word *pens*. It has been declared that CL languages have no way to encode the contrast between singularity and plurality. This generalization is shown to be wrong. In this book, we report the fact that Mandarin Chinese does have a systematic and productive way to encode the contrast. In (2a), the reduplicate CL *pian-pian* introduces a plural reading exclusively, and in (2b), the simple form of the CL *pian*, in the absence of any numeral, introduces a singular reading exclusively.

- (2) a. He-li piao-zhe pian-pian shuye.
 river-in float-PRG CL-RED leaf
 ‘There are many leaves floating on the river.’
 Not: ‘There is a leaf floating on the river.’
 b. He-li piao-zhe pian shuye.
 river-in float-PRG CL leaf
 ‘There is a leaf floating on the river.’
 Not ‘There are leaves floating on the river.’

We show that all CLs can be reduplicated to encode unit-plurality in Mandarin Chinese. The semantic type of the encoded plural is abundant plural, which is attested widely, including in non-CL languages such as English. We also provide a series of arguments to falsify the traditional assumption that constructions like (2b) are derived by a numeral-deletion operation. Cross-linguistically, this book also investigates the interactions between plural markers and numerals, the structural relation between plural markers and CLs, and the correlation between semantic and morphological markedness of plural markings.

As we have seen, numeral expressions in CL languages are composed of three basic elements: a numeral, a CL, and an NP. It has long been unclear how these three elements are organized in the structure. Which two of them are combined first before the third element is integrated? Some propose the structure in (3a), and others propose the structure in (3b), for the numeral expression in (1a), for example.

- (3) a. 
 numeral unit word *bi*
san *zhi* pen
 three CL
 b. 
 numeral unit word NP
san *zhi* *bi*
 three CL pen

Not many arguments can be found to support either proposal, although this is a basic issue of the syntax of numeral expressions. In this book, all arguments that we can find are shown to be problematic. New arguments are looked for. Considering a large range of numeral expressions, and investigating the formal properties that are directly relevant to constituency, we reach a non-unified analysis: although CLs like those in (1) exhibit the right-branching structure, as in (3b), some other types of CLs exhibit the left-branching

structure, as in (3a).

One more fresh set of facts explored in this book is a special type of compound, which has not been seriously discussed in any morphology book: the one that is composed of a noun and a CL, such as *hua-duo* ‘flower’ in (4).

- (4) Yaoyao na-le san ge hua-duo.
Yaoyao take-PRF three CL flower-CL
‘Yaoyao took three flowers.’

In (4), the CL *ge* is still necessary to occur between the numeral and the compound. The syntax and semantics of this kind of compound confirm that the existence of individual CLs with numerals in CL languages is syntactic, and that the position of such CLs is a functional head position, which may be taken by a place-holder, a semantically vacuous element.

Although we are not boasting that we have got the whole shape and structure of an elephant, I mean, numeral CL structures in human language, we are confident in the progress of our understanding of the empirical issues, and to some extent, the understanding of the general natural laws beneath the facts.

The theoretical framework of this book is generative grammar. We focus on numeral CLs, not other types of CLs such as possessive CLs and noun CLs (Aikenvald 2003). We also restrict our research to numeral CLs in nominal constructions, not including numeral CLs in verbal constructions.

In Chapter 2, the issue of countability is investigated. In Chapter 3, the number markers of Mandarin Chinese are probed. Then in Chapter 4, the constituency of numeral constructions in this language is studied. The constituency patterns reached are then spelled out into enriched syntactic structures in Chapter 5. In this chapter, relevant functional projections are also established with empirical considerations. Meanwhile, typological patterns of the properties of the functional categories are discussed. In Chapter 6, noun-CL compounds are analyzed, and thus one more new dimension of knowledge is added. Chapter 7 concludes the book.

Chapter 2 Classifiers and Countability

2.1. Introduction

Why does a numeral expression need a CL in CL languages such as Mandarin Chinese?² It has been widely assumed that the obligatory occurrence of a CL with a numeral and a noun in CL languages is related to the contrast between count and mass nominals. The goal of this chapter is to show that this traditional assumption is not fine-grained enough to cover the systematic contrasts of various types of nominals in either Mandarin Chinese or other languages. Instead, I argue that two syntagmatic properties of nominals are syntactically significant: the ability of a noun to combine with a numeral directly, and the ability of a noun to be modified by a delimitive (size, shape, or boundary) modifier. The two newly recognized properties or features can be attested in the co-occurrence restrictions of articles, quantifiers, adverbs, prepositions, and CLs, in pronominalization, and in certain context-triggered shifts. It is the combination of the different values of the two features, rather than the alleged binary contrast between count and mass, that explain various syntactic contrasts of countability, cross-linguistically. I argue that although the positive value of the first feature alone is enough to define the count status of a nominal, it is the combination of the negative values of both features that defines the mass status of a nominal. This chapter shows that the popular assertion that all nouns in Chinese are mass nouns is not accurate. Instead, all nouns in Chinese are non-count nouns, but they are further divided into mass and non-mass ones.

The chapter also falsifies the generally believed entailment relation between plurality and countability. Furthermore, it also identifies the distinctive function of CLs of CL languages, which separates the languages from non-CL languages such as English.

The two features argued for in this chapter, Numerability and Delimitability, also set the scene for the analysis of other syntactic issues to be discussed in this book. They are encoded in functional categories, to be shown in later chapters.

In addition to this introduction section and the last summary section, this chapter is composed of six substantial parts. Section 2.2 proposes my new theory of the count-mass contrast, based on the two features. Section 2.3 and Section 2.4 are investigations of the features in Chinese nouns and unit words, respectively. Section 2.5 presents how quantifiers in Chinese are sensitive to one of the two features, Numerability. Section 2.6 compares this new analysis of the count-mass contrast with other approaches in the literature. Section 2.7 further argues that the count and non-count contrast is syntactic, and shows the problems of certain current syntactic analyses of CLs.

2.2. Decomposing countability

2.2.1 Identifying two new features syntagmatically

Since De Saussure (1916), two kinds of relationship between linguistic elements are recognized: paradigmatic and syntagmatic. A paradigmatic relationship is established by a substitution test. For instance, the three words *of*, *by* and *for* establish a paradigmatic relation in forming the string *government {of/by/for} the people*, since each of them can substitute another. Each of them may occur in the same syntactic position. A syntagmatic relationship, however, is defined by the compatibility of co-occurring elements in the same construction, e.g., the relationship between *the* and *people* in the string *the people*. Paradigmatic and syntagmatic relationships have been metaphorically viewed as vertical and horizontal ones, respectively.

Many formal features such as tense and aspect of verbal expressions, gender and person of nominal expressions are defined paradigmatically. Selection features are typical

² CLs in general are called *liang-ci* ‘quantity-word’ in Li (1924), *danwei-ci* ‘unit-word’ in Lü (1942: Ch. 11.72), and *measures* in Chao (1968). See 5.2.1 for more names for CLs in various theories.

Different kinds of syntagmatic relations exhibit different properties. In selection, the occurrence of the selected element is obligatory. But there are other syntagmatic relations that do not exhibit this kind of obligatoriness. For instance, gradability of adjectival expressions is defined by the possibility to occur with a relative degree word such as *quite*, *terribly*, and *fairly* (e.g., Sapir 1944; Bolinger 1972; Wyngaerd 2012: 4). In (5a), the adjective *nice* is gradable since it may occur with the degree word *quite*. In contrast, the adjective *next* is not gradable, since it may not occur with any degree word, such as *quite*, as shown in (5b).³

- Another example of non-obligatory co-occurrence relation is seen in the feature of agentivity. Agentivity of a verbal expression is defined by the possibility to be modified by an agent-oriented adverb. For instance, the VP *shouted* in (6a) is agentive since it may occur with the agent-oriented adverb *deliberately*, and the VP *arrived* in (6b) is not agentive, since it may not occur with *deliberately*.

- In defining gradability and agentivity, a feature is identified simply in the way that it allows X. Allowing does not mean requiring. Therefore the presence of X is not obligatory.

Some nominals may combine with a cardinal numeral directly, and some may not. In (7a), for instance, the noun *unicorn* combines with the numeral *one* directly. In (8a), however, the noun *oil* may not do so.

- The contrast can also be seen in predication (the examples in (9) are adapted from Chierchia 2010: 104):

- The numeral *thirty* is the predicate of the nominal *the boys* in (9a), whereas it may not be a predicate of the nominal *the gold* in (9b). Comparing (9b) and (9c), we see that the numeral needs the support of the measure word *pounds* to function as the predicate of the string *the gold*. Following the assumption that the copula in a nominal predicate construction in English is a tense-bearer or a raising verb (Stowell 1981, 1983, among others) and therefore the surface order of the subject-copula string is derived by the raising of the subject from its base-position, I assume that the combination of the subject with the numeral predicate in their base-position is possible in (9a), but not possible in (9b). The contrast is related to the type of

9

The contrast is also seen between Argument Structure Nominals and their correlated simple nominals. According to Grimshaw (1990) and Alexiadou (2011: 34), in English and Greek, Argument Structure Nominals, such as *jumping of the cow* in (10a), may not occur with a numeral, whereas the correlated simple nominals may, as shown by *jump* in (10b, c):

- I use the feature Numerability to represent the contrast between nominals that may combine with a numeral directly and nominals that may not do so. Accordingly, [+Numerable] means ALLOWING A NUMERAL, and [-Numerable] means DISALLOWING A NUMERAL. Therefore, the nominals in (7), (9a), and (10b/c) are [+Numerable] and those in (8), (9b/c), and (10a) are [-Numerable].

The feature Numerability is attested in the fact that certain elements intrinsically bring about a relevant effect. For instance, the occurrence of English suffixes such as *-er*, *-ee*, *-ant/-ent*, and *-ist* makes a noun able to occur with a numeral. In (11a), the noun *advice* has [-Numerable], since it may not occur with the numeral *one*. In (11b), however, when the suffix *-er* occurs with the noun, the numeral may occur. The acceptability contrast in (11) indicates that it is the suffix that brings about the feature [+Numerable] to the nominal.

- On the other hand, in Dutch, the presence of a collective affix such as *-werk* makes the noun unable to occur with any numeral (de Belder 2010; 2011a: 218) and thus the affix is a marker of [-Numerable] in my analysis. In (12a), the nominal *suiker* ‘sugar’ has [+Numerable], since it occurs with the numeral *drie* ‘three’. In both (12b) and (12c), *-werk* occurs. In the presence of the numeral *drie* ‘three’, (12b) is not acceptable. The acceptability contrast indicates that it is the suffix that brings about the feature [-Numerable] to the nominal (COL = COLLECTIVE).

- In addition to Numerability, we also identify the feature Delimitability. Some words may be modified by a size-denoting expression (e.g., *big*, *small*), shape-denoting expression (e.g., *long*, *round*, *square*, *thin*), or boundary expression (e.g., *whole*), and some may not. In (13a), (13b), and (13c), the delimitive adjectives *big*, *large* and *square* modify the concrete nouns *unicorn*, *furniture*, and *watermelon*, respectively. In (13d), (13e), (13f), and (13g), however, the three adjective may not modify *oil*, *music*, *belief*, and *wine* (see Jespersen 1924: 198, Quine 1960: 104, McCawley 1979 [1975]: 170, Bunt 1985: 199). In (14a), the abstract noun *story* may be modified by *whole*, but in (14b), the abstract noun *leisure* may not.⁴

10

- (13) a. a big unicorn b. large furniture c. square watermelon
 d. *large oil e. *large music f. *huge belief g. *square wine
- (14) a. whole story b. *whole leisure

The contrast is also found in predication, as seen in (15) (from Chierchia 2010: 110):

- (15) a. The violets are small. b. The furniture is small. c. *The snow is small.

In (15a), the delimitive adjective *small* is the predicate of *the violets*. Similarly, in (15b), the adjective is the predicate of *the furniture*. In (15c), however, the adjective may not be the predicate of *the snow*.

I use the feature Delimitability to represent the contrast between nominals that may be modified by a delimitive modifier and nominals that may not be. Thus, [+Delimitable] means ALLOWING A DELIMITIVE MODIFIER, and [-Delimitable] means DISALLOWING A DELIMITIVE MODIFIER. The nominals in (13a), (13b), (13c), (15a), and (15b) are [+Delimitable] and other nominals in (13) and (15) are [-Delimitable].

When a nominal has [+Delimitable], we know that its denotation must have “a certain shape or precise limits” (Jespersen 1924: 198). The shape or limits are delimitable in certain dimensions (e.g., length, size, volume, shape, and time), and therefore, atomicity is exhibited. In contrast, a nominal with [-Delimitable] denotes either material, which in itself independent of shape or size, such as *silver*, *water*, *butter*, *gas*, *air*, or immaterial notions that have no intrinsic boundaries, such as *leisure*, *music*, *traffic*, *success*, *tact*, *commonsense* (cf. Jespersen 1924: 198). In my understanding, the former group of nouns can occur with a standard or container measure, as seen in (16a) and (17a), whereas the latter group cannot, as seen in the rest of the examples in (16) and (17).⁵

- (16) a. a kilo of butter b. *a kilo of leisure c. *a kilo of beliefs
(17) a. a bowl of butter b. *a bowl of leisure c. *a bowl of beliefs

Note that immaterial nouns such as *belief* can be [+Numerable], as seen in (7f), although they are [-Delimitable], as seen in (13f).

Similar to Numerability, Delimitability is also attested in the fact that certain elements intrinsically bring about a relevant effect. For instance, *shui* ‘water’ alone may not be modified by *xiao* ‘small’, as seen in (18a); but if it is followed by a CL such as *di*, the whole compound *shui-di* can be modified by *xiao*, as seen in (18a’). Similarly, *ni* ‘mud’ alone may not be modified by *xiao*, as seen in (18b); but if it is followed by a CL such as *kuai*, the whole compound *ni-kuai* can be modified by *xiao*, as seen in (18b’). The examples in (18c) and (18c’) show the same point (This issue is further discussed in 6.3.1).

- (18) a. *xiao shui a'. xiao shui-di
 small water small water-CL
 'small drop(s) of water'

refers to [+/-bound], but she does not discuss the feature. The term m-feature occurs only once in the whole paper.

⁵ In idiomatic expressions, *ton* can occur with any noun. But *ton* in expressions such as *tons of leisure* may not be replaced by, or in contrast to, other standard measures such as *pound* and *kilo*. I thank Audrey Li for pushing me to clarify this.

- | | | | |
|----|-----------|-----|-------------------------|
| b. | *xiao ni | b'. | xiao ni-kuai |
| | small mud | | small mud-CL |
| | | | 'small chunk(s) of mud' |
| c. | *da yun | c'. | da yun-duo |
| | big cloud | | big cloud-CL |
| | | | 'big piece(s) of cloud' |

On the other hand, English words such as *woman*, *brother*, and *child* may be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *tall*, but if the suffix *-hood* or *-ship* occurs with a noun, no delimitive adjective may occur, as seen in (19). Therefore, the suffixes *-hood* and *-ship* are markers of [-Delimitable].

- | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------|----|---|
| (19) a. | tall {woman/brother/child} | b. | *tall {womanhood/brotherhood/childhood} |
| c. | tall {lady/friend/priest} | d. | *tall {ladyship/friendship/priestship} |

In the following, I clarify three further issues with respect to the feature Delimitability.

First, words such as *big*, *small*, *enormous*, *huge*, and their Chinese counterparts have an intensifier usage. As stated in Morzyski (2009: 176), "an adjective that normally expresses size characterizes the degree to which the gradable predicate holds", as shown in the examples in (20) (also see Constantinescu 2011: 35). In such a use of the adjectives, *big* can be replaced by *real*, *da* 'big' can be replaced by *zhenzhengde* 'real' or *qiang* 'strong', and *xiao* 'small' can be replaced by *shaowei* 'moderately' in certain contexts.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|---------------|----|-----------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| (20) a. | big idiot | b. | big smoker | c. | big idea |
| d. | da bendan | e. | da hao xingshi | f. | xiao xian shenshou |
| | big fool | | big good situation | | small show skill |
| | 'big fool' | | 'very good situation' | | 'show the skill a little bit' |
| g. | da huo | h. | da feng | | |
| | big fire | | big wind | | |
| | 'strong fire' | | 'strong wind' | | |

The intensifying readings are not size readings, and thus the adjectives in such a use are not delimitive adjectives. Similar intensifying reading is also found in other adjectives such as *good*, as in (21) (Levinson 2010: 150; Kayne 2005a: 195):⁶

- | | |
|---------|--|
| (21) a. | He braided her hair <u>good</u> and tight. |
| b. | A <u>good</u> many linguists went to the conference. |

Second, the adjectives *deep* and *shallow* in expressions such as *deep water* and *shallow water* do not semantically modify *water*. Instead, the delimitive adjectives may modify the source location of water, and the type of the location is used for the type of water.

Third, delimitive adjectives are different from but not in contrast to gradable adjectives. The latter has an argument of type <d>, which is bound by a degree operator. The binding is

⁶ A related issue to be clarified is that the retroflexion suffix *-r* in Mandarin Chinese encodes endearment, as well as diminutiveness. In the former reading, no size meaning is expressed, as seen in (i).

(i) a.	da-men-r	b.	qi-shui-r
	big-door-ENDEARMENT		air-water-ENDEARMENT
	'big door'		'soda water'

In Cinque (2011: 6), the functional projection to host an endearment element is ranked lower than the one for a diminutive element. Also see Fortin (2011: 3) for an analysis to distinguish the two readings of diminutives.

seen if a degree word occurs or the adjective is in a comparative construction (Higginbotham 1985; Kennedy 1997, among others). Words like *big* are both gradable and delimitive, but words like *absolute* are neither. Between the two extremes, words like *square* and *whole* are delimitive but not gradable, whereas words like *heavy* and *cheap* are gradable but not delimitive.

2.2.2 Defining count and mass by the two features

Traditionally, the notion of count is in direct contrast to the notion of mass. Different from this binary analysis, I use the two values of the two features, Numerability and Delimitability, to make a more fine-grained classification.

The feature Numerability alone may distinguish a count noun from a non-count noun. If a nominal may combine with a numeral directly in the context, it has [+Numerable] and thus is a count nominal in that context. Otherwise, it is a non-count one. According to Chierchia (1998: 353; 2010: 104), the ability to combine with a numeral is the signature property of a count nominal.

But Numerability alone is not enough to identify whether a noun is a mass noun. A non-count noun is not necessarily a mass noun. On the one hand, well-recognized mass nouns, such as the word *oil*, may be neither combined with a numeral directly (see (8a)), nor modified by a delimitive adjective (see (13d)). On the other hand, words such as *furniture* may be modified by a delimitive modifier (see (13b)), although they may not combine with a numeral directly (see (8b)). Such nouns are non-count and non-mass. I claim that although the feature [+Numerable] alone is enough to define the count status of a nominal, it is the combination of both [-Numerable] and [-Delimitable] that defines the mass status of a nominal.

Moreover, [+Delimitable] is not part of the defining property of a count element. Words such as *belief* may combine with a numeral, as seen in (7f), and thus are count nouns, but they may not be modified by a delimitive adjective, as seen in (13f). In order to distinguish different types of count nouns, I call the *unicorn*-type nouns count with a delimitable feature and the *belief*-type nouns count without a delimitable feature. The four possible combinations of the two values of the features are summarized in (22):

(22)

	[Numerable]	[Delimitable]	example	countability status
a.	+	+	<i>unicorn</i> in (7a), (13a)	count with a delimitable feature
b.	+	-	<i>belief</i> in (7f), (13f)	count without a delimitable feature
c.	-	+	<i>furniture</i> in (8b), (13b)	non-count, non-mass
d.	-	-	<i>oil</i> in (8a), (13d)	mass

Among the four possibilities: (22a) and (22b) are both count, (22d) is mass, and (22c) is non-count and non-mass. Although count is not mass and mass is not count, the independent status of (22c) is important. The existence of this group of nominals indicates that non-count nominals do not have to be mass ones. Also, from a different perspective, having the feature [+Delimitable] means that the noun is not a mass noun, but it does not mean that the noun must be a count noun (contra Wiltchko 2005, among others). *Duckling* and the German word *Eichhörnchen* ‘squirrel’ can occur as non-count nouns, in addition to count nouns (see de Belder 2011b: 181, fn. 12), although they can be modified by delimitive modifiers (e.g., *small duckling*). Moreover, the independent status of (22b) indicates that not all count nouns may be modified by a delimitive modifier.

In my approach, like the feature of gradability for APs and the feature agentivity for VPs,

the features related to the count-mass contrast for NPs can also be defined syntagmatically.

I claim that the two features, Numerability and Delimitability, are universal in identifying the countability status of nouns, assuming attributive numerals (Rijkhoff 2002: Ch. 5) and delimitive modifiers are available in all languages. Also, the two features are the only criteria to be considered in analyzing the count-mass contrast. The relationship between plural markers and the count-mass contrast will be discussed in 2.2.6 and 2.6.3.

2.2.3 Attesting the two features in co-occurrence restrictions

The linguistic reality of Numerability and Delimitability is independently attested in co-occurrence restrictions of articles, quantifiers, adverbs, prepositions, and CLs.

It is well-known that indefinite articles and some quantifiers occur with count nouns in English. For instance, *every*, *many*, *a few*, *several*, and *another* occur with nouns that have [+Numerable] (e.g., {*many*/**much*} *unicorns*), and *much*, *little*, and *a little* occur with nouns that have [-Numerable] (e.g., {**many*/*much*} *oil*; {**many*/*much*} *furniture*). A clearer contrast is seen in Turkish. Words such as *kitap* ‘book’ and *şehir* ‘city’ may be combined with a numeral, and such words are compatible with the quantifiers *kaç (tane)* ‘how many’, *birkaç* ‘a few’, or *birçok* ‘many’, but not the quantifier *ne kadar* ‘how much’. The last quantifier is for words such as *para* ‘money’ and *su* ‘water’, which may not be combined with a numeral (Göksel & Kerslake 2005: 163-164; Görgülü 2010). Note that the nouns in (23) and (24) have neither a plural marker nor CL.

- (23) a. Kaç (tane) kitap oku-du-n? [Turkish]
 how item book read-PST-2SG
 ‘How many books did you read?’
 b. Kaç (tane) şehir gez-di-n?
 how item city travel-PST-2SG
 ‘How many cities did you travel?’
 (24) a. Ne kadar para harca-di-n?
 what amount money spend-PST-2SG
 ‘How much money did you spend?’
 b. Ne kadar su iç-ti-n?
 what amount water drink-PST-2SG
 ‘How much water did you drink?’

In 2.5, we will see that certain quantifiers in Chinese have similar co-occurrence restrictions with respect to Numerability, after we introduce the bearers of the feature in the language.

Prepositions can also select Numerability. For instance, the Dutch preposition *per* ‘by’ takes count nouns only, whereas *vol* ‘full of’ takes non-count nouns only (de Swart et al. 2010: 6-7).

- (25) a. per {bus/trein/bootje/*zand/*steenkol} [Dutch]
 by bus/train/boat.DIM/sand/coal
 b. vol {modder/zand/*auto/*koe}
 full.of mud/sand/car/cow

The feature Delimitability is also attested in the same way. In Japanese, the quantifiers *tasuu* ‘many’ and *shoosuu* ‘a few’ may occur with words such as *isha* ‘doctor’ or *hon* ‘book’, but not words like *inku* ‘ink’ or *gyunyu* ‘milk’. This contrast is shown in (26a) and (26b). The word *isha* or *hon*, but not *inku* or *gyunyu*, can be modified by a delimitive adjective.

Therefore, the quantifiers occur with [+Delimitable] nominals. However, the opposite pattern is seen in the quantifiers *taryoo* ‘much’ and *shooryoo* ‘a little’. They may occur with words such as *inku* or *gyunyu*, but not words like *isha* or *hon*, as shown in (27a) and (27b), and therefore, they occur with [-Delimitable] nominals (Kobuchi-Philip 2011: 307; similar examples have also been provided to me by Yukari Kurita, p.c., Sept. 23, 2010).

- (26) a. {tasuu/shoosuu}-no isha b. *{tasuu/shoosuu}-no inku
 many/a few -GEN doctor many/a few -GEN ink
 (27) a. *{taryoo/shoorryoo}-no isha b. {taryoo/shooryoo}-no inku
 much/a little -GEN doctor much/a little -GEN ink

The Korean counterparts of the examples show the same contrast (Yi 2010, Sec. 4.4.1).

Adverbs such as *each* may not be in construal with nouns that have [-Delimitable], as shown by the contrast between (28a) and (28b). Mandarin Chinese adverb *zuge* ‘each’ is subject to the same constraint, as seen in the contrast in (29).

- (28) a. The balls each fell down off the table. b. *The oil each fell down off the table.
 (29) a. Qiqiu zuge xiaoshi-le. b. *Zhima-you zuge xiaoshi-le.
 ballon each disappear-PRF sesame-oil each disappear-PRF
 ‘The balloons disappeared one by one.’

In Chinese, some CLs are sensitive to the delimitable feature of the noun. For instance, no liquid-denoting noun may be modified by a delimitive adjective, as seen in (30a). Such a noun is [-Delimitable]. It can occur with the CL *di*, as seen in (30b). *Di* takes nouns with [-Delimitable] only.

- (30) a. *chang {you/shui/xue/niao/yanlei/mo-shui}
 long oil/water/blood/urine/tear/ink-water
 b. san di {you/shui/xue/niao/yanlei/mo-shui/*putao}
 three CL oil/water/blood/urine/tear/ink-water/grape
 ‘three drops of {oil/water/blood/urine/tear/ink/*grape}’

In contrast, *putao* ‘grape’ can be modified by a delimitive adjective, as seen in (31a) below. Such a noun is [+Delimitable]. It may not occur with *di*, as seen in (30b) above. Other CLs that reject nominals with [+Delimitable] include *ji* (for liquid medicine), *pao* (for urine), *tan* (for any liquid). I call such CLs (part of Chao’s 1968 partitive measures) individuating CLs, which select [-Delimitable].

- (31) a. da putao
 big grape
 ‘big grape’
 b. san ke {putao/*you/*zhi/*zheng-qi/*xue/*rou/*bu/*qian/*yanlei}
 three CL grape/oil/paper/steam-air/blood/meat/cloth/money/tear

Words like *putao* can be selected by another kind of CLs, individual CLs (called individual measures in Chao 1968: 585). The CL *ke* in (31b) is such a CL. It selects nouns with [+Delimitable]. Other CLs such as *ben* (for books), *tou* (for animals such as cows), and *zhi* (for animals such as chickens) are also individual CLs. Moreover, collective CLs, such as *zu* ‘group’, *qun* ‘crowd’, *da* ‘dozen’, *shuang* ‘pair’, *dui* ‘pair’, and partitive CLs, such as *ye* ‘page’, *duan* ‘paragraph’, and *zhang* ‘chapter’ (they all belong to Chao’s 1968 partitive

measures), also occur with nouns with [+Delimitable] only.

2.2.4 Attesting the two features in pronominalization

The English proform *one* can only take a count noun as its antecedent (Schütze 2001; Barbiers 2005; Ojeda 2005: 404). The same constraint is also seen in the Afrikaans proform *een* ‘one’ (Corver & van Koppen 2011: 376). This constraint indicates that such pronominalization is sensitive to the feature Numerability.

- (32) a. Would you like a red bike or a white one?
b. *Would you like red wine or white one?

In Mandarin Chinese, the word *liaoliaowuji* ‘few’ can be used as a pronoun. Like other pronouns, it can function as an argument independently, taking another nominal in the context as its antecedent. The antecedent of the pronoun *liaoliaowuji* must be a noun that is able to be modified by a delimitive adjective. In (33a), the antecedent of *liaoliaowuji* is *mao-bi* ‘brush-pen’, which can be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *chang* ‘long’. In contrast, in (33b), the antecedent of *liaoliaowuji* is *mo-shui* ‘ink-water’, which, as shown in (30a) above, cannot be modified by a delimitive adjective. The pronominalization fails. The acceptability contrast in (34) exhibits the same pronominalization constraint.

- (33) a. Wo yiqian mai-guo henduo mao-pi, xianzai shengxia liaoliaowuji.
I before buy-PRF many brush-pen now remain few
‘I bought many brush-pens before, but few of them remain now.’
b. Wo yiqian mai-guo henduo mo-shui, *xianzai sheng-xia liaoliaowuji.
I before buy-PRF many ink-water now remain few
‘I bought much ink before, *but few of them remain now.’
- (34) a. Women guji daliang youke hui lai zheli, keshi zhi jin zhi
we estimate a.lot tourist will come here but up.to now only
lai-le liaoliaowuji.
come-PRF few
‘We estimated that a lot of tourists would come here, but up to now only a few have come.’
b. Women guji daliang zheng-qi hui cong zhe ge kung mao-chulai,
we estimate a.lot steam-air will from this CL hole rise-out come
*keshi zhi mao-chulai-le liaoliaowuji.
but only rise-out-PRF few
Intended: ‘We estimated that a lot of steam would come out of this hole, but only little came out.’

The contrast between (33a) and (33b) and the one between (34a) and (34b) indicate that pronominalization of *liaoliaowuji* is sensitive to the feature Delimitability.

2.2.5 Attesting the two features in shifts

In this subsection, I argue that the two features are also attested in the input and output of three shifts: Universal Grinder, Universal Packager, and Universal Sorter.⁷

⁷ I disregard the formal mechanisms of the shifts here, since they are not relevant to the point I intend to make here (see Wyngaerd 2009 for an analysis of semantic shifts). My discussion of the syntactic representations of the outputs of the shifts is in 5.6.1.

Universal Grinder

Imagine we have a big grinder. We can put things in and what we get is a massive object, which does not have a shape intrinsic to the property of the input. This is the so-called effect of Universal Grinder (Pelletier 1979 [1975]: 6). Compared with the word *apple* in (35a), the word *apple* in (35b) denotes a massive object.

- (35) a. There is an apple on the table. b. There is apple in the salad.

Universal Grinder has been viewed as an effect of changing a “count” noun into a “mass” noun. I claim that it is an effect of blocking the projection of the feature [+Delimitable], in a specific context. In other words, the output of the shift must be [-Delimitable]. For instance, the word *apple* in (35b) may not be modified by the delimitive adjective *small*, as shown in (36) (Bunt 1985: 207).

- (36) There is (*small) apple in the salad.

The effect of the Universal Grinder is also seen in Chinese:

- (37) a. Wo yu bu chi-le.
I fish not eat-PRF
A: ‘I will not eat the whole fish anymore.’
B: ‘I will not eat the fish meat anymore.’
b. Wo da de yu bu chi-le.
I big DE fish not eat-PRF
A: ‘I will not eat the whole big fish anymore.’
*B: ‘I will not eat the (big) fish meat anymore.’

The word *yu* ‘fish’ in (37a) is ambiguous. Reading A is attested when the speaker is with a plate of whole fish, and Reading B is attested when the speaker is with a plate of processed fish meat (e.g., fish slices or chunks). The meat reading is an effect of Universal Grinder. However, in (37b), the adjective *da* ‘big’ occurs, and then *yu* must have the whole fish reading. The meat reading disappears. Note that only delimitive modifiers can bring about the blocking effect. In (38), the modifier is not a delimitive one and thus the ambiguity remains (in this case, the Universal Grinder effect is observed even in a complex nominal. Cf. Acquaviva 2010: 9).

- (38) Zuotian mai de yu wo bu chi-le.
yesterday buy DE fish I not eat-PRF
A: ‘I will not eat the whole fish that {was/were} bought yesterday.’
B: ‘I will not eat the fish meat that was bought yesterday.’

We can see that the presence of the delimitive adjective correlates with the atomicity reading. The fact that the output of the Universal Grinder may not allow a delimitive adjective means that the output of the shift is not only [-Numerable], but also [-Delimitable].

If the shift is understood as a simple change of the choice between a binary count-mass system, one cannot explain the acceptability contrast in (36) and the reading contrast in (37). The two features proposed in this book can give a more precise description of the output of the shift: it must be [-Delimitable], as well as [-Numerable].

Examples of the effect of the Universal Grinder in Chinese, such as (37), are easy to find (contra Cheng et al. 2008; and Cheng 2012; See de Belder 2011a: 91, or 2011b: 198, for a

discussion of the markedness of examples like *There is dog all over the wall*, and her pragmatic account). The experimental studies in Huang (2009) and Huang & Lee (2009) also show that Chinese has Universal Grinder effect. (39) gives us another pair of such examples (if we change *jidan* ‘egg’ in (39) into *pingguo* ‘apple’, we get a parallel effect).

- (39) a. Panzi-li you jidan.
plate-in have egg
A: ‘There are whole eggs in the plate.’
B: ‘There is scrambled egg in the plate.’
b. Panzi-li you da jidan.
plate-in have big egg
A: ‘There are big whole eggs in the plate.’
*B: ‘There is big scrambled egg in the plate.’

Now let us turn to the input of the shift. The word *furniture* is [-Numerable] (see (8b)). After an earthquake, for example, when pieces of furniture pieces such as legs of chairs and tops of tables are all over a place, one can say (40), and thus the Universal Grinder effect is also available.

- (40) There is furniture all over the place.

In Chinese, no noun may combine with a numeral directly and thus all nouns are [-Numerable] (2.3.1), but the Universal Grinder effect is still available. Considering both the Chinese examples in (37a), (38), (39a), and the English example in (40), we can see that the input of the shift is not restricted to [+Numerable]. So the shift is not a shift from a count noun to something else, since the input can be a non-count noun.

The above discussion shows that the input of Universal Grinder is specified with [+Delimitable] only, but the output is the negative values of both features.

- (41) Universal Grinder: [α Numerable, +Delimitable] \rightarrow [-Numerable, -Delimitable]

The two features are thus attested in a more precise description of the shift.

Universal Packager

In a perspective different from the Universal Grinder, all kinds of the material type of massive objects can be put in containers or be apportioned in a certain way, and after doing so, the massive objects become discrete portions and thus can be counted. For instance, the word *water* and *beer* in (42a) each occur with a numeral and are thus [+Numerable], i.e., countable.

- (42) a. Give me two waters and one beer.
b. I’ll have another {beer/wine/whiskey}.
b. I had too many {beers/wines/whiskeys} already.

This is the so-called effect of Universal Packager (Pelletier 1979; Bach 1986: 10; Jackendoff 1991; 1997: 53). It has been viewed as an effect of changing a “mass” noun into a “count” noun, since the massive objects become “the individuations based on the glasses or servings thereof” (Ojeda 2005: 405). This conventional unit or portion reading is commonly found (Corbett 2000: 37). In fact, it is a contextually induced Numerability effect. The denoted entity must be quantized in a certain way in the context. The discourse context specifies the exact unit of counting. The feature [+Numerable] emerges in the context where

the noun occurs with a numeral, as in (42a), or with a determiner or quantifier that occurs with a noun that exhibits [+Numerable] e.g., *another*, *many* (see 2.2.3), as in (42b) and (42c) (cited from Ojeda 2005: 404).

Examples like (43) further show that the output of Universal Packager also include [+Delimitable].

(43) Give me one big water and two small beers.

But Universal Packager applies to nouns with [-Delimitable] only, but not [+Delimitable] words such as *furniture* and *cutlery*. For instance, (44) does not mean three packages of cutleries (Borer 2005: 103, fn. 14; Acquaviva 2010: 3).

(44) *three cutleries

If the shift is understood as a simple change of the choice between count and mass nouns, one cannot explain why certain “mass” nouns reject the shift consistently. The two features proposed in this book can give a more precise description of the input of the shift. The packager effect applies to [-Numerable, -Delimitable] nouns only, but not [-Numerable, +Delimitable] nouns.⁸

(45) Universal Packager: [-Delimitable, -Numerable] → [+Numerable, +Delimitable]

No noun in Chinese can be preceded by a numeral directly, even for non-mass nouns (2.3.1). So no result of the shift is observed in the language, although the language has [-Delimitable, -Numerable] (i.e., mass) nouns. However, the shift seems to be attested in an indirect way in the language, and it is subject to the same input condition. In (46a) (Yu Hong, p.c., Dec. 3, 2010; Jane Tang, p.c., Jan. 17, 2011) and (46b) (Doetjes 1997: 33), the liquid-denoting nouns *guozhi* ‘juice’ and *pijiu* ‘beer’ are interpreted as packages of juice and beer. But importantly, first, the package interpretations emerge only when such a noun follows a unit word, such as the collective CL *da* ‘dozen’ in (46a) and the individual CL *ge* in (46b) (Persian examples similar to (46b) are seen in Ghomeshi 2003: 55 (25c) and Cowper & Hall 2012: (48b); see (155c,d) later). This is different from examples such as (42). Second, the package interpretation is not observed if the noun following a CL has [+Delimitable]. In (46c), *pingguo* ‘apple’, which can be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *xiao* ‘small’ and thus has [+Delimitable], does not have a packager reading. Thus we see the same constraint on the same type of nouns, (44) in English and (46c) in Chinese.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(46) a. yi da {guozhi/pijiu}
 one dozen juice/beer
 ‘a dozen packages of {juice/beer}’</p> <p> c. yi da pingguo
 one dozen apple
 ‘a dozen (*packages of) apples’</p> | <p> b. Gei wo liang ge pijiu.
 give I two CL beer
 ‘Give me two units of beer.’</p> |
|---|--|

⁸ Comparative constructions have a similar effect as Universal Packager (Bale & Barner 2009; 2012: 241 & 246). In (ia) the noun *water* is typically used as a mass noun, but in (ib) *waters* denotes portions of water. The decision of “who has more” is based on volume for the mass usage in (ia), but on number (e.g., number of portions) for the non-mass usage in (ib). In (iia), the decision of “who has more” is based on number (e.g., number of the furniture pieces), as in (ib). (iib) is not acceptable.

<p>(i) a. Mary has more water than Jane does.</p> <p>(ii) a. Mary has more furniture than Jane does</p>	<p> b. Mary has more waters than Jane does.</p> <p> b. ??Mary has more furnitures than Jane does.</p>
---	---

Universal Sorter

Counting kinds is to count abstract units. Examples like (47a) (Chierchai 2010: 106) are discussed in Lyons (1977: 463), Allan (1977: 294), and Bunt (1985: 11). The word *wines* in (47a) follows a numeral and thus behaves like a count noun. Allan calls nouns in such a use pseudo-uncountable nouns, and Bunt calls this phenomenon the effect of Universal Sorter.

- (47) a. I like only three wines: chardonnay, pinot, and chianti.
b. *I like only three small wines: chardonnay, pinot, and chianti.

Like in the case of the Universal Packager, the denoted entity in the output of Universal Sorter is also quantized. But the quantization is accomplished in an abstract sense. In both cases, a noun combines with a numeral, and it thus exhibits [+Numerable] feature. Therefore, like the words *water* and *beer* in (42), the word *wine* in (47a) also behaves like a count noun.

(47b) is different from (47a) only in the occurrence of the delimitive adjective *small*. Its unacceptability indicates that the shift does not change the value of the feature Delimitable.

As pointed out by Cowper & Hall (2012: 29), the Universal Sorter effect is not seen in words such as *furniture*. We have seen above that the Universal Packager effect is also absent in *furniture*-type of words. In my feature analysis, we can make a precise description that like the shift of Universal Packager, the shift of Universal Sorter applies to [-Numerable, -Delimitable] nouns only, but not [-Numerable, +Delimitable] nouns. So we find the following description for the shift:

(48) Universal Sorter: [-Delimitable, -Numerable] → [+Numerable]

The input condition in (48) is the same as that of the Universal Packager, but the output is different. The negative value of Delimitability remains in the output. The differences of the two shifts are precisely indicated by the two features.

Like Universal Packager, no direct effect of Universal Sorter is seen in Chinese.

The three shifts, Universal Grinder, Packager, and Sorter, have been found in various languages, and their existence is independent of morphological number marking (Wiese 2012: 70). In all of the three shifts, the two features, Delimitability and Numerability, are attested in either their input or output.

2.2.6 Numerability and number

I have decomposed countability into two features, [Numerable] and [Delimitable], and have argued that [+Numerable] alone can distinguish count nouns from non-count nouns. Numerability is different from the notion of number. The former is concerned with the possibility to combine with a numeral, but does not have to be sensitive to the contrast between singular and plural markers. However, the latter is concerned with the contrast between singular and plural in morphology, but does not have to be sensitive to the occurrence of a numeral. When we consider the two values of Numerability and the two values of number, we see four possible patterns. All of them are attested.

First, a nominal can be both [+Numerable] and [+Plural], as seen in (49) and (50) (Saka 1991: 279; also see Krifka 1998: Ch. 7, fn. 1; Borer 2009: Sec. 1.1 for such examples) (I thank James Myers for giving me Saka's work).

- (49) a. two unicorns b. 0.5 unicorns c. 1.0 unicorns d. zero unicorns
(50) a. The temperature is negative-one degrees.
b. The angle is point-four degrees.

- c. At the end of its first semester the college awarded zero degrees.

The denoted referents of the nominals in (49b) through (49d) and those of the underlined nominals in (50) are not plural objects, but the plural markers are required. Moreover, words such as *scissors*, *trousers*, or *glasses* (in the sense of “binoculars”) appear only in their plural form, even though they might refer to single objects (they are called defectives in Corbett 2000: 174).

Second, a nominal can be [+Numerable] but [-Plural], as seen in (51).

- (51) one unicorn

In languages such as Yudja (Lima 2010; 2011), there are neither CLs nor plural markers, but all nouns can combine with a numeral directly. (52) is an example (Lima 2010: 7).

- (52) txabiã apeta [Yudja]
 three blood
 ‘three units of blood’
 (the unit is identified in the context: drops, puddles, or containers)

In Yudja, when a numeral and a noun are combined, the exact unit of counting depends on the discourse context (Lima 2010: 13). Lima reports the naturalness of data like (52) in the absence of either Universal Sorter or Universal Packager effects.

Third, a nominal can be [-Numerable] but [+Plural]. McClawley (1979 [1975]: 172) shows that the word *clothes* is plural, since it takes plural agreement in (53a), but it may not combine with a numeral, as seen in (53b). He also notes that words such as *guts* and *intestines* behave the same. We can add *outskirts*, *oats*, *grits*, and *masses* to this group. Jespersen (1961 [1909]) gives dozens of such words in English (also see Huddleston & Pullum 2002: 342; Acquaviva 2010: 2).

- (53) a. My clothes {are/*is} in this locker. b. *I’ve just bought five clothes.

Similarly, although mass nouns such as *water* have been found in a plural form in a non-shift context, as in (54a) (Krifka 2008: Sec. 7.1), they may not occur with a numeral, as shown by (54b). This is different from the effects of Universal Packager and Universal Sorter (2.2.5). When mass nouns are pluralized in such a case, there is no conventionalized counting unit in the context (see Mathieu 2012: 185). We will say more about this kind of plural in Chapter 3 (3.1.3).

- (54) a. the waters of the Nile b. *the three waters of the Nile

In the above two cases, the values of Numerability and plurality are different. The contrastive values of the two features are also seen in the fact that some nouns may occur with a numeral, and thus have [+Numerable], but they reject a plural marker when they do so. For some languages, this is a consistent pattern, a well-known fact stated in textbooks such as Booij (2007: 127). In the Hungarian examples in (55), the plural marker *-k* may not occur with the numeral (Csirmaz & Dekany 2010: (88)). The same constraint is also found in Bangla (Dayal 2011: 4), Turkish, Western Armenian, and some other languages (See Bale et al. 2011b; see our 3.2.5 for further discussion of the interaction).

- (55) a. három takaró-(*k) b. három kutyá-(*k) [Hungarian]
 three blanket-PL three dog-PL
 ‘three blankets’ ‘three dogs’

Fourth, a nominal can be both [-Numerable] and [-Plural]. One example is *furniture*. Also, the nominals after the prepositions in (56) occur with neither a plural marker nor a numeral (see Kiss 2010; de Swart et al. 2010). Such bare singular nouns also occur in other syntactic positions, as seen in (57) (Stvan 2009: 319; Espinal 2010: 985).

- (56) a. at school b. in prison
 c. Van anar a escola. [Catalan]
 PAST go to school
 ‘They went to school.’ (It could be one, or more than one)
 d. Estuvieron en prisión. [Spanish]
 were in prison
 ‘They spent time in prison.’ (It may have been more than one prison)
- (57) a. I’ve left town and I want to keep it that way.
 b. Has portat samarreta. [Catalan]
 have worn T-shirt
 ‘You have worn a T-shirt.’ (It could be one, or more than one)
 c. Comprará cochel. [Spanish]
 buy-FUT car
 ‘(S)he will buy a car.’ (It could be one, or more than one)

Examples like those in (56) and (57) have been labeled as number neutrality in languages that usually express number in morphology (Espinal 2010: 985), and analyzed as the result of pseudo-incorporation in the sense of Massam (2001) (see Stvan 2009; Farkas & de Swart 2003; Espinal & McNally 2011, among others).

Moreover, some nouns are found in singular, since they are preceded by the indefinite singular article *a*, but they never occur with a numeral, including *one*. The nominal *shortage of engineers* in (58a) and the nominal *good knowledge of Greek* in (58b) may not be preceded by the numeral *one*. In my analysis, the nominals here do not have [+Numerable] and thus they are not count ones.

- (58) a. {a/*one} shortage of engineers
 b. Jill has {a/*one} good knowledge of Greek.

All of the cross-linguistic facts discussed in this section indicate that Numerability and number are two different grammatical notions, although they may interact in a certain language-specific way. This is similar to the situation that modality and tense may interact closely, but they are recognized as two different notions. The possible interactions also do not mean that one is a sub-type of the other. Unfortunately, it is still widely believed that plurality is an issue of the count-mass contrast, assuming only count nouns may be plural.

Syntactic features are distributed in different types of elements cross-linguistically and within the same language. In the following three sections, we discuss the two features with respect to different types of elements in Chinese, a CL language, compared with non-CL languages, such as English.

2.3. The two features in nouns

2.3.1 Numerability of nouns

Occasionally, we see people claim that numeral CL languages do have count nouns, or people feel reluctant to admit that there is no count noun in such languages. However, we still need to consider “[i]f we assume that classifier languages have count nouns (similar to English *silverware*, cf. constructions like *three pieces of silverware*), then it is unclear what necessitates the use of classifiers.” (Krifka 2008: 5)

If we put unit words such as *dui* ‘pile’ aside, it is undeniable that no noun in Chinese may combine with a numeral directly, regardless of whether the nominal is an argument or predicate, and whether it is concret or abstract (cf. Muromatsu 2003: 79, 85), as shown in (59). Therefore, all nouns in the language have the feature [-Numerable]. This means that no noun in the language is a count noun.

- (59) a. Nali you san *(ge) xianglian b. Nali you san *(di) you
 there have three CL necklace there have three CL oil
 ‘There are three necklaces.’ ‘There are three drops of oil.’
c. Baoyu gen Daiyu shi liang *(ge) gudian xiaoshuo-zhong de renwu.
 Baoyu and Daiyu be two CL classic novel-in DE character
 ‘Baoyu and Daiyu are two characters in a classic novel,’
d. Shijie-shang you liang *(zhong) heping: zhuanzhi-xia de gen
 world-on have two CL peace dictator-under DE and
 mingzhu-zhidu-xia de.
 democratic-system-under DE
 ‘There are two kinds of peace: the one under a dictatorship and the one under a
 democratic system.’

The occurrence of a unit word such as a CL is obligatory between a numeral and a noun in Chinese. It has been noted that a CL can be optional after the numeral *yi* ‘one’ in colloquial Beijing dialect of Mandarin Chinese, in examples such as (60a), (60b) (H. Huang 1981), and (60c) (Lü et al. 1999 [1980]: 599).

- (60) a. chi yi mantou b. bei yi shu-bao shangxue qu
 eat one steamed.bread carry one book-bag go-school go
 ‘eat one steamed-bread’ ‘carry one school bag and go to school’
c. zhe yi {qingkuang/shigu/banfa}
 this one situation/accident/method
 ‘this situation/accident/method’

However, Du (1993) and Jing (1995) find that the omission of a CL in such data must satisfy two conditions. First, the noun must be a “count noun”. More precisely speaking, the noun must be the one that may occur with the CL *ge*. This can be seen in (61a). Some other nouns may not occur with *ge*, as seen in (61b). (62) shows that those nouns in (61b) may not follow *yi* directly (see 2.4.1 for more discussion of *ge*).

- (61) a. yi ge {mantou/shu-bao/qingkuang/shigu/banfa}
 one CL steamed.bread/book-bag/situation/accident/method
b. *yi ge {you/zhi/zheng-qi/xie/rou/bu/qian/yanlei}
 one CL oil/paper/steam-air/blood/meat/cloth/money/tear
(62) *yi {you/zhi/zheng-qi/xie/rou/bu/qian/yanlei}
 one oil/paper/steam-air/blood/meat/cloth/money/tear

In contrast to Chinese, “there are a considerable number of Amerind languages as well as some elsewhere, for example, in New Guinea which do not have measure constructions. Numerals occur directly both with nouns designating mass as well as countable objects.” (Greenberg 1972:16) In Hopi (Whorf 1956 [1941]: 141; Greenberg 1972: 16), Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006), Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm 2008: 64), and Yudja (Lima 2011), all nouns can combine with a numeral unconditionally. The Yudja example in (52) is repeated here as (63). We can see that all nouns in such languages may have the feature [+Numerable].

- Between the above two extreme patterns of Modern Mandarin Chinese and Yudja, in languages such as English and Dëne, some nouns may combine with numerals directly and some may not. We have seen the contrast between *unicorn* in (7) and *oil* in *furniture* in (8). The following are Dëne examples from Wilhelm (*ibid.*). Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006) and Haitian Creole (Deprez 2005: 861) behave the same in this aspect.

- In some languages, there is an optionality with respect to the occurrence of a CL between a numeral and a non-mass NP. In Jingpo (Dai 1991) and Indonesian (Sato 2009: 15; Dalrymple & Mofu 2012), a CL is optional in such a position, as seen in (65).

- The optionality is also seen in certain semantic types of nominals in other CL languages (see Tang 2004 for a discussion). Tang calls languages that require a CL or measure word to occur with a numeral “rich” CL languages, whereas CL languages that do not have this

requirement “poor” CL languages.

As in Yudja, in Indonesian, a CL language, a numeral may also be directly followed by a liquid or material-denoting noun, as seen in (66) (Dalrymple & Mofu 2012: 239).

- | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|--------------|
| (66) a. | duo air laut
two water sea
‘two (areas of) sea water’ | b. | sepuluh kayu
ten wood
‘ten (pieces of) wood’ | [Indonesian] |
|---------|--|----|---|--------------|

In fact, the apparent cross-linguistic variation is also found within the same language. In Mandarin Chinese, in a normal phrasal nominal, a unit word is obligatory between a numeral and a noun; but in idiomatic expressions, compounds, or some list contexts, the language may pattern with Yudja: no unit word appears in this position. In the idiom and compound examples in (67), a kind CL is implied in (67a, b), and an individual CL is implied in (67c, d, e). In each example in (68), multiple numeral expressions co-occur and the example is thus in a list context. An individual CL is implied for each numeral in (68a) and a container measure is implied for each numeral in (68b). Note that there is no fourth-tone-triggered tone sandhi of *yi* in (67d), so such examples are different from those in (60).

- | | | | |
|---------|--|----|--|
| (67) a. | wu-xiang-fen
five-spice-powder
‘five-spice-power’ | b. | wu-du-ju-quan
five-poison-all-complete
‘all five kinds of sins’ |
| c. | san-jiao-guanxi
three-angle-relation
‘triangle relation’ | d. | Yi xin bu neng er yong!
one heart not able two use
‘Don’t be absent-minded!’ |
| e. | San ren xing bi you wo shi.
three person walk must have my teacher
‘One can always find a teacher around.’ | | |
-
- | | |
|---------|---|
| (68) a. | san fang liang ting
three room two sitting.room
‘three bedrooms and two sitting rooms’ |
| b. | si cai yi tang
four vegetable one soup
‘four units of vegetable and one unit of soup’ |

The frequent occurrence of such expressions does not mean they are productive. One cannot replace a component of such an expression with another element of the same type freely. For instance, compared with (67a), neither of the two examples in (69) is acceptable. So we need to distinguish the productivity of types of construals from frequency rate of tokens (similar idiomatic expressions or compounds in which no CL occurs with a numeral and a noun are also found in other CL languages such as Thai; see Hundius & Kölver 1983: 209, fn. 5).

- | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| (69) a. | *liu-xiang-fen
six-spice-powder | b. | *wu-chou-fen
five-stink-powder | (cf. (67a)) |
|---------|------------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------|-------------|

Moreover, if a numeral denotes a very high round number, a CL is optional for a non-mass noun, as seen in (70a) and (70b) (cited from Xing 1997: 191). Aikhenvald (2003: 100) reports that several languages have the same pattern. She observes that for numeral CLs, “[I]n many languages, they are obligatory with smaller numbers, and optional with larger ones.”

- (70) a. Liu-yi (ge) funü cheng ban-bian tian.
six-billion CL woman support half-part heaven
'Six billion women can take half of the responsibilities of the world.'
- b. Wu-qian-wan (ge) jiaoshou touzi gupiao.
five-thousand-ten.thousand CL professor invest stock
'Fifty million professors invest in stocks.'
- c. Liu-yi ling san *(ge) funü
six-billion plus three CL woman
'six billion and three women'

It is possible that when no CL shows up between a complex numeral and a noun in data like (70), the last morpheme of the numeral, i.e., *yi* 'billion' in (70a) or *wan* 'ten.thousand' in (70b), functions as a collective CL, like *shuang* 'pair' or *da* 'dozen'. In (70c), the morpheme left-adjacent to the CL is *san* 'three', which may not function as a collective CL, and therefore, the CL *ge* is obligatory.

The complexity does not affect the establishment of the two values of Numerability. We will give our syntactic representations of the variations in 5.6.

2.3.2 Delimitability of nouns

Although all nouns in Chinese are non-count nouns, they are not the same, with respect to Delimitability. In 2.2.3, we see that nouns with [+Delimitable] are selected by individual CLs, and nouns with [-Delimitable] are selected by individuating CLs. As shown in (71), nouns like *he* 'river' may be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *changchang* 'long'. In contrast, material nouns such as *you* 'oil' in (72a) may not (ignore the occurrence of *de*).

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| (71) a. <i>changchang de he</i>
long DE river
'long river' | b. <i>da (de) qi-qiu</i>
big DE air-ball
'big balloon' | c. <i>fang (de) xigua</i>
square DE watermelon
'square watermelon' |
| (72) a. <i>*changchang (de) you</i>
long DE oil | b. <i>*da (de) zheng-qi</i>
big DE steam-air | c. <i>*fang (de) mianfen</i>
square DE flour |

The contrast is shown not only in modification, but also in predication. The string *hen chang* 'very long' may not be the predicate of the mass noun *you* 'oil' in (73a), but it can be the predicate of the non-mass noun *he* 'river' in (74a). The string *hen da* 'very big' may not be the predicate of the mass noun *zheng-qi* 'steam-air' in (73b), but it can be the predicate of the non-mass noun *qi-qiu* 'balloon' in (74b).⁹

- | | |
|---|---|
| (73) a. <i>*You hen chang.</i>
oil very long | b. <i>*Zheng-qi hen da.</i>
steam-air very big |
|---|---|

⁹ Audrey Li mentions to me an asymmetry in the word *tiankong* 'sky'. It may not be directly modified by *da* 'big', but can take *hen da* 'very big' as its predicate.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| (i) a. <i>*da tiankong</i>
big sky | b. <i>Tiankong hen da.</i>
sky very big
'The sky is very big.' |
|---------------------------------------|--|

The acceptability of (ib) can be accounted for by the traditional understanding that the sky has a certain shape (as in the expression *tian fang di yuan* 'the sky is square and the earth is round', and the question *Tiankong da-bu-da* 'Is the sky big?'). The unacceptability of (ia) shows the idiosyncratic property of certain nouns, which reject modifiers that denote the (assumed) intrinsic properties of their denotation (e.g., **tian fengmi* 'sweet honey'; see Paul 2010). Note that such rejection is not a general property of nouns (e.g., *ku kafei*, 'bitter coffee', *re huoguo* 'hot hotpot', *xiao mayi* 'small ant').

- (74) a. He hen chang.
 river very long
 ‘The river is very long.’
 b. Qi-qiu hen da.
 air-ball very big
 ‘The balloon is very big.’

Abstract or immaterial nouns are never modified by physical shape or size modifiers. However, some abstract nouns may, and some may not, be modified by boundary modifiers such as *wanzheng* ‘complete’, which are also delimitive modifiers. Nouns such as *xiaohua* ‘joke’ can be modified by *wanzheng*, as in (14a), whereas nouns such as *chouhen* ‘hatred’ reject the modifier, as seen in (14b).

- (75) a. wanzheng de {xiaohua/jianyi/gushi/jihua}
 complete DE joke/suggestion/story/plan
 ‘a complete {joke/suggestion/story/plan}’
 b. *wanzheng de {chouhen/kongju/heping/youxian/pinqiong/pingjing}
 complete DE hatred/fear/peace/leisure/poverty/stillness

This contrast shows that the feature Delimitability can divide Chinese nouns, which are all non-count ones, into the mass-type, which has [-Delimitable], and the non-mass-type, which has [+Delimitable].

Greenberg (1972: 26) claims that nouns in CL languages have the characteristics of a mass noun. The idea is also seen in Hansen (1972), Graham (1989), Krifka (1995), Doetjes (1996, 1997), Chierchia (1998), among many others. According to our new analysis of the count-mass contrast, however, not all nouns in Chinese are mass nouns.

2.4. The two features in unit words

2.4.1 Classification of unit words

Following Li (1924 [1992: 81]), we assume that in a numeral expression, a CL expresses the unit for counting. The CLs in (1), repeated here as (76), can be compared with other types of unit words. According to Croft (1994: 151-152), standard measures such as *liter* in (77a), container measures such as *bottle* in (77b), kind CLs such as *kind* in (77c), partitive CLs such as *section* in (77d), and collective CLs such as *group* in (77e) are universally available.

- (76) a. Yaoyao kanjian-le san zhi bi. [Individual CL]
 Yaoyao see-PRF three CL pen
 ‘Yaoyao saw three pens.’
 b. Yaoyao kanjian-le san di you. [Individuating CL]
 Yaoyao see-PRF three CL oil
 ‘Yaoyao saw three drops of oil’.
- (77) a. Kim bought three liters of milk. [Standard measure]
 b. Kim bought three bottles of milk. [Container measure]
 c. three kinds of chocolate [Kind CL]
 d. three sections of orange [Partitive CL]
 e. three groups of students [Collective CL]

Greenberg (1972: 10) points out that “all the classifiers are from the referential point of view merely so many ways of saying ... ‘times one’.” This is also true of all measure words. All types of CLs and measure words are used in counting, telling us what counts as one in the context, i.e., the unit of counting (see Croft 1994: 152 and Allan 1977: 293). When one wonders about the price of carrots in a market, the answer in (78) tells us that both the individual CL *gen* and the standard measure *gongjin* ‘kilogram’ can be used as counting unit,

and thus the two units can be in contrast.

- (78) Zhe shi mei yi gen hulubo de jiaqian, bu shi mei yi gongjin huluobo de jiaqian.
 this be every one CL carrot DE price, not be every one kilogram carrot DE price
 ‘This is the price of every carrot, rather than that of every kilogram of carrots.’

Both CLs and measure words have the so-called additive measure function, or have a monotonic interpretation (Schwarzschild 2006), which means that if we add *m* units of *x* and *n* units of *x* together, we get the sum (superset) of the two quantities; and if we divide *m* units, we get the subpart of the *m* units.

I thus treat all types of CLs and measure words as unit words. In Haas (1942), all unit words in Thai are given the label of “classifier”, while in Chao (1968), all unit words in Mandarin Chinese are given the label of “measure”.

Semantically, counting with either a CL or a measure word is a process of cardinal number assignment (Wiese 2003: 18). But the two kinds of cardinal number assignments are different. For instance, cardinal number assignments with CLs are about cardinality, excluding properties like weight or volume. This is different from cardinal number assignment with measure words (see Wiese 2003: 21). This difference correlates with the fact that immaterial abstract notions such as *suggestion* and *joke* are never counted by measure words (see (16) and (17)).¹⁰

In this section, we will see the differences among different types of unit words with respect to the feature [Delimitable] of the noun.

In counting, there is no restriction to numerals. If a numeral-like element in a construction is not in paradigmatic relation with any other numeral, the construction is not a numeral construction. See 2.4.4 for further discussion.

2.4.1.1 Unit words that occur with [-Delimitable]

Unit words that exclusively select [-Delimitable] nouns are individuating CLs (2.2.3), as shown in (79).

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| (79) a. shi dui tu
ten CL earth
‘ten heaps of earth’ | b. wu gu zheng-qi
five CL steam-air
‘five puffs of steam’ | |
| d. wu di you
five CL oil
‘five drops of oil’ | e. wu tan you
five CL oil
‘five puddles of oil’ | f. wu pao niao
five CL urine
‘five units of urine’ |
| g. liu ji yao-shui
six CL medicine-liquid
‘six units of liquid medicine’ | h. liang gu sichao
two CL thought
‘two schools of thought’ | |

¹⁰ Wiese (2003: 21) mentions another difference between counting with a CL and counting with a measure word: cardinal number assignments with CLs are based on absolute scales, and these scales generally do not allow transformation. Accordingly, there is only one number that applies to a given set. In contrast, 2 kilos of beef means the same as 2000 grams of beef. This kind of transformation between two different units and thus two different numbers are not seen in the cardinal number assignments with CLs. However, we may find counterexamples to this claim. *San shuang kuaizi* ‘three pair chopsticks’ gives the same counting result as *liu gen kuizi* ‘six CL chopsticks’, and *san da jidan* ‘three dozen eggs’ gives the same counting result as *36 ge jiadan* ‘36 CL eggs’ (I thank James Myers for discussing this issue with me). Also, multiple drops of liquid may make one dribble, and multiple dribbles may make one puddle. Moreover, a bottle of wine generally contains 0.75 litres, and four cups in cooking contain 1 litre (I thank Guy Emerson for the discussion). We thus see the transformation between standard and container measures. However, indeed, unlike the transformation between standard measures, such transformations are not systematic.

Recall that all nouns in Mandarin Chinese are [-Numerable]. Therefore, such CLs occur with [-Delimitable, -Numerable] nouns, which are mass nouns. Such CLs are called “Partitive Measures” in Chao (1968), and “Classifiers for massive objects” in Gerner & Bisang (2010: 606) (also see, e.g., Croft 1994: 162). Semantically, individuating CLs are associated with the idea that “the noun refers to some kind of mass and the classifier gives a unit of this mass” (Denny 1986: 298, cited in Aikhenvald 2003: 318).

Individuating CLs divide massive objects into units, but not necessarily the minimal units (contra Wilhelm *ibid.*: 49). Both *di* in (80a) and *tan* in (80b) are individuating CLs. The unit encoded by the latter is bigger than that by the former. Moreover, a chunk of mud or meat can be big or small, and such chunks are not the minimal units of mud or meat.

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (80) a. | san di shui
three CL water
‘three drops of water’ | b. | san tan shui
three CL water
‘three puddles of water’ |
|---------|---|----|--|

2.4.1.2 Unit words that occur with [+Delimitable]

A noun with [+Delimitable] refers to an entity that has its natural unit. Unit words that occur with [+Delimitable] nouns are divided into three types.

A. What counts as one is bigger than the natural unit of the element denoted by a non-mass noun. In this case, a collective CL occurs, as in (81). A collective CL expresses a unit for counting sets of elements that are encoded by a noun with the feature of [+Delimitable]. In (81a), *dui* expresses a unit that covers a group of entities that are called *luobo* ‘carrot’, and the noun *luobo* can be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *da* ‘big’. In (81b), *zu* also expresses a unit that covers a group of concepts encoded by *xiaohua* ‘joke’, and the this noun can be modified by a delimitive adjective such as *wanzheng* ‘complete’.

- | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|--|-----------------|
| (81) a. | shi dui luobo
ten CL carrot
‘ten piles of carrots’ | b. | san zu xiaohua
three CL joke
‘three groups of jokes’ | [Collective CL] |
|---------|--|----|--|-----------------|

Collective CLs (called Group Measures in Chao 1968: 595, and Aggregate Measure in Li & Thompson 1981: 107) include the so-called multiplying or number set type, such as *shuang* ‘pair’, *dui* ‘pair’, and *da* ‘dozen’ (cf. Bender & Beller 2006: 397), and the so-called blurring type, which includes *qun* ‘crowd’, *zu* ‘set, group’, and arrangement CLs, such as *pai* ‘row’ and *luo* ‘stack’.¹¹

B. What counts as one is smaller than the natural unit of the element denoted by the non-mass noun. In this case, a partitive CL occurs, as in (82). In (82), *pian* expresses a unit that represents a part of an entity encoded by *luobo*, which is [+Delimitable].¹²

¹¹ In Gebhardt (2011: 127), the collective CL *luo* ‘pile’ is labelled as a “mensural classifier”, and at the same time, it is claimed that “mesural classifiers can be used with both count nouns and mass nouns”. But it is clear that *luo*, as well as any other collective CL, may not occur with a non-mass noun.

¹² Partitive CL is one of the various types of unit words for pseudo-partitive constructions. Such constructions denote the quantity of entities (e.g., *three kilos of tea*), whereas partitive constructions (e.g., Fodor & Sag 1982, Jackendoff 1977) denote a part-whole relation within a definite domain (e.g., *three kilos of the tea*). Crosslinguistically, the two constructions can be morphologically and syntactically different (Koptjevskaja-Tamm 2009). The numeral expressions discussed here, including those contain a partitive CL, are all pseudo-partitive constructions. The fractional unit word *cheng* ‘one tenth’ in Chinese is used in partitive constructions only. I do not discuss this unit word in this book.

- (82) shi pian luobo [Partitive CL]
 ten CL carrot
 ‘ten slices of carrot’

C. What counts as one matches the natural unit of the element denoted by the non-mass noun. In this case, an individual CL is used, as in (83a) and (83b). In other words, an individual CL expresses the natural unit of an element that is encoded by a noun with the feature of [+Delimitable].

- (83) a. shi gen luobo b. shi ze xiaohua [Individual CL]
 ten CL carrot ten CL joke
 ‘ten carrots’ ‘ten jokes’

Individual CLs can be recognized as elements encoding intrinsic units of atomic elements, whereas other types of unit words encode provided units of various kinds of elements (cf. Hundius & Kölver 1983: 169). The three types of CLs introduced in this subsection can be distinguished each other from the following two tests.

The semantic differences between collective and the other two types of CLs can be seen in (84), where the nominal following the CL is the coordinate nominal *fanqie gen pingguo* ‘tomato and apple’. Only the collective CL *dui* allows the cardinal number to be assigned to the combination of the two kinds of entities, labelled as reading B. This is seen in the reading availability contrast between (84a) and the other two examples, (84b) and (84c).

- (84) a. liang dui fanqie gen pingguo [Collective CL]
 two CL tomato and apple
 A: ‘two piles: one pile of tomatoes and one pile of apples’
 B: ‘two piles: each pile has both tomatoes and apples’
 b. liang kuai fanqie gen pingguo [Partitive CL]
 two CL tomato and apple
 A: ‘two chunks: one chunk of tomato and one chunk of apple’
 B: *‘two chunks: each chunk has both tomatoes and apples’
 c. liang ge fanqie gen pingguo [Individual CL]
 two CL tomato and apple
 A: ‘two individuals: one tomato and one apple’
 B: *‘two individuals: each individual has both a tomato and an apple’

We can assume that in Reading B of (84), what is counted is the combination of tomatoes and apples, whereas in Reading A, there is no such a combination in counting. In other words, the unit for Reading B is a complex unit. This reading is available for collective CLs, but absent for partitive and individual CLs.

The semantic differences between individual CLs and the other two types of CLs can be

-
- (i) Ba cheng xuesheng yijing kao-le Tuofu.
 eight 1/10 student already test-PRF TOEFL
 ‘80% of the students have taken the TOEFL test.’

Liao and Wang (2011: 150) claim that in a partitive construction, an individual CL or a measure word precedes a kind CL, as in (ia). Their discussion does not cover partitive CLs. In data like (ib), a partitive CL precedes an individual CL.

- (ii) a. san zhi zhe liang zhong gou b. san pian zhe liang ge xigua
 three CL this two kind dog three CL this two CL watermelon
 ‘three of these two kinds of dog’ ‘three slices of these two watermelons’

seen in (85), where each CL is modified by the adjective *da* ‘big’. Only the individual CL construction in (85c) expresses the meaning that *xigua* ‘watermelon’ is big. This reading is labelled as reading A. The other two constructions in (85a) and (85b), respectively, do not express such an assertion. The meaning of *da* is applied to the counting unit only in these two constructions, as seen in Reading B.

- (85) a. liang da dui xigua [Collective CL]
 two big CL watermelon
 A: *‘two piles of big watermelons’
 B: ‘two big piles of watermelons’
- b. liang da pian xigua [Partitive CL]
 two big CL watermelon
 A: *‘two slices of big watermelons’
 B: ‘two big slices of watermelons’
- c. liang da ke xigua [Individual CL]
 two big CL watermelon
 A: ‘two big watermelons’
 B: *‘two big units of watermelons’

In (85), the meaning of the adjective *da* ‘big’ is associated with the noun *xigua* ‘watermelon’ in Reading A, but not in Reading B. The reading contrasts tell us that this association is possible for individual CLs, but not for collective and partitive CLs.

We summarize the contrasts in (86):

(86)

	complex unit	adjective-association
Collective CL	✓	*
Partitive CL	*	*
Individual CL	*	✓

Generally speaking, the same form of a unit word can belong to different types, depending on the type of the associated noun, and the function of the unit in the context. In (79a), the CL *dui* occurs with the mass noun *tu* ‘earth’, and it is thus an individuating CL. However, in (81), *dui* occurs with the non-mass noun *luobo* ‘carrot’, and it is thus a collective CL. Similarly, when the CL *pian* occurs with different kinds of non-mass nouns, it may have different status. When it occurs with *luobo* ‘carrot’ in (82), it denotes a part of a carrot and thus it is a partitive CL. When it occurs with *qiche* ‘car’, as in (87a) below, it is a collective CL. When it occurs with *shuye* ‘leaf’, as in (87b), it represents the natural unit of a leaf, and therefore it is an individual CL. Moreover, if the CL *pian* occurs with the mass noun *moutou* ‘wood’, as in (87c), it apportions the mass of wood, therefore it is an individuating CL. The two examples of the CL *duo* in (88) also show the ambiguity of the CL.

- (87) a. Shan-jiao-xia ting-zhe yi pian qiche. [Collective CL]
 mountain-foot-below park-PRG one CL car
 ‘At the foot of the mountain was an area of cars’
- b. san pian shuye [Individual CL] c. san pian mutou [Individuating CL]
 three CL leaf three CL wood
 ‘three leaves’ ‘three pieces of wood’

- (88)a. san duo hua [Individual CL] b. san duo yun [Individuating CL]
 three CL flower three CL cloud
 ‘three flowers’ ‘three pieces of cloud’

In English, unit words may also be ambiguous. The unit word *piece* is an individuating CL in (89a), but a partitive CL in (89b) (see Lehrer 1986: 115). Moreover, the unit word *heap* is an individuating CL in (90a), but a collective CL in (90b).

- (89) a. two pieces of paper b. two pieces of celery
 (90) a. three heaps of sand b. three heaps of books

2.4.1.3 Unit words that have no occurrence restriction with the value of [Delimitable]

Kind CLs have no occurrence restrictions with respect to the value of [Delimitable] of the noun. They occur with all types of nouns. Standard and container measures occur with either [+Delimitable] nouns or material type of [-Delimitable] nouns, but reject nouns denoting immaterial notions (see (16) and (17)).¹³ So in general, these three types of unit words are not sensitive to the contrast between [+Delimitable] and [-Delimitable]. In the following data, the nouns in the a-examples are [+Delimitable] and those in the b-examples are [-Delimitable].

- (91) a. shi zhong luobo b. shi zhong mianfen [Kind CL]
 Ten kind carrot ten kind flour
 ‘ten types of carrot’ ‘ten types of flour’
 (92) a. shi gongjin luobo b. shi gongjin mianfen [Standard measure]
 ten kilo carrot ten kilo flour
 ‘ten kilos of carrots’ ‘ten kilos of flour’
 (93) a. shi xiang luobo b. shi xiang mianfen [Container measure]
 ten box carrot ten box flour
 ‘ten boxes of carrots’ ‘ten boxes of flour’

When standard and container measures occur with nouns of [+Delimitable], they do not have to represent the natural units of the elements encoded by the nouns. For instance, *shi gongjin luobo* ‘ten kilos of carrots’ can be more or less than ten carrots, and it can also be the weight of ten carrots coincidentally. If each carrot is exactly one kilo, ten kilos of carrots have ten carrots. In this special case, the standard measure *gongjin* happens to denote the natural unit of carrots. Moreover, if each kilo of carrots has multiple carrots in the discourse context, the standard measure unit happens to get the same interpretation as a collective CL; and if each kilo has less than one carrot in the context, the standard unit happens to get the same interpretation as a partitive CL. The same is true of container measures. For instance, *san xiang dian-shan* ‘three box electric-fan’ may mean either three boxes of fans and each box contains several fans, or three boxes and each contains one fan. In the latter reading, the

¹³ Standard measures should also include units for measuring time (e.g., *yue* ‘month’), money (e.g., *yuan*), and electricity (e.g., *wa* ‘watt’), etc. (see Cheng 1973: 286).

The words *nian* ‘year’, *yue* ‘month’, *ri* ‘day’, and *xiaoshi* ‘hour’ may be ambiguous between unit words and regular nouns (T’sou 1976: 1239; J. Tang 2005: 457). When they follow a CL, as in (i), they are nouns; but when they follow a numeral immediately, as in (ii), as pointed out by T’sou (*ibid.*) and Li & Thompson (1981: 105), they occur in the position of a unit word. In this case, either the noun *shijian* ‘time’ is silent Cinque (2011: 3), or the measure word moves from N to the position of individual CLs (Watanabe 2012).

(i) san ge xiaoshi (ii) san xiaoshi
 three CL hour three hour
 ‘three hours’ ‘three hours’

container measure *xiang* happens to denote the natural unit of fans. So the functions of a container measure may also overlap with those of other unit words. Since measure words are not, but other unit words are, specified with the value of [Delimitable], it is not surprising that the former may have function-overlap with the latter.

2.4.1.4 Summary and the general function of unit words

The classification of various unit words is summarized in (94):

(94)

	N
Individuating CLs	[-Delimitable]
Collective/Partitive/Individual CLs	[+Delimitable]
Kind CLs/Container measures/Standard measures	[+/-Delimitable] (underspecified)

The basic function of all types of unit words in numeral expressions is to tell us what counts as one. In (95) and (96), the nouns are the same, *xigua* ‘watermelon’, but the counting units are different.

- (95) a. san ke xigua [Individual CL]
three CL watermelon
‘three watermelons’
b. san zhu xigua [Individual CL]
three CL watermelon
‘three watermelon plants’
c. san dui xigua [Collective CL]
three CL watermelon
‘three piles of watermelons’
d. san pian xigua [Partitive CL]
three CL watermelon
‘three slices of watermelons’
e. san zhong xigua [Kind CL]
three CL watermelon
‘three kinds of watermelons’
- (96) a. san boun xigua [Standard measure]
three pound watermelon
‘three pounds of watermelons’
b. san gongjin xigua [Standard measure]
three kilo watermelon
‘three kilos of watermelons’
c. san xiang xigua [Container measure]
three box watermelon
‘three boxes of watermelons’
d. san dai xigua [Container measure]
three bag watermelon
‘three bags of watermelons’

2.4.1.5 The CL *ge*

The CL *ge* in Mandarin Chinese is special. Generally speaking, when it occurs, it can be replaced by an individual CL, if such a CL is available, as seen in the alternations in the three examples in (97), or by a kind CL, as seen in the three examples in (98), or by an individuating CL, as seen in the two examples in (99).

- (97) a. san {ge/ke} xigua b. san {ge/tiao} jianyi c. san {ge/chang} shigu
three CL/CL watermelon three CL/CL suggestion three CL/CL accident
‘three watermelons’ ‘three suggestions’ ‘three accidents’

- (98) a. Yani you san {ge/zhong} xinnian.
 Yani have three CL/CL belief
 ‘Yani has three kinds of beliefs.’
 b. Yani you san {ge/zhong} xin-tai.
 Yani have three CL/CL mind-state
 ‘Yani has three kinds of states of mind.’
 c. Mei ge cunzi dou faxian-le zhe liang {ge/zhong} bingdu.
 every CL village all find-PRF this two CL/CL virus
 ‘These two kinds of virus have been found in every village.’
 (99)a. Yani faxian-le san {ge/tiao} cuowu.
 Yani find-PRF three CL/CL error
 ‘Yani found three errors.’
 b. Ni zheyang zuo you san {ge/dian} haochu.
 you so do have three CL/CL benefit
 ‘Your so doing has three benefits.’

However, the replacement in the other direction is not always possible. For instance, the individual CLs in (100) and the kind CLs in (101) may not be replaced with *ge*, without changing either the acceptability or the intended meanings (see Loke 1994).

- | | | | |
|---------|--|---|--|
| (100) | a. san ke shu
three CL tree
‘three trees’ | b. san tiao daolu
three CL road
‘three roads’ | c. san zhi bi
three CL pen
‘three pens’ |
| (101)a. | san zhong shu
three kind book
‘three kinds of books’ | b. san zhong xiaohua
three kind joke
‘three kinds of jokes’ | c. san kuan maozi
three style hat
‘three styles of hats’ |

Moreover, no alternation between *ge* and an individuating CL that occur with a concrete noun in either direction is possible. The individuating CLs in the three examples in (102a,b,c) may not be replaced by *ge*, and *ge* may not occur with any non-abstract mass noun, as shown in (102d). Thus Chao’s (1968: 508-509) generalization that “[M]ass nouns do not take the individual classifier *g*” (sic) is right for non-abstract mass nouns.¹⁴

¹⁴ Many papers have been published on *ge*. See Myers (2000) for a review. In data like the following, *ge* is also a CL, followed by a nominalized element (Öta 2003 [1958]: 363, Chao 1968: 320). The word *ta* here has been analyzed as an indefinite D-element in Lin & Zhang (2006):

- (i) Zanmen wan ta (yi) ge tongkuai!
 we play it one CL satisfaction
 ‘Let’s play as much as we like.’

Ge may also occur in other contexts in which no numeral may occur. In such uses, it is thus not a unit word. For instance, it can occur to the left of a secondary predicate, as in (ii) (Öta 1958: sec 21.4, Zhu 1982: 49):

- (ii) a. Akiu pao-le *(ge) kuai. b. Akiu xiao *(ge) bu-ting.
 Akiu run-PRF GE fast Akiu laugh GE not-stop
 ‘Akiu ran fast.’ ‘Akiu laughed endlessly.’

No other CL can occur in such contexts. Lü (1983: 131) claims that in certain cases, *ge* is used for prosodic reasons (cf. W. Zhang 1991: 266). Liu (2006: 41) assumes that *ge* in data like (ii) heads a subordinate clause. Q. Zhang (2009) analyzes such a use of *ge* as a degree word, and Shu (2012) treats it as a mood/aspect marker.

In (iii), *ge* also rejects a numeral (Q. Zhang’s 2009 event CL). In (iv), *ge* precedes a proper name (Lü 1990 [1944]: 159; Öta 2003 [1958]: 75; Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 523; Chen 2003). *Ge* can also precede a pronoun (Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 538).

- (iii) Wo he (*yi) ge shui jiu lai. (iv) Na *(ge) Hufei zhen bu xianghua.
 I drink one GE water then come that CL Hufei truly not decent
 ‘I’ll come after I drink some water.’ ‘That Hufei is really unreasonable.’

However, examples like (iv) may show that the uses of pronouns and proper names have the syntax of

- (102)a. san di you b. san zhang zhi c. san gu zhengqi
 three CL oil three CL paper three CL steam-air
 ‘three drops of oil’ ‘three pieces of paper’ ‘three puffs of steam’
 d. *san ge {you/zhi/zheng-qi/xie/rou/bu/qian/yanlei}
 three CL oil/paper/steam-air/blood/meat/cloth/money/tear

When *ge* occurs in the position of an individual CL, the noun can be of various semantic type (e.g., *ren* ‘person’, *guojia* ‘country’, *xigua* ‘watermelon’, *taiyang* ‘sun’), as pointed out by Myers (2000). Thus, *ge* has no semantic sorting function at all. Historically speaking, *ge* emerged quite late (see 2.7.3), but it is the most frequently used CL, and many nouns, especially abstract nouns and nouns denoting new concepts, occur with *ge* only. Myers calls *ge* default CL.

One issue that needs to be clarified is the following. It has been assumed that individual CLs typically mark the first mention of a new item; they occur with indefinite nouns rather than definite ones and the CL *ge* may take a sortal CL as an antecedent (Erbaugh 1986: 408, Aikhenvald 2003: 324, 328). The example in (103a) is used to show this belief. However, there is no problem if we exchange the positions of the two CLs in this example, as seen in (103b). Our (103c) is another example in which it is the CL *ge* that occurs first, and another CL occurs later in describing the same entity.

- (103)a. Cong neibian guolai yi ge xiaohaizi, uh...qi, qí, qí-zhe yi liang jiaotache
 from there come one CL child uh ride ride ride-PRG one CL bike
 uh shi yi ge hen ke'ai de xiao de jiaotache.
 uh be one CL very cute DE little DE bike
 b. ..., qi-zhe yi ge jiaotache, shi yi liang hen ke'ai de xiao de jiaotache.
 ride-PRG one CL bike be one CL very cute DE little DE bike
 Both: ‘From there comes a child, riding a bike, (it) is a very cute little bike.’
 c. Yuanyuan de lai-le yí ge ren, yuanlai shi yí wei lao jiaoshou.
 far DE come-PRF one CL person in.fact be one CL old professor
 ‘A person came from far away. It turned out to be an old professor.’

2.4.2 Unit words as the unique Numerability bearers in Chinese

All unit words may combine with a numeral directly. Therefore all unit words have the feature [+Numerable], and thus countable.

English unit words are also countable. As stated in Grimshaw (2007: 204 fn. 6), unit words in English can never be mass nouns. For instance, Chierchia (2010: 103) claims that in (104), the unit word *quantities* is countable, and thus the whole NP *quantities of water* is countable, although *water* is not countable. In my analysis, *quantities* bears [+Numerable] in the example.

- (104) I am going to spill three quantities of water on your floor.

Since no noun in Chinese has the feature [+Numerable] and all unit words have the feature, the latter are the unique Numerability bearer in numeral expressions of the language. We can see that Numerability does not have to be anchored to lexical or root elements. In Chinese, unit words are analyzed as nominal auxiliaries in Chao (1948, 1968: 584), Gao (1948), and Z. Lu (1951: 42), as numeral auxiliaries in Ōta (2003 [1958]: 146), and as light

common nouns (Ōta 2003 [1958]: 75; X. F. Zhang 2008: 413; De Clercq 2008).

restrictions assumed in their theory cannot be maintained).

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (108)a. | san tiao xianglian
three CL necklace
'three necklaces' | b. | san chang tiao xianglian [Individual CL]
three long CL necklace
'three long necklaces' |
| (109)a. | san di you
three CL oil
'three drops of oil' | b. | san da di you [Individuating CL]
three big CL oil
'three big drops of oil' |
| (110)a. | san pian xigua
three CL watermelon
'three slices of watermelon' | b. | san da pian xigua [Partitive CL]
three big CL watermelon
'three big slices of watermelon' |
| (111)a. | san qun yang
three CL sheep
'three flocks of sheep' | b. | san da qun yang [Collective CL]
three big CL sheep
'three big flocks of sheep' |
| (112)a. | san xiang xianglian
three box necklace
'three boxes of necklaces' | b. | san da xiang xianglian [Container measure]
three big box necklace
'three big boxes of necklaces' |
| c. | san ping you
three bottle oil
'three bottles of oil' | d. | san da ping you
three big bottle oil
'three big bottles of oil' |

Individual CLs in other languages such as Thai (Hundius & Kölver 1983: 169-171), Kiriwina (Croft 1994: 150), and Hungarian (Csirmaz & Dékány 2010: e.g., (36)) may also be modified by delimitive adjectives. In non-CL languages, individuating CLs are available and they may also be modified by delimitive adjectives. For instance, while **spherical wine* is not acceptable, *a spherical drop of wine* is possible (Schwarzschild 2006: 88). CLs in Korean however may not be modified (Byeong Yi, p.c., Sept. 16, 2010). Since kind CLs may not be modified, the feature is not a defining property of CLs.

I leave to Chapter 5 the discussion of the morphological constraints on such modification in Chinese and possible derivation of the constructions.

2.4.4 Two special *yi*-X-NP constructions¹⁶

In this subsection, we discuss two special *yi*-X-NP constructions, to show that they are not numeral expressions, although the word *yi* 'one' looks like a numeral and X looks like a unit word. The two constructions are illustrated by the examples in (113) and (114), respectively. I call the first construction Exhaustive YI Construction (EYC), since it encodes an exhaustive reading consistently, seen in the word 'whole' in the translations. The element X, which follows *yi* immediately, is *shen* 'body' in (113a) and *lian* 'face' in (113b). The element X in an EYC is called temporary CL in the literature (Chao 1968: 603, Li & Thompson 1981: 111; B. Li 2009). I call the second construction, such as those in (114), Non-Exhaustive YI Construction (NEYC), since it does not encode an exhaustive reading. The element X is the CL *xian* in (114a), the CL *pian* in (114b), and the CL *fan* in (114c).

- (113)a. Ta-men {*yi*/**san*} *shen* nitu. (EYC)
3-PL one/three body mud
'They, their whole bodies are in mud.'

¹⁶ I am grateful to Liu Chensheng for a discussion that inspired me to write this subsection. Liu (2012) claims that X in the two constructions is an "Amount" CL, parallel to the "Number" CL that occurs in numeral expressions, and the assumed two types of CLs have the same syntactic position. In this subsection, I argue for a different syntactic analysis of the constructions.

- b. Ta-men {yi/*san} lian you.
3-PL one/three face oil
'They, their whole faces are covered by oil.'
- (114)a. Baoyu zhongyu kandao-le {yi/*san}-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
Baoyu finally see-PRF one/three-CL hope
'Baoyu finally saw a hope.'
- b. Baoyu gandao {yi/*san}-pian mangran.
Baoyu feel one/three-CL confusion
'Baoyu felt confused.'
- c. Baoyu bu hui jujue Daiyu de {yi/*san}-fan renqing.
Baoyu not will refuse Daiyu DE one/three-CL warmness
'Baoyu will not refuse Daiyu's warmness.'

Three major properties distinguish the two constructions from numeral expressions.

First, the word *yi* in the two constructions is not in paradigmatic relation with any other numerals. The examples in (113) and (114) already show that *yi* may not be replaced by *san* 'three'. The examples in (115) further tell us that *yi* is not in contrast to any other numerals such as *san* 'three'.

- (115)a. *Baoyu hua-le yi lian hong-yanse, er bushi san lian hong-yanse. (EYC)
3-PL paint-PRF one face red-color, but not three face red-color
- b. *Baoyu zhongyu kandao-le yi-xian xiwang, er bushi san-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
Baoyu finally see-PRF one-CL hope but not three-CL hope

Second, unlike a real numeral, *yi* does not license a numeral-oriented modifier such as *yigong* 'totally' or a verb that selects a numeral expression such as *duo-da* 'as many as', as shown in (116).

- (116)a. Baoayi (*zonggong/*duoda) yi shen nitu. (EYC)
Baoyu totally/as.many.as one body mud
'Baoyu, his whole body is in mud.'
- b. Baoyu (*zonggong) gandao (*duo-da) yi-pian mangran. (NEYC)
Baoyu totally feel as.many.as one-CL confusion
'Baoyu felt confused.'

The above two properties show that *yi* in the two constructions is not a real numeral.

Third, unlike a unit word in a numeral expression, the element X does not license ellipsis. The CL *kuai* in (117a) licenses the ellipsis of *shoujuan* 'handkerchief' in the second conjunct. The acceptability contrast between (117a) on the one side and (117b) and (117c) on the other. This constraint shows that X does not surface at a head position, unlike a unit word.

- (117)a. Baoyu you san kuai shoujuan, Daiyu you si kuai.
Baoyu have three CL handkerchief Daiyu have four CL
'Baoyu has three handkerchiefs and Daiyu has four.'
- b. *Baoyu yi lian you, Daiyu ye yi lian. (EYC)
Baoyu one face oil Daiyu also one face
- c. *Baoyu kandao-le yi-xian xiwang, Daiyu ye kandao-le yi-xian. (NEYC)
Baoyu see-PRF one-CL hope Daiyu also see-PRF one-CL

The above three properties separate the two *yi*-X-NP constructions from numeral

expressions and indicate that the syntactic relation between *yi* and X in the two constructions is not that between a numeral and a unit word in a numeral expression.

But what are the formal status of the word *yi* and that of X in the two constructions? My analysis of the constructions is the following (118), where the status of each constituent is labelled by the subscript.

- (118)a. [[YI_{exhaustive quantifier} X_{NP}]_{subject} NP_{predicate}]_{clause} (EYC)
 b. [[YI-X_{CL}]_{existential quantifier} NP]_{NP} (NEYC)

I claim that in an EYC, *yi*-X and the NP establish a subject-predicate relation, and *yi* is an exhaustive quantifier of the subject. For instance, in (119a), *yi-shen* ‘one body’ is a subject and *nitu* ‘mud’ is its predicate. The structure of (119a) is parallel to that of (119b) and that of (119c).

- (119)a. Ta-men yi shen nitu. (= (113a)) (EYC)
 3-PL one body mud
 ‘They, their whole bodies are in mud.’
 b. Ta-men quan shen hong maofa.
 3-PL whole body red hair
 ‘They, their whole bodies have read hairs.’
 c. Baoyu man lian nitu.
 Baoyu whole face mud
 ‘Baoyu, his face is covered by mud.’

The exhaustivite quantifier use of *yi* ‘one’ is also seen in other expressions, such as the example in (120a), which is synoymoust to the example in (120b). Other expressions in which *yi* occurs and an exhaustiveness is encoded include *yi-gai* ‘all’, *yi-lü* ‘all’, and *yi-qie* ‘all’ (see Lü et al. 1999). In these expressions, the element following *yi* (i.e., *gai*, *lü* and *qie*) is never used as a CL.

- (120)a. yi-xin-yi-yi
 one-heart-one-will
 b. quan-xin-quan-yi
 whole-heart-whole-will
 both: ‘whole-heartedly’

For NEYCs, I claim that the word *yi* and the CL together form an existential quantifier. This quantifier is in the form of a cluster, similar to the cluster *yi-dian* ‘a bit’ (2.5.2). It is also similar to *a little* in English. Since the associate noun may not combine with a numeral directly, both the *yi*-CL cluster and *a little* occur with nouns with [-Numerable] (see 2.2.3).

My claim is compatible with Chen’s (2003) general claim that the cluster *yi*-CL in Mandarin Chinese may play the role of an indefinite determiner, although he does not specifically discuss NEYCs. According to Bisang (1999, 2012: 19), CLs in CL languages have various extended uses, including as focus markers, possession markers, or modification markers, in the absence of a numeral. The use of a CL inside a quantifier in Mandarin Chinese is compatible to his finding. Note that the CL *dian*, which has been developed from a noun meaning ‘point’, may also function as a counting unit (see footnote 20). Both the CL following *yi* in a NEYC and *dian* in *yi-dian* ‘a bit’ are extended uses of CLs in the language.

My analysis of the two constructions explain the first two shared properties above directly: in neither construction, is *yi* a numeral and X a counting unit.

For the third shared property, i.e., the impossibility to license NP ellipsis, my explanations are the following. In an EYC, since X is a subject, its failure to license the ellipsis of the NP, which is a predicate, is expected. The unacceptability of (117b) is similar to the unacceptability of (121a). In a NEYC, the cluster *yi*-CL behaves the same as quantifiers such as *daliang* ‘a lot’, which do not license NP ellipsis, as seen in (121b). The unacceptability of (117c) is similar to the unacceptability of (121b). Therefore, the two *yi*-X-NP constructions fail to license NP ellipsis for different reasons.

- (121)a. *Baoyu man lian naiyou, Daiyu ye man lian. (cf. (117b))
 Baoyu whole face butter Daiyu also whole face
 b. *Baoyu mai-le daliang shuiguo, Daiyu ye mai-le daliang. (cf. (117c))
 Baoyu buy-PRF a.lot fruit Daiyu also buy-PRF a.lot

My different analyses of the two *yi*-X-NP constructions are supported by the following facts.

First, *yi* asserts a sense of completeness in an EYC, but not in a NEYC. This is attested in two facts. The first fact is that *yi* in an EYC can be replaced by the word *man* ‘full, whole’ (Y. M. Li 2000: 54), in the absence of the near synonymous adjective *zheng* ‘whole’, while the parallel replacement is impossible for a NEYC. (122) shows the contrast. The word *man* functions as an exhaustive quantifier. If *yi* in an EYC is also such a quantifier, the possible replacement by *man* is expected. The second fact is that *yi* in an EYC can be in contrast to the non-exhaustive quantifier *ban* ‘half’, as seen in (123a), but this is impossible for a NEYC, as seen in (123b). In my analysis, *yi* in an EYC is an exhaustive quantifier. *Ban* ‘half’ encodes partivity. The contrast between the exhaustivity and partivity expressed in (123a) is possible. But *yi* in a NEYC is not an exhaustive quantifier, and therefore, it may be neither replaced by *man* nor in a contrast to the partitive quantifier *ban*.

- (122)a. Baoyu zhang-le {yi/man} lian shuidou. (EYC)
 Baoyu grow-PRF one/whole face chickenpox
 ‘Baoyu has grown a whole face of chickenpox.’
 b. Baoyu kan-bu-dao {yi/*man}-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
 Baoyu see-not-to one/whole-CL hope
 ‘Baoyu could not see a hope.’
 (123)a. Baoyu hua-le yi lian hong-yanse, er bushi ban lian hong-yanse. (EYC)
 Baoyu paint-PRF one face red-color, but not half face red-color
 ‘Baoyu painted his whole face, rather than half of it, red.’
 b. *Baoyu zhongyu kandao-le yi-xian xiwang, er bushi ban-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
 Baoyu finally see-PRF one-CL hope but not half-CL hope

Second, *yi* in an EYC can be followed by the adjective *zheng* ‘whole’ in certain cases, while this is never possible for a NEYC. The contrast is shown in (124). The contrast can be explained by my analysis in (118): In (118a), it is possible to host an appropriate adjective between a quantifier and an NP, whereas there is no position to host any adjective within a quantifier cluster. Not only *zheng*, but also other adjectives are banned in the position of a NEYC, as shown by (124b). Recall that a delimitive adjective may occur between a numeral and a unit word in general (2.4.3). The constraint seen in (124b) further indicates that the relation between *yi* and the CL in a NEYC is not that between a numeral and a unit word.

- (124)a. Baoyu zhang-le yi (zheng) lian shuidou. (EYC)
 Baoyu grow-PRF one whole face chickenpox
 ‘Baoyu has grown a whole face of chickenpox.’
 b. Baoyu kan-bu-dao yi (*zheng/*xiao)-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
 Baoyu see-not-to one whole/small-CL hope
 ‘Baoyu could not see a hope.’

Third, X in NEYCs can be replaced by the CL *dian* in certain cases, but the similar replacement is never possible in EYCs. The contrast is seen in (125).

- (125)a. Baoyu gandao yi-{si/dian} beishang/mangran. (NEYC)
 Baoyu feel one-CL/CL disappointment/confusion
 ‘Baoyu feels a bit disappointment/confusion.’
 b. Baoyu yi {shen/*dian} nitu. (EYC)
 Baoyu one body/CL mud
 ‘Baoyu, his whole body is in mud.’

If *dian* follows *yi*, it behaves like a generic CL, similar to the CL *ge* (2.4.1.5). The CL *ge* is exchangeable with another CL in some cases (Loke 1994). Similarly, *dian* is exchangeable with another CL in some cases (*fan* in (114c), for instance, may not be changed into *dian*). It is the existence of the *dian* replacement that distinguishes NEYCs from EYCs. X in the latter is analyzed as a subject, which of course may not be replaced by the CL *dian*.

One difference between the cluster *yi*-CL in a NEYC and *yi-dian* is that *yi* can be optional in the latter in certain cases (*(yi)-dian*). The difference can be explained by the degree of grammaticalization. The more general does the cluster *yi*-CL is, which means the further the cluster goes down the continuum of grammaticalization, the greater is its phonological reduction (see Chen 2003: 1171). The first part of the cluster, *yi*, can be dropped in *yi-dian*.

Fourth, a NEYC initiated with the *yi*-CL cluster is indefinite, and no exact quantity is expressed, since *yi* can be replaced by *ji* ‘a bit, several’ in certain contexts, as seen in (126a). But this *ji*-replacement is never possible for an EYC, as seen in (126b). In my analysis, since the *yi*-CL cluster in a NEYC is an existential quantifier, it does not assert any exact quantity, therefore, the vague quantity-denoting *ji* may play the same role as *yi*. In contrast, since the *yi* in an EYC is an exhaustive quantifier, which asserts the maximality of the quantifying scope, its role may not be played by any vague quantity-denoting element such as *ji*.¹⁷

- (126)a. Baoyu gandao {yi/ji}-si beishang. (NEYC)
 Baoyu feel one/a.bit-CL disappointment
 ‘Baoyu feels a bit disappointment.’
 b. Baoyu {yi/*ji} shen nitu. (EYC)
 Baoyu one/a.bit body mud
 ‘Baoyu, his whole body is in mud.’

Fifth, in a numeral or quantifier expression, the modifier of the NP can precede the

¹⁷ If the cluster *yi*-CL of a NEYC is preceded by a demonstrative, the whole nominal is definite, as expected. A demonstrative or article is base-generated at DP-level, while a quantifier is base-generated below DP (e.g., *those many students, the litter water*).

(i) Baoyu zong xiang-zhe na yi-xian xiwang.
 Baoyu always think-PRG that one-CL hope
 ‘Baoyu always thinks about that hope.’

numeral or quantifier, as seen in (127a) (Zhang 2006), however, no modifier of the NP may precede *yi* in an EYC, as seen in (127b), but the modifier of the NP may precede *yi* in a NEYC, as seen in (127c).

- (127)a. cong nanfang lai de daliang mingong
 from south come de many worker
 ‘many workers that come from the south’
- b. *Baoyu angzang de yi lian you. (EYC)
 Baoyu dirty de one face oil
 Intended: ‘Baoyou, the whole face is in dirty oil.’
- c. Baoyu zhongyu kandao-le miaomang de yi-xian xiwang. (NEYC)
 Baoyu finally see-PRF forlorn DE one-CL hope
 ‘Baoyu saw a forlorn hope finally.’

In the language, no modifier of a (nominal) predicate may precede its subject, as shown by (128). The unacceptability of (127b) above parallels to that of (128). On the other hand, in my analysis of NEYCs, the cluster *yi*-CL is a quantifier, parallel to (127a), therefore, the occurrence of *miaomang* ‘forlorn’, as a modifier of the NP *xiwang* ‘hope’, to the left of the cluster in (127c), is justified.

- (128) *Shanliang de tianshang you xingxing.
 shining DE sky have star
 Intended: ‘There are shining stars in the sky.’

In sum, the relationship between *yi* and X in the two *yi*-X-NP constructions is not that between a numeral and a counting unit. Instead, in an EYC, the relation is that between an exhaustive quantifier and a subject, and in a NEYC, the relation is that between two components of an existential quantifier.

2.5 Numerability and quantifiers in Chinese

It is well-known that quantifiers have co-occurrence restrictions with respect to countability in English, as seen in section 2.2.3. In this section, we show that some quantifiers also exhibit the similar co-occurrence restrictions in Chinese.

Recall that it is unit words, rather than nouns, that can be count elements in Chinese. So if a quantifier has to occur with a count element in Chinese, it must combine with a unit word.

According to Cardinaletti & Giusti (2006), quantifying elements can be modifiers or non-modifiers, cross-linguistically, and they are syntactically different (also see de Belder 2011a: 105). In Chinese, modifiers can be followed by the functional word *de*. Quantifying elements such as *daliang* ‘a lot’, *suoyou* ‘all’, *quanbu* ‘all’, *daduoshu* ‘most’, *dabufen* ‘most’ can be followed by *de*, and thus they should be quantifying modifiers. They modify NPs directly, and thus may not be followed by a CL, as seen in (129) (see Tang 2007: 984; Hsieh 2008: 61; X. P. Li 2011: 6):¹⁸

- (129)a. suoyou (de) (*duo) hua b. daliang (de) (*ping) shui
 all DE CL flower a.lot DE bottle water
 ‘all of the flowers’ ‘a lot of water’

¹⁸ Note that the position of *de* is to the left of the unit word in (129) and (134) in 2.5.3. Thus the issue is different from the one in 2.6.4, where whether *de* may follow a unit word is discussed.

Putting such modifiers aside, I consider quantifiers that may not be followed by *de*.

2.5.1 Quantifiers that occur with [+Numerable]

Cardinal numerals, ordinal numerals, and quantifiers such as *ji* ‘how many’ (Chao 1968: 580; it is called “unknown figure” in Iljic 1994: 107, and “vague number” in Hsieh 2008: 62), *ji* ‘a few, several, several’, *haoji* ‘several’, *ruogan* ‘several’, the paucal quantifier *liang-san* ‘two-three => a few’ (Ōta (2003 [1958]: 134), *ge* ‘each’, and the dual quantifier *liang* must be followed by a unit word, as seen in (130). Moreover, the quantifiers *man* ‘all’ must be followed by a unit word of an appropriate type in counting, as seen in (130g). Such quantifiers occur with elements that have [+Numerable].¹⁹

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(130)a. san *(duo) hua
three CL flower
‘three flowers’</p> <p>c. Ni you ji *(duo) hua?
you have how.many CL flower
‘How many flowers do you have?’</p> <p>e. liang-san *(duo) hua
two-three CL flower
‘a few flowers’</p> <p>g. man *(ben) rijì dou xie-zhe liang ge zì: jian fei
whole CL diary all write-PRG two CL word lose fat
‘The whole diary is full of two words: lose weight.’</p> | <p>b. dì san *(duo) hua²⁰
ORD three CL flower
‘the third flower’</p> <p>d. haoji *(duo) hua
several CL flower
‘several flowers’</p> <p>f. liang *(duo) hua
dual CL flower
‘two flowers’</p> |
|---|--|

But these quantifiers have no restriction on the Delimitability feature of the element following them. In (131a), the quantifier *ji* ‘how many’ precedes the CL *dì*, which is modified by the delimitive adjective *dà* ‘big’. In (131b), *ji* precedes the standard measure *shēng* ‘liter’, which rejects a delimitive adjective. *Ji* may occur with either of them, indicating that it is not sensitive to the delimitable feature of the unit words.

- (131)a. Yìgòng you jì dà dì you?
total have how.many big CL oil
‘How many big drops of oil are there in total?’
- b. Yìgòng you jì (*dà) shēng you?
total have how.many big liter oil
‘How many (*big) liters of oil are there in total?’

2.5.2 Quantifiers that occur with [-Numerable]

Quantifiers such as (*yì*)-*dian* (or (*yì*)-*dianr*) ‘some, a little’ (and its variants, as in NEYCs, see 2.4.4), and *henshao* ‘little’ may not be followed by any unit word, as shown in (132).²¹

¹⁹ Persian quantifier *čænd* ‘several; how many’, like Mandarin Chinese *ji* ‘several; how many’, is also followed by a CL, such as the general CL *ta* (see Cowper & Hall 2012: Sec. 7.1).

²⁰ In Thai, ordinal numerals must also be next to a CL (Haas 1942: 204).

²¹ If *yì* to the left of *dian* is in contrastive to another numeral, as shown in (i), *dian* can always be replaced by the CL *ge*. In such an example, the CL *dian* is a counting unit.

(i) Wǒ yǒu liang {dian/ge} {jiānyì/yíwèn}, bù shì yì {dian/ge} {jiānyì/yíwèn}
I have two CL/CL suggestion/question not be one CL/CL suggestion/question
‘I have two suggestions/questions rather than one.’

- (132)a. Nali you (yi)-dian (*ping/*di) niunai.
there have some bottle/CL milk
'There is a little milk.'
- b. Duo xue yi-dian (*ge) Ma-Lie!
more study some CL Marx-Lenin
'Study more of Marxism and Leninism!'
- c. Nali you yi-dian (*ke) xiao xigua.
there have some CL small watermelon
'There are a few small watermelons.' (e.g., in the context of talking about the quantity of the storage in a certain place)
- d. Henshao (*ge) xuesheng neng zai 20 fenzhong-nei gei-chu huida.
few CL student can at 20 minute-in give-out answer
'Very few students can give an answer in 20 minutes.'

Iljic (1994: 107) claims that such quantifiers are for mass or abstract nouns only. Precisely speaking, it is a unit word, rather than a non-mass noun, that may not follow such quantifiers. In (132c), *xigua* 'watermelon' is not a mass noun, but it follows *yi-dian* 'a little' (See Lien 2011 for a discussion of similar quantifiers in Southern Min).

The rejection of unit words, which are the only count elements in the language, indicates the rejection of [+Numerable]. Therefore, quantifiers such as *(yi) dianr* 'some, a little' and *hen shao* 'very little' can be regarded as quantifiers that occur with [-Numerable] expressions, similar to *much* and *little* in English.

According to Rijkoff (2012: 5), there are three ways to encode quantity in language: cardinality, quantifiers such as *much* and *less*, and the singular-plural contrast. Cardinality or counting requires counting units. Since the quantifiers with [-Numerable] reject unit words, they are not used for counting. They are similar to *much* and *less*. Similarly, the quantifiers in (129), which also reject unit words, are not for counting, either.

Note that words such as *renhe* 'any' and *mei* 'each' are D-elements, base-generated higher than a numeral, since they may precede a numeral (e.g., {*renhe/mei*} *san ba san* 'any/every' three umbrella(s)').

2.5.3 The ambiguous cases

In addition to the two types of quantifiers introduced in the above subsections, quantifiers such as *henduo*, *haoduo*, or *haoxie*, which all mean 'many, much', may occur with any type of nouns or unit words (Tang 2007: 984, Hsieh 2008: 61) (the same is true of *takusan* 'many, much' in Japanese, another CL language; see Iida 1998: 4; Kobuchi-Philip 2011: 307).

- | | |
|--|---|
| (133)a. henduo (ben) shu
many CL book
'many books' | b. henduo (di) shui
many CL water
'a lot of {water/drops of water}' |
|--|---|

However, when *henduo* occurs with a unit word, e.g., a CL, it may not be followed by *de*, as in (134a), patterning with a quantifier that occurs with [+Numerable], such as a numeral, as seen in (134b); whereas when it occurs without a unit word, it may be followed by *de*, as in (135a), patterning with a quantifying modifier such as *suoyou*, as seen in (135b) (see (129a)) (Hsieh 2008: 61).

- | | |
|---|---|
| (134)a. henduo (*de) ben shu
many DE CL book
'many books' | b. san (*de) ben shu
three DE CL book
'three books' |
|---|---|

- (135)a. henduo (de) shu
many DE book
'many books'
- b. suoyou (de) shu
all DE book
'all items of the books'

Such quantifiers are thus ambiguous in their status.

The fact that certain quantifiers are sensitive to Numerability further indicates that nominal constructions in Chinese exhibit the contrast between count and non-count elements.

2.6. Remarks on the studies of countability

2.6.1 What's new

The study of the contrast between count and mass nouns dates back to Aristotle. Developing the insights of many previous studies, I have made the following three main claims with respect to the contrast.

First, a count noun is defined exclusively by [+Numerable], i.e., the possibility to combine with a numeral directly. It has been generally recognized that such a combination possibility is the “signature” grammatical property of count nouns (e.g., Chierchia 2010: 104). I have now further argued that this is the only defining grammatical property of a count noun, cross-linguistically. This syntagmatic definition means that the count/non-count distinction is clearly linguistic, rather than extra-linguistic. It is thus not surprising that countability is expressed in various ways, cross-linguistically and within the same language. In Chinese, generally speaking, no noun may combine with a numeral directly, and therefore, no noun is a count noun. Numerability is instead represented exclusively by unit words, including CLs and measure words. In languages such as Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011) and Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 64), no individual or individuating CL exists in the language, and every noun can combine with a numeral directly. Thus every noun can be a count noun. Between these two patterns, in languages such as English, Haitian Creole (Deprez 2005: 861), Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006), and Dëne (Wilhelm *ibid.*), in an unmarked situation (i.e., without a shift), some words are [+Numerable], and others are [-Numerable] (see 2.3.1).

Second, the notion of mass is not the direct negation of count. Instead, it is the combination of the two syntagmatic properties: [-Numerable] and [-Delimitable]. Words such as *oil* in English and their counterparts in Chinese are mass nouns. This refined analysis makes it possible to precisely identify elements that may not combine with a numeral directly but allow a delimitive adjective, e.g., *furniture* in English and *qiqiu* ‘ballon’ in Chinese. Such words do not denote massive objects. As Chierchia (2010: 144) put it, “we know right off the bat that *furniture* cannot be treated on a par with *water*.” Such words have been called “count mass nouns” (Doetjes 1996: 44, 2010: 44), “object mass nouns” (Barner & Snedeker 2005; Bale & Bartner 2009: 229; 2012), “fake mass nouns” (Chierchia 2010: 110), “naturally atomic mass” elements in Rothstein (2010b: 403), and “collectives” in Wiese (2012). The similarity between such words and the Chinese counterparts of English count nouns has also been discussed in Doetjes (1996: 35), Portner (2005: 98), Krifka (2008: Sec. 6.5), Chierchia (2010: 111, fn. 12), Bale & Barner (2012: 245), Cowper & Hall (2012: 34), Wiese (2012), among others. In Doetjes (1996: 34), “count mass nouns” are for the words which are semantically count but behave like a mass noun syntactically. The generally recognized special properties of the *furniture*-type of nouns are represented by the features [-Numerable] and [+Demimitable] in our analysis.

Although it has been widely believed that all nouns are mass nouns in Chinese, the difference between English mass nouns and Chinese non-mass nouns, with respect to Delimitability, has been noted in Gil (2008: 8). He finds that unlike the former, the latter can be modified by “size and shape adjectives”. Explicitly, he states:

. . . whereas in English, constructions such as *big water* are bizarre, in Mandarin, constructions such as *da pingguo* ‘big apple’ are syntactically well-formed, and understood in the same way as their English counterparts.

In my analysis, both *furniture* and *pingguo* are [-Numerable] and [+Delimitable]. Therefore, *da pingguo* ‘big apple’ is as natural as *big furniture*. Consequently, CL languages like Chinese are able to distinguish mass and non-mass nouns. Our identification of the location of [+Numerable] in CLs rather than in nouns for CL languages is one step forward than the vague statement that such languages do not have count syntax.

The close interaction between the notions countability and delimitability has long been realized in the literature, but the nature of the relation has not been clarified. Jespersen (1924: 198) makes the following statement:

There are a great many words which do not call up the idea of some definite thing with a certain shape or precise limits. I call these “mass-words”; they may be either material, in which case they denote some substance in itself independent of form, such as *silver*, *quicksilver*, *water*, *butter*, *gas*, *air*, etc., or else immaterial, such as *leisure*, *music*, *traffic*, *success*, *tact*, *commonsense*

Quine (1960: 104) also notes that the unacceptability of **spherical water* and **spherical wine*. On the other hand, it is obvious that count nouns such as *suggestion* also reject *spherical*. Bunt (1985: 199) also points out that mass nouns such as *water* may not be modified by adjectives such as *large*. Krifka (2008: Sec. 1) states that mass nouns such as *water*, *milk*, and *gold* denote liquids and substances that lack of defined boundary. However, McCawley (1975: 170) finds that *furniture* and *footwear*, which have also been treated as “mass” nouns, and admit size modification “much more readily than hard-core mass nouns such as *rice*”. The acceptability of examples such as ‘*There is small furniture in the doll’s house*’ is also mentioned in Bunt (1985, 200 & 207ff). In Ojeda (2005: 404), “modification in terms of size and shape” is mentioned as one of the “well-known differences between count and mass nouns”. In Svenonius (2008), to capture the incompatibility between delimitive adjectives and mass nouns, such adjectives are assumed to be in the Specifier of SortP, which is the locus of count nominals, rather than mass ones.

The most recent and thorough discussion of the relation between the count-mass contrast and size adjectives is de Belder (2011b). Her discussion does not cover other delimitive modifiers such as *thick*, *thin*, *round*, *complete*, though. Crucially, she claims that “if something acquires the [Size] feature, it automatically becomes countable.” (p. 183) So for her analysis, size features entail the count status. This is different from my analysis, which gives an equal status to Numerability and Delimitability: neither entails the other, and thus there are four possibilities. One empirical consequence of her analysis is that it is not able to capture the fact that non-count nouns such as *furniture* may have size feature. This kind of nouns are predicted to be “illicit” in her theory (de Belder 2011a: 83 (34); 2011b: 180), contrary to the fact.

The proposed two features, Numerability and Delimitability, are both related to the countability of nominals. This is parallel to our understanding that tense and viewpoint aspect features are different, but they are both related to the temporal properties of linguistic elements.

We have claimed that all nouns in Mandarin Chinese are non-count nouns. In languages such as Yudjia, since every noun may combine with a numeral directly, all nouns are count nouns. Then, there could still be a contrast with the different values of [Delimitable], the contrast parallel to that between the English word *belief*, which is [-Delimitable], and *table*,

which is [+Delimitable].

Third, Numerability, which is one of the two features for the mass-count contrast, is different from morphological number, as shown in 2.2.6. I will say more about this issue in 2.6.3.

In 2.6.2 through 2.6.5, I will discuss some alternatives to identify the count-mass contrast: the semantic approach, the morphological approach, the multiple-criteria approach, and some other non-binary analyses.

2.6.2 The semantic approach to the count-mass contrast

In a pure semantic approach, only count nouns are assumed to denote elements that show natural atomicity. Whorf (1956 [1941]: 140) states that “[I]ndividual nouns denote bodies with definite outlines: ‘a tree, a stick, a man, a hill.’ Mass nouns denote homogeneous continuance without implied boundaries”. Quine (1960), Goodman (1966), Cheng (1973), McCawley (1979 [1975]), Wierzbicka (1985), among others (see Joosten 2003 for a survey) all try a semantic approach to the count-mass contrast. For a brief review of the semantic studies of the issue, from the perspectives of cumulativity, divisiveness, to the homogeneousness of the referent, see Doetjes (2012: Section 2.1). Recently, the atomicity approach is defended in Wilhelm (2008). The semantic criteria are also taken for granted in works such as de Belder (2011a: 73). However, Rothstein’s (2010a: 14) following statement clearly tells us why this approach is inadequate:

“inherent, or natural, atomicity is neither a necessary nor a sufficient criterion for count noun predicates, and homogeneity v. non-homogeneity cannot be at the root of the mass/count distinction. *Furniture* is mass but naturally atomic and non-homogeneous since it denotes sets of individual units and *fence* is count but homogeneous and not naturally atomic. This means that a theory of count nouns cannot rely on presuppositions of atomicity.” [sic.]

In addition to *fence*, nouns such as *segment* and *line* are also count but denote homogeneous entities, like mass nouns (Aquaviva 2010: 4).

As pointed by Rothstein (2010a: 19), “the mass/count distinction can only be explained in terms of how the expressions refer, and not in terms of the things they refer to. This means it is a grammatical and not an ontological distinction.” Doetjes (2010: 10) also points out that “meaning does not determine whether a noun is mass or count in an unambiguous way” (similar idea is seen in Chierchia 2010: 103). The problems of semantic approaches are also discussed in Bale & Barner (2009: 230). As frequently noted in the literature, the same type of notions can be expressed by both count and non-count words in the same language, and by count words in one language but non-count ones in another language. Some well-known examples can be found in McCawley (1975: 165). The following examples in (136a, a’, b, b’) are cited from Kiss (2010) and the rest in (136) are from Chierchia (2010: 101, 110).

	Count		Non-Count
(136)a.	vegetable	a’.	fruit
b.	Obst	b’.	Gemüse [German]
	fruit		vegetable
c.	mobile/mobili	c’.	mobilia [Italian]
	furniture.SG/furniture.PL		furniture
d.	virtue	d’.	beauty
e.	belief	e’.	knowledge
f.	jump	f’.	jumping (see (10))

Theoretically, our approach defines grammatical notions in a system syntagmatically. Instead of stipulating various semantic features for nouns directly, such as [+/-Shape] (Rijkhoff 2002: 51), [+/-Concrete] (Muromatsu 2003), [+/-Size] (de Belder 2011b), or [+/-Individuated] (Bobyleva 2011: 58), we examine the compatibility between different types of elements in syntactic structures. Linguistic categories are defined by the relations of elements in the language system, rather than by the properties of the denoted referents. The latter approach fails to account for cross-linguistic variations (see 2.6.5.2 and 2.6.5.3 for our further comments on Rijkhoff 2002 and Muromatsu 2003).

In Wilhelm's (*ibid.*: 64) semantic approach, examples like *furniture* are treated as semantics-syntax mismatches. Since all non-mass nouns in Chinese behave like *furniture*, as recognized by many scholars, one would claim that Chinese is a typically mismatched language. However, as correctly pointed out by Wiese (2012), nouns like *furniture* are a general, systematic option for nouns, rather than an idiosyncratic phenomenon. Chierchia (2010: 103) has this to say, "the existence of the mass/count distinction in grammar is neither a logical nor, perhaps, a communicative necessity." "Language, viewed as specifically human aggregate of cognitive capacities, must have developed an autonomous apparatus responsible for the mass/count system." In this book, we have identified two linguistic features of the apparatus, and therefore, hopefully, the system of the count-mass contrast is less vague to us now.

2.6.3 The morphological approach to the count-mass contrast

A pure morphological approach to the count-mass contrast would assume that count nouns are identified by their number markers, while mass nouns are signaled by the rejection of a number marker. Such an approach has been found in Link (1983: 306), Doetjet (1996, 1997), Chierchia (1998), among others. However, we have extensively discussed the differences between the count status and number in 2.2.6.

There are at least four problems in a number marking approach to the count-mass contrast.

First, the expectation of a "count" noun fails when we consider the so-called mass plural, seen in 2.2.6. More examples of mass plural are listed in (137) (Acquaviva 2010: 3, 8; Acquaviva & Panagiotidis 2012: 12; see Ojeda 2005 for similar examples in Bantu languages), where the occurrence of the plural marker leads to a possible mass reading, instead of the expected count reading.

	Count	Mass	
(137)a.	brain	brains	
b.	fund	funds	
c.	ksilo	ksila	[Modern Greek]
	wood.SG	wood.PL	
	'piece of wood'	'wood'	
d.		nera (cf. <i>nero</i> 'water')	[Cypriot Greek]
		water.pl	
		'heavy rain'	

Huddleston & Pullum (2002: 343) state that *bushes* and *mountains* in *We should plant a few bushes* and *She climbed two mountains in one day* are regular count plurals; but "they have non-count interpretations in examples like [33]." (Their [33] = (138) below)

- (138)a. He threw it in the bushes. b. She lives in the mountains.

Corbett (2000: 173) reports that “[I]n Manam (Lichenberk 1983: 269) *all* mass nouns are plural, (as marking on the verb shows). In Turkana, some are singular and some are plural (Dimmendale 1983: 224). In Bantu languages too, mass nouns are frequently split between singular and plural (Guthrie 1948: 851).” Similarly, both mass and non-mass nouns can occur with the plural clitic *mga* in Tagalog (Corbett 2000: 133-134). In languages such as St’at’imcets, all nouns, including those referring snow, honey, and water, may freely take plural determiners. Davis & Matthewson (1999: 60) report that “[N]ouns whose English counterparts are mass may freely take plural determiners in St’at’imcets.”

As clearly stated in Mathieu (2012: 189), mass plural is “one of several plurals (plural of modesty, exaggerative plural, hyperbolic plural, approximative plural, anti-associative plural, etc.) that has nothing to do with counting individuals.” See Harbour (2008) for a formal analysis of mass plurals.

Second, the expectation of a “mass” noun fails, when we consider the bare nouns in certain PPs and VPs, introduced in 2.2.6. For instance, the noun *prison* in the PP *in prison* neither has a plural form nor is preceded by any article. The absence of a number marker does not lead to a mass reading. The nouns in such constructions seem to have a singular form, but denote either one or more than one atom. They thus look like non-counting singulars.

Third, there also exist non-counting plurals. Plurality that is not for counting is seen in Acquaviva’s (2010: 2) following examples (I thank Jonathan Evans for giving me more such examples to see the contrast):

- (139)a. I saw you in my dreams ≠ several different dreams
- b. a house in the woods ≠ in several different woods
- c. I have plans for tonight ≠ I have a few plans for tonight

If a count noun is supposed to occur in the context of counting, the notion of non-counting plural is not compatible with this understanding.

Considering both the first and the third point above, what we see is that plural marking is not only “not interpreted uniformly across languages” (Bale & Khanjian 2008: 86), but also not interpreted uniformly in the same language such as English.

Fourth, mutual exclusiveness between a numeral and a plural marker is observed in certain constructions or certain languages (see the Hungarian examples in (55) before and more in 3.2.5). If the possibility to occur with a numeral is the signature property of a count noun (Chierchia 1998: 353), the conflict indicates that plural markers cannot be a reliable signal for count nouns.

Realizing the complexity of plural markers, different terms have been used in the literature, to cover the patterns unpredicted by the morphological approach. Doetjet (2010: 45) calls the plurals in *oats* and *grits*, which may not occur with a numeral, defective plural, and finds that they often correspond to mass nouns in other languages. Some researchers treat such plurals as idiosyncratic ones and still keep number marking as an effective way to distinguish count from mass nouns (e.g., de Belder 2011a: 72; 205). Some other researchers (e.g., Harbour 2008) distinguish morphological number from semantic number. Krifka (2008) distinguishes semantic plurals and agreement plurals. For a recent review of the problems of morphological approach to the count-mass contrast, see Schaden (2010). As stated in Wilhelm (*ibid.*: 47, also see 57), “number marking is not a necessary property of count nouns” (also see Wiese 2012: 74 for the same conclusion).

Also, the number marker approach might lead us to the conclusion that languages such as Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006), Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011), and Dëne (Wilhelm *ibid.*), and quite a lot of languages discussed in Rijkhoff (2002: 38-41) have no way to express any

contrast with respect to countability, since in such languages there is no number markers (and no CL, either). On the other hand, in languages such as St'at'imcets, since all nouns may freely take plural determiners (Davis & Matthewson 1999: 60), there is no way to express any contrast with respect to countability, either.

Semantically, singular count nouns such as *scarf* refer to entities taken individually, and plural count nouns such as *scarfs* refer to entities taken in bulk. In addition to these two types of nouns, Ojeda (2005) uses the term Cosingular to refer mass plurals such as *clothes* (see 2.2.6) and the term Coplural to refer to mass nouns such as *clothing*. He specifies that “cosingular nouns can refer to entities taken in bulk - but without having to refer, at the same time, to entities taken collectively” (p. 390), whereas “coplural nouns will be able to refer to entities taken in bulk, but without having to refer, at the same time, to entities taken individually” (p. 391). We can see that the new terms are invented to regulate the arbitrariness of the mapping between morphological forms and the encoded meanings.

However, arbitrary mapping between form and meaning is seen beyond number morphology. It is well-known that the German noun *Mädchen* ‘girl’ is neuter instead of feminine, although the referent is feminine. We might also need a term “co-feminine” to cover this mismatch. Adding new terms shows that plural forms may encode different things. Similar “non-count plurals” in Arabic are discussed in Acquaviva (2008: 229). The existence of such “non-count plurals” challenges the claim that plural markers are markers of count nouns.

There are three ways to encode quantity in language: quantifiers such as *much* and *less*, cardinality, and the singular-plural contrast (see Rijkoff 2012: 5). Countability is related to the way to represent cardinality only. See Chapter 4 for a further discussion of the singular-plural contrast. In Chapter 5, I will argue that each of the three ways is represented by a functional projection (QuantP, UnitP and NumP).

2.6.4 The multi-criteria approach

The multi-criteria approach (Allan 1980) puts various considerations together, including the possibility to occur with a numeral, semantic and morphological factors, and ranks the degree of countability for each noun. This approach is adopted in Joosten (2003) and Kuo & Wu (2010). However, I have shown that semantic and morphological approaches to the count-mass contrast are both problematic. Then, logically, if some of the individual factors are problematic, putting them together does not help.

Moreover, since some linguistic phenomena are not observed in certain languages, in order to measure the countability of words in different languages, different criteria are used in this approach. For instance, in Kuo & Wu (2010), in order to judge the countability of a noun, articles and plural markers are used for English, but individual CLs are used for Chinese. This consistency is not desirable, unless the relations among the criteria are clarified.²²

2.6.5 Other non-binary analyses of countability

The idea that the count-mass contrast is not a dichotomous contrast and thus we need more features to represent them is also seen in the literature. As I mentioned above, de Belder (2011a,b) proposes that the feature [Size] should be considered. I already compared her analysis with ours in 2.6.1. In this section, I briefly address the inadequacies of certain other non-binary analyses of countability.

²² Other problems of Kuo & Wu (2010) include the claim that container measures are more countable than standard measures, and the absence of individuating CLs in their analysis of Chinese CLs. Neither is justified.

2.6.5.1 T'sou's (1976) [Entity] and [Exact]

T'sou (1976) uses the positive, negative, and variable values of two features, [Entity] and [Exact], to classify nouns, and claims that “the semantic distinctions of such a system are supported as well by evidence from syntax.” His three pieces of syntactic evidence in Mandarin Chinese are the co-occurrence restrictions of a unit word with other three elements: ordinal number, fractional number, and the functional particle *de* (his *de*-adjectival). His classification can be shown by the table in (140), and the examples of unit words for each type are in (141) through (144) (*ibid.* p. 1217).

(140)

	Exact	Entity	DE-adjectival	Ordinal number	Fractional number
I	+	+	*	✓	✓
II	+	-	✓	*	✓
III	-	+	✓	✓	✓
IV	-	-	✓	✓	*

(141) Type I: [+Exact, +Entity], e.g. *zhi* ‘CL for individual, non-human objects’

- a. **san zhi de ji* [DE: *]
three CL DE chicken
- b. *di san zhi ji* [Ordinal number: OK]
ORD three CL chicken
‘the third chicken’
- c. *ban zhi ji* [Fractional number: OK]
half CL chicken
‘a half chicken’

“In (I) the measure refers to an exact quantity and involves discrete physical entities. A parallel case in English would be *sheet* (in *two sheets of paper*), which characterizes certain physical dimensions of ‘paper’, the mass noun.” (p. 1217) One can see that our individual and individuating CLs (2.4.1) are grouped together in T'sou's system, and all nouns in Mandarin Chinese are treated as mass nouns, a claim that is argued against in this book. Moreover, as will be shown in 2.7.4, the *de* criterion is not reliable, since all unit words may be followed by *de* in certain contexts.

(142) Type II: [+Exact, -Entity], e.g. *jin* ‘cattie, unit of weight’

- a. *san jin de ji* [DE: OK]
three cattie DE chicken
‘three catties of chicken’
- b. **di san jin ji* [Ordinal number: *]
ORD three cattie chicken
- c. *ban jin ji* [Fractional number: OK]
half CL chicken
‘a half cattie of chicken’

“In (II) the measure is exact but it refers to no discrete physical entity.” (p. 1217) It is true that the notion of *jin* ‘cattie’ does not refer to any discrete physical entity, although *ji* ‘chicken’ does. If we keep this distinction in mind, we will find that the CL *zhi* in (141) does not refer to any discrete physical entity, either. Then, it is not clear why *zhi* is [+Entity], whereas *jin* is [-Entity].

(143) Type III : [-Exact, +Entity], e.g. *qun* ‘brood’

- a. san qun de ji [DE: OK]
three CL DE chicken
‘three broods of chickens’
- b. di san qun ji [Ordinal number: OK]
ORD three CL chicken
‘the third brood of chickens’
- c. ban qun ji [Fractional number: OK]
halp CL chicken
‘a half brood of chickens’

“In (III), there is a definite sense of a well-defined discrete entity or entities, but the quantity is not exact either by design or by convention. For example, *a brood of chicks* (or *a plate of chicken*) is not an exact measure but there is a definite sense of physical entity and it can be referred to as a unit.” (p. 1218) Again, the positive value of [Entity] for *brood* is not justified. It seems that T’sou confuses the semantic contents of the noun and those of the unit word.

(144) Type IV: [-Exact, -Entity], e.g. *zhong* ‘kind/type’

- a. san zhong de ji [DE: OK]
three CL DE chicken
‘three kinds of chicken’
- b. di san zhong ji [Ordinal number: OK]
ORD three CL chicken
‘the third kind of chicken’
- c. *ban zhong ji [Fractional number: *]
half CL chicken

“In (IV), which characterizes mainly abstract nouns, the measure is neither exact nor does it refer to a discrete physical entity.” (p. 1218)

T’sou also applies his classification of unit words directly to nouns. In his system, mass nouns such as *water* are [α Entity, -Exact], “to capture the fact that the values of its feature specification will be opposite. This will account for *three cans of water* [+Entity, -Exact], *three gallons of water* [-Entity, +Exact] and **three pieces of water* [+Entity, +Exact], as well as *two kinds of water* (soft and hard): [-Entity, -Exact]” (p. 1222). Note that the acceptability of the last example, which has the same value for the two features, is not predicted by his theory. Putting this confusion aside, we still see that the word *water* belongs to type II, III, and IV. It is thus not clear whether it is the semantics of the noun or the semantics of whole numeral expression that is under the classification.

Abstract nouns in his system are [-Entity, -Exact], “so that they can only occur with classifiers such as *type* or *kind*”. However, “[S]ince all nouns may be classified with *type* or *kind*, it may be stated as a meta rule that all nouns may be optionally specified as [-Entity, -Exact].” (p. 1222) Accordingly, “[A]n example such as *boy* will be marked [+Entity, α Exact] to provide for *three boys* [+Entity, +Exact] and *three groups of boys* [+Entity, -Exact] (as well as *two kinds of boys* by the optional meta rule).” (p. 1222)

Thus, it is not clear to me how much this feature analysis helps us to analyze the countability of nouns. Moreover, on the same page, he also states that “[P]articulate languages will require additional features.” Since he does not mention what other features are, it is hard to evaluate his analysis, and therefore, I do not consider his analysis as a plausible alternate to the proposal made in this book.

2.6.5.2 Rijkhoff's (2002) [Shape] and [Homogeneity]

Rijkhoff (2002) uses the positive, negative, and underspecified values of two features, [Shape] and [Homogeneity], to classify nouns with respect to countability. Although the goal of the classification is to capture syntagmatic patterns, e.g., whether the nouns in a language may combine with a numeral directly and whether they require a number marker, the two features themselves are defined semantically and paradigmatically (p. 53): “If the property designated by a noun is coded as having a shape (+Shape), this means that the property (and by extension, the referent of the NP) is characterized as having a definite outline in the spatial dimension”; “If the property designated by a noun is coded as being homogeneous (+Homogeneity), this means that the property (and by extension, the referent of the NP) is characterized as being agglomerative.”

The main problems of this approach are the following. First, all nouns in Mandarin Chinese (also in other CL languages) are classified as [-Shape]. Rijkhoff explicitly claims that “as a rule the value –Shape correlates with the use of classifiers (or: individualizers), and, conversely, the value +Shape correlates with the absence of classifiers” (p. 51). But as shown in our 2.3.2, many nouns in the language may be modified by a shape adjective, such as *chang* ‘long’ and *fang* ‘square’, and therefore, their referents do have shapes. Although real mass nouns are classified as [-Shape, +Homogeneity], and non-mass nouns such as *shu* ‘book’ in Mandarin Chinese are classified as [-Shape, -Homogeneity] in his system, the definition of the feature [Shape] is problematic. Second, languages such as Yudja have no CLs, and thus all nouns should be classified as [+Shape], but it is obvious that the referent of the Yudja word *apeta* ‘blood’ in *txabïa apeta* ‘three units of blood’ (Lima 2010) has no shape. Third, all singular nouns that may directly combine with a numeral, such as *idea* and *suggestion* in English, are classified as [+Shape, -Homogeneity], but it is not clear what the shape of an idea or suggestion is.

2.6.5.3 Muromatsu's (2003) 3D analysis

Muromatsu (2003) proposes that abstract, mass, and count nouns are 1-, 2-, and 3-dimensional (-D) expressions, respectively. She further claims that either a plural marker or a CL marks a 3D noun. However, the theory is not convincing.

First, it is claimed that only count nouns may occur with plural markers, and thus if an abstract noun such as *idea* occurs with a plural marker, as in *two ideas*, it denotes a 3D notion, similar to that of *two apples* (p. 84). According to this 3D theory, abstract nouns may not occur with measure units such as *pound* (P. 68). But *ideas* behaves the same as *idea* in this respect (**two pounds of {idea/ideas}*).

Second, it is claimed that “[A] classifier works on the 2D space, individuating the mass, rendering the space three-dimensional” (P. 72), however, in Mandarin Chinese examples like the following, the CLs do not create concrete notions, and thus do not render the space three-dimensional. Her claim that abstract nouns may not occur with CLs (p. 85) does not reflect the reality.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (145)a. san ge jianyi
three CL suggestion
‘one suggestion’ | b. san zhong taidu
three CL attitude
‘three kinds of attitude’ |
|--|--|

Third, it is claimed that “*furniture* is conceptualized as 2D,” as massive as *honey* (p. 71), however, the former may be modified by a delimitive adjective (13b), whereas the latter may not, and thus they are fundamentally different.

2.6.6 Experimental perspective

The decomposition of countability into the two features, [Delimitable] and [Numerable], in our approach, is supported by experimental evidence.

The contrastive values of [Delimitable] correlate with the contrast between mass and non-mass entities, a contrast independent of the notion of quantity or counting with numerals. The referents of nouns with [+Delimitable] are discrete individuals, which have non-arbitrary shape, size, or boundaries. Infant research has demonstrated that infants as young as 4 months use spatio-temporal information to identify discrete individuals, and they respond quite differently to discrete individuals than to non-solid substances (e.g. Spelke 1985; Huntley-Fenner, Carey, & Solimando 2002). “There is also a developmental progression of the perceptual dimensions that infants use in object individuation: by 4.5 months infants use shape and size as the basis for object individuation; but it is not until 7.5 months that infants use pattern, and 11.5 months that they use color and luminance information to do so” (Xu 2007: 402).

The contrastive values of [Numerable] are related to the knowledge of the combination of numerals with counting units, in counting. Such knowledge seems to be developed much later. For instance, Brooks et al.’s (2010) research shows that pre-schoolers tend to count each broken part of an object and to make quantity judgments on the basis of broken parts (i.e., one fork broken into three pieces is “more” than two forks. It has also been observed that three-year-olds and young four-year-olds do not make use of container units to compare quantities of mass substances. When the two amounts of sand were very close in volume, although children were able to judge which side had “more glasses” when comparing three identical glasses full of sand with two other identical glasses full of sand, they scored at chance when they were asked to determine which side had “more sand” for the same visual display. It is reported that it is not until children are four years old or older that they are able to compare quantities in such a task successfully (see Li et al. 2010: 225). Similarly, the acquisition studies in Huang (2009) and Huang & Lee (2009) also report that children before two years old did not understand the meaning of numerals. For instance, when they were asked how many eyes their aunt had, they answered three (Lee 2012: Sec. 3.1).

The earliness of the development of the ability to identify discrete individuals and the lateness of the development of the ability of counting or quantifying indicate the separation of the two learning processes. One is related to the acquisition of [Delimitable], and the other is related to the acquisition of [Numerable].

Our more refined classification of nominals with respect to the two features is supported by the result of experimental research. In Barner & Snedeker (2005, 2006), based on an experimental study of both children and adults, the so-called mass nouns in English are divided into object-mass nouns (*furniture, jewelry*) and substance-mass nouns (*mustard, toothpaste*). They elicited quantity judgements for different types of nouns. Subjects were asked to compare scenes and answer “Who has more ... e.g., *silverware* (object-mass noun), *shoes* (count noun), or *toothpaste* (mass noun)?” Each scene showed one large instance of the nominal referents, e.g., a large piece of silverware (e.g., a large fork), a large shoe, or a large glob of toothpaste, and one group of several small instances, that is, several small forks, shoes, or globs of toothpaste. Although the small instances were higher in number, the larger instances made up the bigger overall amount. Regardless of whether the subjects were children or adults, they chose the higher number of objects for both count nouns and object-mass nouns, but the larger overall amount for mass nouns. Thus, object-mass nouns show “number-based judgment,” patterning with count nouns, whereas the mass nouns show

“quantity-based judgment”. Their classification correlates with our feature analysis, as shown in (146) (although their study does not cover nouns such as *belief*, which are [-Delimitable, +Numerable]). Parallel experimental studies of Mandarin Chinese with a similar result are reported in Cheung et al. (2010, 2012) and Liu (2010), and a parallel experimental study of Japanese, also with a similar result, is reported in Inagaki & Barner (2009).

(146)	<i>shoes, candles</i>	<i>furniture, jewelry</i>	<i>mustard, toothpaste</i>
Barner & Snedeker (2005 2006)	Count nouns	object-mass noun	substance-mass noun
	Number-based judgment		Quantity-based judgment
Our analysis	[+Delimitable, +Numerable]	[+Delimitable, -Numerable]	[-Delimitable, -Numerable]

2.7. Remarks on the studies of CLs in numeral expressions

2.7.1 The syntactic foundations of the presence of CLs

The novel analysis of the count-mass contrast proposed in this book opens a new window to see the syntactic foundations of individual CLs in numeral expressions in CL languages.

Counting is possible in the presence of a unit. The unit tells us what counts as one in the context. The general function of a unit word in a numeral expression is to specify the unit for counting. Such a word is [+Numerable]. In Chinese, when a noun occurs with a CL, it is the CL rather than the noun that is the bearer of Numerability.

Individual CLs are syntactically different from nouns. Thus the fact that Numerability is realized on CLs rather than nouns is a syntactic issue. The syntactic nature of the existence of individual CLs can be seen in another fact: the occurrence of such CLs is sensitive to syntactic categories in English. Assuming that the word *times* in verbal numeral expressions such as (147a) is a CL (e.g., Landman 2004), we can see that in English verbal numeral expressions require the occurrence of CLs (Krifka 2007: 39), but nominal numeral expressions do not. There is no CL in the nominal numeral expression *three trips to Paris* in (147b), but the CL *times* is obligatory in the verbal numeral expression in (147a). Like nominals in Chinese, verbal phrases in English are not Numerability bearers, and thus need CLs in counting. If we consider the representation of Numerability in verbal phrases, English should be treated as a CL language.²³

- (147)a. Bill traveled to Paris three *(times). b. Bill made three trips to Paris.
(148) Bill danced three *(times).

It needs to be emphasized that the requirement of the CL *times* in (147a) is independent of the telic status of travelling to Paris. Both the telic event expressed by (147a) and the atelic event expressed by (148) need the overt CL *times*. Telicity can be represented by the feature [Delimitable], which is independent of the value of the feature [Numerable]. My refined analysis of countability thus shows that the popular belief that CLs in numeral expressions in nominals correlate with telicity aspect in verbal domain is not adequate.

This Numerability-bearer analysis of CLs calls for a review of our current understanding of CLs in CL languages.

2.7.2 How special are the CLs of CL languages?

All seven types of unit words listed in 2.4.1 “are closely related in grammar and function”

²³ If we consider classification markers instead of numeral CLs, verbal CLs are indeed not as widespread as nominal ones, as shown in Bisang (2011). Chinese, however, does have several verbal numeral CLs, but not as many as nominal ones (see e.g., Zhang 2002).

(Croft 1994: 152). Like measure words, CLs are also counting units or “unit counters” (Allan 1977: 293).

It has been widely believed that all nouns in CL languages are mass nouns, and therefore, the basic function of CLs is to divide mass into units (e.g., Thompson 1965; Greenberg 1972: 26; Link 1991; Senft 2000: 27; Grinevald 2000: 79, Krifka 2008: Sec. 6.3). For instance, Rijkhoff (2002: 162) claims that CLs exist because the properties that nouns in CL languages designate “are not characterized as having a boundary in the spatial dimension”. Similarly, Borer (2005: 101) claims that the main function of CLs “is that of dividing mass”. Accordingly, the syntactic projection headed by a CL is called DivP. In the previous discussion, I have shown that CL languages can distinguish mass from non-mass nouns. As a consequence, the general function of CLs is not dividing or individuating.

Let us examine how the dividing assumption misrepresents the basic function of CLs. We have introduced five types of CLs in 2.4.1:

- | | | |
|---------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| (149)a. | san zhong yang | [Kind CL] |
| | three kind sheep | |
| | ‘three kinds of sheep’ | |
| b. | san di shui | [Individuating CL] |
| | three CL water | |
| | ‘three drops of water’ | |
| c. | san qun yang | [Collective CL] |
| | three CL sheep | |
| | ‘three flocks of sheep’ | |
| d. | san pian xigua | [Partitive CL] |
| | three CL watermelon | |
| | ‘three slices of watermelon’ | |
| e. | san ben shu | [Individual CL] |
| | three CL book | |
| | ‘three books’ | |

From the translations of (149a), (149b), (149c) and (149d), we can see that English also has kind CLs such as *kind*, individuating CLs such as *di* ‘drop’, collective CLs such as *flock* and partitive CLs such as *slice*.

Among the five types of CLs, the individuating CL in (149b) indeed divides a massive object into units (also see the examples in (79)). Such CLs are also found in non-CL languages such as English, as seen in the word *drop* in the translation of (149b). Obviously, the availability of individuating CLs cannot distinguish CL languages from other languages.

What English does not have is individual CLs. There is no English counterpart for *ben* in (149e). It is this type of CLs that distinguishes CL languages from non-CL languages. In non-CL languages, generally speaking, individual CLs are not overtly represented by linguistic expressions. In such languages, it has been assumed (Quine 1969: 36) that the semantics of an individual CL is integrated either in the numeral (see Wilhelm *ibid.*: 55) or the noun (see Chierchia 1998; Rijkhoff 2002: 50) (see 5.6.3 for more discussion of these two approaches).

Crucially, individual CLs do not have the function of dividing or individuating. They do not occur with mass nouns. As pointed out by Bale & Barner (2012: 243), “default classifiers only specify that the noun can be counted, the method of individuation being determined by the content of the noun itself.” The same idea is also seen in Wiese (2012: 65-66). Such CLs neither individuate anything nor create new units for the individuals any more, unlike collective or partitive CLs. Therefore, the popular belief that it is the individuating (discrete

set-creating) function of CLs that is special in CL languages should not go unexamined.

A more accurate generalization is that in addition to the various ways of specifying a unit for counting, CLs in CL languages may also directly represent the natural unit of entities that show atomicity, whereas the CLs of other languages do not have this semantic function. In other words, CL languages have unit words to encode both intrinsic and provided units, whereas non-CL languages have unit words for provided units only.

Based on the above discussion of the unified semantic property of all types of unit words in numeral expressions, i.e., to represent the unit for counting, I claim that if unit words project an independent functional projection, it should not be called DivP (Borer 2009). Instead, a label such as UnitP is more appropriate.

If the general function of CLs in numeral expressions is not dividing, we need to reconsider Borer's (2005) syntactic analysis of the count-mass contrast. In her analysis, the absence of dividing structure (DivP) derives "mass" reading, and the presence of dividing structure derives "count" reading. The two features proposed in this book calls for a richer structure to represent the count-mass contrast. This will be the topic of Chapter 5.

In Liao & Wang (2011), only two types of CLs are considered: individual and kind CLs. They (p. 148) thus claim that "the function of a classifier is to distinguish the ambiguous NP denotations by selecting a corresponding counting level (a KCL [= kind CL –NZ] selects a level which consists of kind terms, and an ICL [= individual CL –NZ] a level that consists of atomic individuals)." Considering the existence of collective, partitive, and individuating CLs, in addition to individual and kind CLs, we think Liao & Wang's claim does not capture the general function of CLs. In numeral expressions, the general function of CLs, like that of measure words, is simply to tell us what counts as one in counting, beyond distinguishing the denotations of NPs.

2.7.3 The sortal-mensural contrast and CLs that do not classify

Some scholars divide CLs into sortal CLs and mensural CLs. Tang (2005: 453) uses *s(ortal)*-feature to label the former. However, neither the definitions of the notions are clear nor the classifications are consistent in the literature. This confusion affects our understanding of the properties of CLs.

2.7.3.1 The inconsistency in the classification

According to Lyons (1977: 463), "A sortal classifier . . . individuates whatever it refers to in terms of the kind of entity it is", whereas "A mensural classifier . . . individuates in terms of quantity." Lyons (1977: 464) also mentions that CLs such as *kuai* 'chunk' can be both sortal and mensural. In this definition, both types of CLs individuate, and they are different only in the way of individuating. I have just claimed that not all CLs have the function of individuating, since not all nouns in Chinese are mass nouns.

In Aikhenvald (2006: 466), the two types are: "sortal classifiers, which just characterize a referent, and mensural classifiers, which contain information about how the referent is measured." Does this description mean that sortal CLs have nothing to do with quantity? In fact, when we measure anything, we count the counting unit against certain criterion (e.g., length, weight). Both this counting of units and the direct counting of elements with natural atomicity tell us the quantity of the relevant entities. Thus, like measure words, CLs are also unit words, "[T]heir use is generally associated with the quantification of objects or nouns" (T'sou 1976: 1215; also see Paris 1981; Wiebusch 1995). If CLs are used for counting, their primary function is uniformly to tell us what counts as one in the context. Thus, all of them contain information about how the quantity of the referent is calculated. Accordingly, the so-called sortal CLs are not in contrast to the so-called mensural CL in this basic function. The alleged contrast has been cast doubt in the literature (see Aikhenvald & Dixon 2011: 410

fn. 18, and the literature cited there).

There seems to be no general agreement with respect to whether certain types of CLs are sortal or not, although individual CLs are generally treated as sortal ones. For Grinvald (2002: 261), only individual CLs are sortal ones and all other types of CLs are mensural. The same contrast is used in Li et al. (2008: Methods of Experiment 2), although they call sortal CLs count CLs.²⁴ In Rijkhoff (2002: 48), individual and collective CLs are sortal, but individuating CLs are mensural (he also has a general type, which does not belong to either sortal or mensural CLs). In Gerner & Bisang (2010), sortal CLs include individual and individuating CLs, whereas mensural CLs include collective CLs, and partitive CLs. Velupillai's (2012: 172 fn. 109) sortal CLs also include individual and individuating CLs, although she does not discuss other types of CLs. In Li et al. (2012: 209, 217), individual, individuating and partitive CLs are sortal but collective CLs are mensural. The disagreement among the above mentioned publications is summarized in (150) (S = sortal CL; M = mensural CL):

(150)	Individual CL	Individuating CL	Partitive CL	Collective CL	Kind CL
Grinvald (2002: 261), Li et al. (2008)	S	M	M	M	
Rijkhoff (2002: 48)	S	M		S	
Gerner & Bisang (2010)	S	S	M	M	
Velupillai (2012)	S	S			
Li et al. (2010: 209, 217)	S	S	S	M	

The alleged two types are usually defined by listing the subtypes, which themselves are described by examples, without any formal criterion. If the alleged division between sortal and mensural CLs is not formally defined, it is not surprising that the groupings are different for different scholars. Also note that in these works, it is not clear whether kind CLs are sortal or mensural.

2.7.3.2 The dual-functions of some CLs

In addition to the primary function of CLs, i.e., to tell us the unit of counting, “[I]n some instances the size, shape, or function of the object referred to serves as a partial guide in determining which classifier should be used” (Haas 1942: 202). Thus some CLs may have semantic contents (Allan 1977: 285; Tai & Wang 1990). Consider the examples in (151). The first two pairs have individuating CLs and the rest three pairs have individual CLs. All of the CLs there both contain the information about how the quantity of the referent is calculated and, to a certain degree, also characterize the referent (the translations of the d- and e-pair in (151) come from Ōta 2003 [1958]: 151).

- (151)a. yi dui {yan/tang} a'. yi kuai {yan/tang} [Individuating CL]
 one CL salt/sugar one CL salt/sugar
 ‘one pile of {salt/sugar}’ ‘one chunk of {salt/sugar (candy)}’

²⁴ Hsieh (2008: 36) states that “If the partitioning involves natural singularities based on the inherent properties of the nouns, what is involved is a sortal classifier. If the divider imposes an arbitrary division, it is a massifier.” Her definitions seem to separate individual CLs from other unit words, although she does not specifically discuss various types of other unit words.

- | | | | | |
|----|---|-----|--|-----------------|
| b. | liang zhang zhi
two CL paper
'two sheets of paper' | b'. | liang juan zhi
two CL paper
'two rolls of paper' | |
| c. | liang zhi hua
two CL flower
'two flowers on their stalks' | c'. | liang duo hua
two CL flower
'two flowers (not focusing on the stalks)' | [Individual CL] |
| d. | san ben shu
three CL book
'three books (in regular shapes)' | d'. | san juan shu
three CL book
'three books (in the ancient roll form)' | |
| e. | san jia qiao
three CL bridge
'three frame-like bridges' | e'. | san zuo qiao
three CL bridge
'three hill-like stone bridges' | |

Moreover, different individual CLs for a noun with the same denotation may be contrastive in the different foci of the perspectives of the same entity (Her 2011), as seen in (152) below.

- | | | | |
|---------|--|-----|--|
| (152)a. | liang mian qiang
two CL wall
'two walls (2-dimension perspective)' | a'. | liang du qiang
two CL wall
'two walls (3-dimension perspective)' |
| b. | san tiao yu
three CL fish
'three fish (focusing on body shape)' | b'. | san wei yu
three CL fish
'three fish (focusing on the tails)' |

Thus, even if the two functions, sorting and measuring, are available to some CLs, they are not exclusive of each other. The possible sorting function never occurs independently of the measuring function, in numeral expressions.

2.7.3.3 The absence of the sorting function in some individual CLs

Collective, partitive, and kind CLs generally do not classify the semantic types of the associated nouns. It is not surprising that they are not generally treated as sortal ones (see (150)). So in this section, we discuss individual CLs only, which have been regarded as sortal CLs, consistently.

Although, in certain cases, the choice of CL for certain nouns affects the acceptability, "[I]n a number of other instances, however, the choice of classifier is entirely arbitrary." (Haas 1942: 203) For instance, the two uses of the individual CL *zhang* in (153a) and (153b) do not exhibit semantic similarity (also see Myers 2000: 193; H. Zhang 2007).

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (153)a. | san zhang zui
three CL mouth
'three mouths' | b. | san zhang chuang
three CL bed
'three beds' |
|---------|---|----|--|

This kind of variation is seen not only in the same language, but also cross-linguistically. The word *head* in (154a) is used as a CL for *cattle* in English, but its counterpart in German, *Kopt*, is not used as a CL for *Vieh* 'cattle'. Instead, it is used for *Salad* 'lettuce', and the CL for *Vieh* is *Stück* 'piece', as seen in (154b) and (154c) (Wiese 2012: 66).

- (154)a. four head of cattle

- | | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|----------|
| b. | vier Kopf Salad
four head lettuce
'four heads of lettuce' | c. | vier Stück Vieh
four piece cattle
'four head of cattle' | [German] |
|----|---|----|---|----------|

Second, the same noun may arbitrarily occur with different individual CLs. For example, *mousha-an* 'murder-case' can be counted by the CLs *zong*, *qi*, *jian*, *chu*, *zhuang*, and *chang*, but *qiangdao-an* 'robbery-case' can be counted by the same set of CLs except the last two (*zhuang* and *chang*) (Ansel Liu p.c., Feb. 24, 2012). More such examples can be found in H. Zhang (2007: 53) (The arbitrariness of the selection of CLs is also seen later in the examples in (265) and (266)).

Third, the most frequently used individual CL is the default one *ge*, which obviously does not classify the semantic types of nouns (Myers 2000, among others) (see our 2.4.1.5; and 2.7.5 for further discussion). However, no one treats *ge* as a mensural CL. If CLs are disjunctively either sortal or mensural, the status of *ge* is not clear. If the most frequently used CL has no place in a theory of CLs, the theory does not seem to be convincing.

The existence of general or default CLs is also found in Persian. Like Mandarin Chinese, "numerals must be accompanied by a classifier even if the nominal is a count noun" (Ghomeshi 2003: 55). In this language, the CL *ta* may occur with a noun of any type. Since this CL does not classify semantic types of nouns and may occur with mass nouns, Cowper & Hall (2012: 46) claim that it is not a CL. In our opinion, it simply shows the basic properties of CLs, i.e., a counting unit. In (155a) and (155b), it occurs with a non-mass noun, and thus functions as an individual CL; and in (155c) and (155d), it occurs with a mass noun, and thus functions as an individuating CL (or introduces the effect of Universal Packager; see 2.2.5). The examples in (156) show that in this language, non-general CLs also exist (Cowper & Hall *ibid.*: 50; all of the examples in (155) and (156) are cited from Ghomeshi *ibid.* and Cowper & Hall *ibid.*).

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|----|---|-----------|
| (155)a. | se-ta ketab
three-CL book
'three books' | b. | do-ta deræt
two-CL tree
'two trees' | [Persian] |
| c. | se-ta næmæk
three-CL salt
'three salts' | d. | se-ta čai
three-CL tea
'three teas' | |
| (156)a. | se næfær kargær
three CL ^{person} worker
'three workers' | b. | se jeld ketab
three CL ^{volume} book
'three books' | |

2.7.3.4 The source of the non-systematic sorting functions of some CLs

All CLs are the result of the grammaticalization of substantive categories such as nouns or verbs (e.g., Li 1924; Loke 1997). Chinese CLs started to grow in about 1324-1066 BC (see Huang 1964: 441; Liu 1965: Ch. 1; Loke 1997: 1) and became well-developed after the Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907) (Wu 2006). According to Ōta (1958 [2003: 149]), this historical process can be divided into five stages (also see Huang 1964: 440; Peyraube 1998, among others): (A) A noun functions as a unit word, and the unit word and the noun are identical in forms, as in (157a). The unit word is also called 'echo-classifier'. In this case, one can assume that there was a total sharing of the semantic features between the two words. (B) A noun functions as a unit word, but it has a different form from that of the associated noun, as in (157b). In this case, the two nouns must be semantically compatible, and thus there was a partial sharing of the semantic features between them. In (157b), both *luan-chen* 'rebellious official' and *ren* 'person' are human being. (C) The unit word was not a noun any more, but it

had been developed from a noun that had a meaning similar to that of the co-occurring noun. Therefore, the unit word was specific for the particular type of the noun. In (157c), the CL *liang* had been developed from the noun *liang* ‘carriage’. As a CL, *liang* started to function as a unit word for any ground transportation vehicles, but not for anything else. In this case, we can assume that there was a partial sharing of the semantic features between the unit word and the noun. (D) Everything is the same as in stage C, except that the word order has been changed: the noun follows the CL, as in (157d). (E) The unit word has no semantic sharing with the noun, as the general CL *ge* in (157e).

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|----|--|
| (157)a. | ren shi ren
person ten person
‘ten persons’ | b. | luan-chen shi ren
chaos-official ten person
‘ten rebellious officials’ | | |
| c. | che shi liang
carriage ten CL
‘ten carriages’ | d. | shi liang che
ten CL carriage
‘ten carriages’ | e. | shi ge ren
ten CL person
‘ten persons’ |

Synchronically, all five patterns are seen in many modern languages (Aikhenvald 2003; Peyraube 1998). In Modern Mandarin, only the last two patterns remain. The examples in (151) and (152) belong to pattern D and the examples in (153) belong to pattern E.

Since the CLs of pattern D share certain semantic features with the noun (e.g. shape, function), they seem to represent the semantic features of the noun. Consequently, they seem to sort or classify the semantic types of the noun. Therefore, they look less abstract than the CLs of pattern E. The more semantic features are shared between the CL and the noun, the less likely the CL may be replaced by *ge* (Ahrens 1994; Myers 2000). The degree of the abstractness depends on the degree of grammaticalization. As pointed out by Greenberg (1972: 15), a study of the semantic classification of a CL on the associate noun “becomes valuable in considering further stages of dynamic development”. In modern Mandarin, the correlation of the CL with the noun in pattern D is not systematic, and thus becomes co-occurrence restrictions, which are arbitrary (see 4.2.4). The correlation is not amenable to true generalizations but only to descriptive approximations. It is also not surprising that the correlation is not easy for children to learn (Li et al. 2008) (see 2.7.5 for a discussion of the issue from the experimental perspective).

We thus conclude that synchronically, the general and basic function of CLs in Mandarin Chinese is not sorting the semantic types of nouns.

2.7.3.5 CL languages without sortal CLs

If the basic function of CLs in a numeral expression is not sorting, we expect to see the existence of languages in which CLs do not classify nominals at all. Indeed, Niuean (Massam 2009) and some Oceanic languages (Mathew Dryer, p.c. July 2008) are such languages. In these languages, every non-mass noun is in construal with the same CL when it combines with a numeral or quantifier. In the following Niuean examples (Massam 2009: 679), the CL *e* occurs with various semantic types of nouns. This CL has no sorting function at all. The CL in the nominal domain parallels to the CL *time* in the verbal domain in English, as in (147a) and (148), which also does not have any sorting function.

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (158)a. | (e) ua e kuli
ABS.C two CL dog
‘two dogs’ | b. | tokolima e tagata loloa
PERS-five CL person tall
‘five tall people’ |
|---------|---|----|--|

- | | |
|--|---|
| c. (e) loga e fua loku
ABS.C many CL fruit papaya
'many papayas' | d. tokologa e Niue
PERS-many CL Niue
'many Niueans' |
|--|---|

Thus, on the one hand, numeral CLs do not have to classify nominals; and on the other hand, the CLs found in Bantu languages (e.g., Carstens 1991; Aikhenvald 2003), the CLs that are incorporated into verbal expressions in predicate CL languages (Allan 1977: 287) and sign languages (e.g., Sandler & Lillo-Martin 2006), and gender markers in general, do classify argument nominals, but they do not have to occur with a numeral or quantifier, and thus are not unit markers for counting. It might be more appropriate to call all CLs in numeral expressions mensural markers and the CLs in Bantu languages and gender markers sortal ones.

2.7.4 The unreliability of the *de* and pre-CL adjective arguments

In this section, I argue against the assumed correlation between the count-mass contrast and two phenomena in Mandarin Chinese: the occurrence of an adjective to the left of a unit word, as in (159a), and the occurrence of the functional element *de* to the right of a unit word, as in (159b) (Cheng & Sybesma 1998, 1999).

- (159)a. Numeral Adjective Unit Word Noun
- b. Numeral Unit Word DE Noun

I have argued that in Chinese, neither nouns nor CLs make a distinction between count and non-count ones themselves, since all nouns are non-count elements (2.3.1) and all CLs are count elements (2.4.2). But the value of [Delimitable] may determine whether a noun is a mass one or non-mass one. Individual, collective, and partitive CLs occur with non-mass nouns and individuating CLs occur with mass nouns (other unit words, i.e., kind CLs, standard and container measures, occur with either mass or non-mass nouns).

Cheng & Sybesma (1998, 1999) try to make a distinction between count CLs and mass CLs (called massifiers) (also see Cheng 2012). The names are used to show that in Chinese, the contrast between count and mass nouns can be distinguished at the level of CLs, if not at the level of nouns. Their count CLs are equivalent to individual CLs and all other kinds of unit words are mass CLs. They formalize the following two criteria.

Criterion A. A pre-CL adjective may occur with a mass noun, as seen in (160a), but not with a “count” noun, as seen in (160b) (Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 390, 1999: 516; also Wang 1994: 30). The term count noun in their analysis is called non-mass and non-count noun in this book. In other words, (159a) is assumed to be for mass nominals only.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| (160)a. yi da zhang zhi
one big CL paper
'one big piece of paper' | b. *yi da wei laoshi
one big CL teacher | |
| c. yi da tiao hao-guy
one big CL good-guy
'one big good guy' | d. san da zhi laohu
three big CL tiger
'three big tigers' | e. san chang tiao xianglian
three long CL necklace
'three long necklaces' |

It is true that (160b) is not acceptable. But isolated cases like this do not affect the observation that other examples of the same type are acceptable, as shown in (160c, d, e) (see Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 390 fn. 4 for their acknowledgement of counter-examples). Tang (2005), Hsieh (2008), Liu (2010), and X. P. Li (2011: 34), among others, all present lots of

counter-examples to this claim about pre-CL adjectives. A lot more examples can be found in Zhu (1982: 52), Lu (1987), Luo (1988), and Yang (2005: 33) (Examples of various types of CLs with adjectives have been seen in 2.4.3 above). Therefore, the adjective criterion is empirically problematic.

Criterion B. *De* may occur between a measure word and a mass noun, but not between a CL and a “count” noun (Chao 1968: 555, 588; T’sou 1976; Paris 1981: 32; Zhu 1982: 51; Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 388, 1999: 515). In other words, (159b) is assumed to be for mass nominals only. A typical pair of examples is (161):

- (161)a. san wan de tang b. *san ge de laoshi
 three bowl DE soup three CL DE teacher
 ‘three bowls of soup’ ‘three teachers’

Again, the unacceptability of (161b) is one of few isolated cases. In fact, all types of CLs can be followed by *de* in an appropriate context, as shown in (162a). (162b) (X. P. Li 2011: 40) and (162c) (mentioned by James Huang in his talk at National Tsing Hua University, Hsinchu, on July 9, 2010) further show that *de* may follow the individual CLs *li* and *tiao*, respectively.

- (162)a. Shufen chi-le yi-bai {ge/gongjin/bao/pian/dui/zhong} de pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-hundred CL/kilo/bag/slice/pile/kind DE apple
 ‘Shufen ate 100 apples or 100 {kilos/bags/slices/piles/kinds} of apples.’
 b. Shufen chi-le san-fen-zhi-yi li de ganmao-yao.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-third CL DE cold-pill
 ‘Shufen took one third of a cold pill.’
 c. Yi liang tiao de maojin ni zong mai-de-qi ba!
 one two CL DE towel you after.all buy-can PRT
 ‘You should be able to afford to buy one or two towels!’

The context for *de* to show up has nothing to do with the count-mass contrast. Instead, it has to do with the syntactic position of *de*. In Chapter 4 (4.5), I will spell out my analysis. Shortly speaking, *de* surfaces at two positions. In one position, it surfaces in a comparative ellipsis construction, while in another position, it introduces a constituent directly. The former situation is seen in constructions of individual, individuating, and kind CLs, whereas the latter situation is seen in constructions of the other types of unit words (partitive and collective CLs, standard and container measures). Note that the division here does not match with Cheng & Sybesma’s distinction between count and mass CLs. If one just considers the phonological form of *de* without considering its structural position, then, *de* may occur with all types of CLs or unit words, as seen in (162).²⁵

Therefore, Cheng & Sybesma’s (1998, 1999) claim that one type of CLs (the “count” type) may not be modified by an adjective, and may not be followed by *de*, whereas the other type (the “mass” type) can, is descriptively inadequate.

As mentioned above, several works, including Tang (2005: 432, 440-446), Hsieh (2008: 34), X. P. Li (2011), Liu (2010), etc. have already presented a lot of counter-examples to falsify the alleged distinction. Wu & Bodomo (2009: 489) point out that the two alleged types of CLs can occur with the same NP (See also Borer 2005: 98), as shown in (163). *Ben* in (163a) and *li* in (163b) are Cheng & Sybesma’s count CLs, and *xiang* in (163a’) and *wan* in

²⁵ Hsieh (2008: 39) mentions that *de* may follow an individual CL if the quantity expressed by the numeral is either approximate or emphasized. She did not show the case in which the encoded quantity is estimated but not emphasized. In my 4.5.2, I show that the quantity emphasis condition is the only condition.

(163b') are their mass CLs.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(163) a. san ben shu
three CL book
'three books'</p> <p>b. san li mi
three CL rice
'three grains of rice'</p> | <p>a'. san xiang shu
three box book
'three boxes of books'</p> <p>b'. san wan mi
three bowl rice
'three bowls of rice'</p> |
|--|--|

Examples like (164) (see Her & Hsieh 2010: 541) show that the two alleged constraints on the assumed count CLs (i.e., individual CLs) can even be violated at the same time. The CLs *ke* in (164a) and *tiao* in (164b) are typical individual CLs, but they are both preceded by a modifier and followed by *de*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(164) a. san da ke de gaolikai
three big CL DE cabbage
'three big cabbage'</p> | <p>b. san da tiao de yu
three big CL DE fish
'three big fish'</p> |
|---|---|

In conclusion, the alleged two criteria cannot make any distinction in CLs in Chinese, regardless of whether the assumed distinction correlates with the count-mass contrast.

2.7.5 Experimental perspective

We have claimed that the special function of CLs in CL languages is not dividing. On the contrary, it is the existence of individual CLs, which do not divide, that separates CL languages from non-CL languages (2.7.2). Thus, the traditional hypothesis that all nouns in CL languages are mass nouns is wrong.

The hypothesis that all nouns in CL languages are mass nouns has gone so far to lead people to believe that speakers of CL languages think differently about objects and stuff in the world from speakers of non-CL languages (a Whorfian effect), and some experimental studies such as Lucy (1992) have tried to prove the belief. However, recent studies such as Sandhofer et al. (2000), Colunga & Smith (2005), Barner et al. (2009), Li et al. (2009a, b), and Cheung et al. (2010, 2012) have not only reached a different interpretation from the Lucy-type of experiments, but also got new experiment results that do not support the Whorfian idea. The new research of both children and adults "presented evidence that speakers of Japanese, English, and Mandarin Chinese do not perceive objects differently" (Barner et al. 2009: 331). Cheung et al. (2012) conducted various experiments (A) to test the interpretations of bare nouns, (B) to test the interpretations of the parts of broken objects, (C) to test whether individual CLs, when they are highlighted and not highlighted, play any special role in quantity judgment task for flexible nouns such as *bingguo* 'apple', which is either non-mass or mass in the universal grinder context. They (*ibid.* p. 215) conclude that "the current studies provide strong evidence that nouns have similar semantic content crosslinguistically, regardless of variation in their syntactic expression. Nouns in classifier languages such as Mandarin and Japanese encode individuation like nouns in English, and can express this content without requiring the overt use of classifiers. Not only are classifiers unnecessary for individuation in Mandarin, but they also appear to be relatively weak cues to meaning."

We have also claimed that the basic function of CLs is not to classify, but to encode counting units (2.7.3). The separation of the general function from other functions of CLs is also attested in acquisition research, such as Fang (1985), Erbaugh (1986), Miao & Zhu (1992), Hu (1993), Myers & Tasy (2000), Chien et al. (2003), Huang (2009), and Li et al.

(2010), from both production and comprehension perspectives. Chien et al. (*ibid.* p. 96) state that “Different studies have shown different results regarding the order of classifier acquisition, but they all pointed to the conclusion that children first acquire the general classifier *ge* and use it as a “syntactic place-holder”, and they report (p. 113) that “supporting the well-established finding from earlier production studies that young children predominately use the general classifier *ge* for almost any noun, we found that hearing the general classifier *ge* did not make young children search for a particular referent.” Li et al. (2010: 224) report a similar result. One can see that the counting unit function of CLs is primary, and the sorting function for some CLs is secondary. The primary function is acquired earlier than the secondary one. As expected, nonnative adult learners of Mandarin also overuse *ge* (Polio 1994). Moreover, aphasia studies also indicate that brain damage patients neutralize CLs to *ge* more often than normals (Tzeng, Chen and Hung 1991). As pointed by Myers (2000: 204), the finding of the aphasia study “is consistent with our claim that *ge* is chosen by default when memory-access problems prevent accessing the exemplars that guide the selection of specific classifiers.”

2.8. Chapter summary

In this chapter, I have argued for a more refined syntactic analysis of the count-mass contrast. I list my main conclusions as follows:

A. The count-mass contrast of linguistic elements is decomposed into two features: [Numerable] and [Delimitable]. [+Numerable] means a noun can combine with a numeral directly, and thus it is a count noun. [-Numerable] nouns are non-count nouns. No noun in Chinese is a count noun. [+Delimitable] means a noun can combine with a shape, size, or boundary modifier, and thus it is a non-mass noun. A mass noun is defined by both [-Numerable] and [-Delimitable]. Not all nouns in Chinese are mass nouns.

B. Some CLs occur with mass nouns and some with non-mass nouns. Like other types of unit words, all CLs specify units and tell us what counts as one in counting. Individual CLs occur with non-mass nouns, and their semantic function is to represent the natural units of the elements denoted by non-mass nouns. Such CLs have no dividing function at all. It is the existence of this type of CLs that separates CL languages from other languages.

C. The feature [+Numerable] may be distributed in different types of elements cross-linguistically and within the same language. In Mandarin Chinese, except in idiomatic expressions, compounds and list contexts, nouns do not have this feature, whereas unit words do. In languages such as English, the feature is found in both count nouns and unit words such as measure words.

D. Like in English, quantifiers in Chinese also show co-occurrence restrictions with respect to Numerability. Since only unit words are [+Numerable] in the language, if a quantifier occurs with [+Numerable], it must occur with a unit word.

E. Numerability is different from the notion number, although they interact in various ways cross-linguistically.

Chapter 3 Classifiers and Plurality

3.1. Introduction

3.1.1 The independent status of number

Like the linguistic notions such as gender and person, number has its independent status in grammar. In Chapter 2, we have decomposed countability into two features, Numerability and Delimitability, and also clarified that Numerability is different from plural number. In this chapter, we explore the grammatical property of plurality and its representations in the CL language Mandarin Chinese. CL languages have been generally claimed to have no productive morphological form for plurality, however, the fact reported in this chapter will falsify this claim.

The linguistic notion number encodes the contrast between singularity and plurality (including dual and paucal plurality in some languages).²⁶ Plurality is underspecified with the exact quantity, and thus it has no semantic dependency with numerals. Whether a plural form is compatible with a numeral in the same nominal is up to the formal properties of the relevant functional categories in the language, i.e., whether the plural marker has [+Numerable]. In this chapter we will show that plurality is compatible with numerals in languages such as English (e.g., *three pianos*), but not in many languages including Mandarin Chinese.

We are going to answer two basic questions in this chapter:

How does Chinese, a CL language, encode the number contrast?

Why are the number markers optional in the language?

It is well-recognized that personal pronouns in the language have the plural marker *-men*, which is obligatory in use.

(165)		<u>singular</u>	<u>plural</u>
	1 st person	wo	wo-men
	2 nd person	ni	ni-men
	3 rd person	ta	ta-men

A less mentioned fact is that kinship terms in the language also have the same obligatory plural marker:

- | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|
| (166)a. | Yani kanjian-le gugu.
Yani see-PRF aunt
'Yani saw her aunt.'
Not: 'Yani saw her aunts.' | b. | Yani kanjian-le gugu-men.
Yani see-PRF aunt-PL
'Yani saw her aunts.'
Not: 'Yani saw her aunt.' |
|---------|--|----|---|

As for other types of nominals of the language, it has been generally assumed that there is no plural marker. The most frequently discussed plural-encoding forms are *xie* 'some' (e.g., Iljic 1994) and *-men* (e.g., Li & Thompson 1989: 40, 83; Iljic 1994, 2001; Li 1999; Rijkhoff 2002: 154). However, *xie* can occur with a mass noun (e.g., *na xie shui* 'that amount of water'), and thus it does not express a contrast to any sense of singularity. The suffix *-men*, although obligatory for pronouns and kinship terms, is restricted to common nouns that are both definite and human-denoting, and thus is not a productive number

²⁶ See Corbett (2000: Ch. 7) for other uses of plural forms cross-linguistically, including honorific and exaggerative uses. Other formative forms, such as *yi* 'one' (2.4.4) and CLs (see Bisang 1999; Zhang 2012b), may also have special or extended uses beyond their basic uses.

marker.²⁷ Indeed, if we consider *xie* and *-men* only, we cannot conclude that there is a systematic number contrast in the language.

However, we will argue that the language does have a productive formal way to encode plurality, an understanding that has not been reached so far, although the relevant facts have been recognized. Productivity here means the recurrence of a certain morphosyntactic pattern in which lexically different subtypes of elements may occur (I thank xxxx for helping me to make this point precise). If productivity counts as an effective criterion for attesting a certain property (i.e., feature), the investigation of this chapter will lead to the conclusion that Mandarin Chinese has the property of number, although the number markers interact with other elements in a way different from languages such as English.

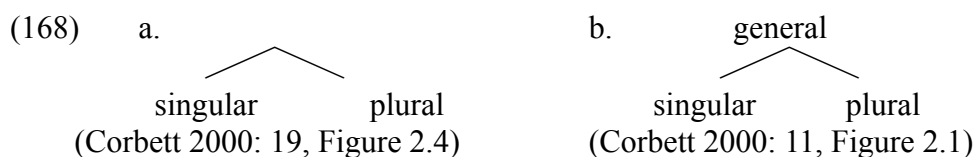
In 3.1.2 and 3.1.3, we introduce notions of general number and abundant plural. Both will be identified in the number system of Mandarin Chinese. Then in 3.2 and 3.3, we discuss the plurality and singularity markers in the language, respectively. 3.4 is about the correlations between morphological and semantic markedness of number marking, and 3.5 is a theoretical discussion of the issue on number in CL languages. 3.6 concludes the chapter.

3.1.2 General number and the optionality of number marking

According to Corbett (2000), nominals that are not specified with either singular or plural express the so-called general number. For instance, in the Fouta Jalon dialect of Fula (in Guinea), we find a three-way system of number (Corbett 2000: 12):

(167)	<i>general</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	[Fula]
a.	toti ‘toad(s)’	totii-ru ‘toad’	totii-ji ‘toads’	
b.	nyaari ‘cat(s)’	nyaarii-ru ‘cat’	nyaarii-ji ‘cats’	
c.	boofu ‘egg(s)’	woofu-nde ‘egg’	boofu-de ‘eggs’	
d.	biini ‘bottle(s)’	biinii-ri ‘bottle’	biinii-ji ‘bottles’	

Thus, cross-linguistically, the contrast between singular number and plural number can be represented differently. As clearly discussed in Corbett (2000: 9-19), languages such as English do not have general number, and therefore, there is a binary contrast: singular vs. plural, as shown in (168a). In languages such as Fula, plurality is not only in contrast to singularity, but also in contrast to the general number, a ternary contrast. The ternary contrast does not affect the formal status of number feature in the language.



Many CL languages use bare nouns to express general number. So does Mandarin Chinese (Rullmann & You 2006). In this language, bare nouns can denote either singular or plural units, depending on the context. Some possible interpretations of the bare noun *xigua* ‘watermelon’ are listed in (169a), and similarly, some possible interpretations of the bare noun *shui* ‘water’ are listed in (169b).

²⁷ Historically, the plural marker *-men* could also occur with non-human nouns such as *ma* ‘horse’ (Öta 2003 [1958]: 316).

- (169)a. Zhuo-shang you xigua.
table-on have watermelon
'There is a watermelon on the table,'
'There are watermelons on the table.'
'There is a slice of watermelon on the table.'
'There are slices of watermelon on the table.'
'There is a pile of watermelon on the table.'
'There are piles of watermelon on the table.'
- b. Zhuo-shang you shui.
table-on have water
'There is a drop of water on the table,'
'There are drops of water on the table,'
'There is a cup of water on the table,'
'There are cups of water on the table,'
'There is a liter of water on the table,'
'There are liters of water on the table.'

It has been generally assumed that elements that encode plurality but are optional are not real plural markers (e.g., Acquaviva 2008; see also the comment mentioned in Danon 2011: 300 fn. 3). In Rijkhoff (2002: 155), the apparent number markers in CL languages are analyzed as nominal aspect markers, rather than number markers, although he acknowledges that the boundary between the two is not sharp. In Wiltschoko (2009) (also see Cowper & Hall 2012), optional plural-denoting elements are analyzed as adjuncts of certain element such as NP, n, or nominal root, whereas obligatory ones are analyzed as head elements of an independent functional projection (NumP).

However, if we consider the issue of optionality only, we find that not all well-recognized grammatical category markers are always obligatorily realized as overt morphological forms. The complementizer *that* in English is optional in some contexts, as shown in (170a), although the independent projection of CP is well-established. The same optionality is seen with the complementizer *te* in Japanese (Travis & Lamontagne 1992: 159; Sato 2010). The accusative case marker *o* in Japanese is also optional in some contexts, as shown in (170b), although the marker is not a nominal adjunct. The same optionality is seen with the accusative marker *yi* in Turkish (Travis & Lamontagne *ibid.*: 158). Similarly, AspP headed by aspect markers is also well-recognized in Mandarin Chinese, although the use of aspect markers is not always obligatory, as shown in (171).

- (170)a. John believes (that) Mary will win.
 b. John-ga dare-(o) nagutta no? [Japanese]
 John-NOM who-ACC hit Q
 ‘Who did John hit?’
- (171)a. Yani yijing yishidao(-le) wenti de yanzhongxing.
 Yani already realize-PRF issue DE seriousness
 ‘Yani has realized the seriousness of the issue.’
 b. Yani zao-jiu zhidao(-le) Jianmin hui lai.
 Yani early-then know-PRF Jianmin will come
 ‘Yani knew long ago that Jianmin would come.’

The above comment, of course, does not explain the optionality of plural markers in some languages. Such an optionality occurs in all languages in which general number is available, such as Persian, Korean (Kim 2005), and Indonesian (Dalrymple & Mofu 2012) (the Persian examples below are cited from Cowper & Hall 2012: 47).

- (172)a. Muš tuye zirzæmin hæst. [Persian]
mouse in basement is
'There are mice/there's a mouse in the basement.'
b. Muš-ha tuye zirzæmin hæst-ænd.
mouse-PL in basement be-PL
'The mice are in the basement.'

If the general number is available in a language, plural marking cannot be obligatory. In such a language, although plurality is in contrast to singularity, “the distinction is made ‘when it matters’ and not automatically, as in languages like English” (Corbett 2000: 14). This means that in such a language, only when the meaning of plurality is salient in the context, a plural marker occurs. As a consequence, the use of a plural marker is not obligatory. Corbett (2000: 2) states that “If number forms are available, then surely they must be used? This is an Anglo-centric assumption and is quite false.” The number markers in Mandarin Chinese, to be presented in this chapter, have consistent forms and consistent meanings, occurring with all types of unit words, even though they are optional.²⁸

In some languages, plural markers are not compatible with numerals, for no semantic reason. We will show that along with languages such as Hungarian and Turkish, Mandarin Chinese also exhibits the incompatibility between plural markers and numerals (3.2.5). If plural markers were adjuncts, they would not be rejected in the structure-building, without a semantic reason. Plural markers in such languages thus do not behave like adjuncts.

3.1.3 Abundant plural

There are different types of plurals. Not only paucal plural, which encode small quantity of plurality, but also anti-paucal plural. The latter is called abundant plural. This type of plural denotes many instances of *x* (Corbett 2000: 30, 87).²⁹

Abundant plural is found in both material mass nouns and count nouns. For material mass nouns, abundant plural encodes abundant units of the mass. Recall the mass plural examples in (54), repeated here as (173a) (2.2.6). As clearly stated in Mathieu (2012: 189), mass plurals “appear neither dividing nor counting. Rather, they appear to denote abundance.” Such plural forms are used “when the exact number is impossible to pinpoint or when it is irrelevant” (Mathieu 2012: 189). Examples of abundant plural of mass nouns have been reported in unrelated languages, including English (173a), French, Hebrew, and Biblical English (see Mathieu 2012: 189 for examples and references). The modern Greek example in (173b) is from Alexiadou (2011: 36) (for more Greek examples and an extensive discussion, see Tsoulas 2006), and the Niuean example in (173c) is from Massam (2009: 682 fn. 20; C = common). In St’át’imcets (Davis & Matthewson 1999: 61) and Ojibwe (Mathieu 2012: 184), mass nouns are pluralized freely, to express the abundant meaning. In Persian (Ghaniabadi 2012), mass nouns can also be pluralized to express “a large amount of whatever the noun denotes” (Cowper & Hall 2012: 48). Wiltchko (2012: 153) also reports that mass nouns in Blackfoot and Halkomelem may have plural markers to express this “abundant” meaning.

²⁸ If we consider personal pronouns, kinship terms, and nouns that denote one-to-one natural pairs such as married couples, the pair of a master and his apprentice, Chinese seems to have even a dual suffix, i.e., *-lia*, as shown by the examples in (i). (iia) is not acceptable, probably because one teacher usually has more than one student, and thus the default relation between teachers and students is not one-to-one. The same constraint applies to (iib). Lü et al. (1999 [1980]: 366) claim that *-lia* is a short form of *liang ge* ‘two CL’, which might function as an appositive, to the right of a compound. However, this claim is not sufficient to explain the unacceptability of the examples in (ii). According to the Animacy Hierarchy of number marking (Corbett 2000: 56), personal pronouns and kinship terms are more likely to have number markers than other nominals. The restrictive application of dual marking here seems to follow the hierarchy. Note that in the presence of general number, this dual number is also optional.

(i) a. ta-lia	b. xiong-di-lia	c. fu-qi-lia	d. shi-tu-lia
3-DUAL	elder.brother-younger.brother-DUAL	husband-wife-DUAL	master-apprentice-DUAL
‘they two’	‘two brothers’	‘husband-wife couple’	‘master and apprentice’
(ii) a. *shi-sheng-lia	b. *guan-bing-lia	c. *yuan-yang-lia	d. *ri-yue-lia
teacher-student-DUAL	officer-soldier-DUAL	mandary.duck.male-female-DUAL	sun-moon-DUAL

²⁹ Abundant plural is different from exaggerative plural, since the latter may have just two elements involved (Corbett 2000: 234-235, esp. his example (26)).

- (173)a. the (*three) waters of the Nile
 b. {hithikan nera /hithike nero} sto patoma. [Modern Greek]
 dripped water.PL/dripped water on the floor
 ‘A lot of water dripped on the floor.’
 c. e tau vai [Niuean]
 ABS.C PL water

Note that when Mandarin *xie* ‘some’ occurs with a mass noun, it is not an abundant plural marker, since the nominal *na xie shui* ‘that XIE water’ may denote any amount of water, including a very tiny amount.

For non-mass nouns, abundant plural can be seen in two forms in English. It can be found in a bare plural unit word followed by *of*, as in (174). The bare plural *years* in (174a), for instance, denotes many years, instead of just a couple of years.

- (174)a. After years of hard work,
 b. There are bottles of wine in the cellar.
 c. There are piles of books in the room.

Abundant plural can also be expressed by reduplication of bare nouns, with a preposition such as *after*, *by*, or *upon*, as in (175) (Pi 1995, cited by Travis 2001) (only *upon* allows the noun to be in a plural form). Also, as shown in (176a-e), “different size domains can be reduplicated” (Travis 2001: 458), and as seen in (176f), reduplication can apply more than once (Guy Emerson, p.c.).³⁰

- (175)a. Student after student visited the professor on Monday.
 b. Gertrude watched program after program all afternoon.
 c. Jon washed plate after plate for hours after the party.
 d. Eric can drink mug upon mug of coffee in a single hour.
 e. The careful artist completed the mosaic tile by tile.
 f. In fairy tale after fairy tale, good triumphs over evil.
 g. Bag(s) upon bag(s) of marshmallows were stolen this week.
- (176)a. cup after cup of coffee
 b. cup of coffee after cup of coffee
 c. cup after steaming cup of coffee
 d. steaming cup after steaming cup of coffee
 e. steaming cup of coffee after steaming cup of coffee
 f. cup after cup after cup of coffee

3.2. Unit plurality

3.2.1 RUWNs as unit plurality-denoting nominals

In many languages, noun reduplication can express plurality (Rijkhoff 2002: 152). In Mandarin Chinese, however, it is the reduplication of unit words that expresses plurality systematically, as seen in (177) (Song 1980; Li & Thompson 1981: 34; Guo 1999; Yang 2005; Paris 2007; Hsieh 2008: 66).

³⁰ Reduplication is not iconic. See Travis (1999) for arguments against iconic approach to reduplication.

- (177)a. He-li piao-zhe (yi) duo-duo lianhua.
 river-in float-PRG one CL-RED lotus
 ‘There are many lotuses floating on the river.’
 b. Di-shang you yi dui-dui lianhuan.
 ground-on have one CL-RED lotus
 ‘There are piles of lotuses on the ground.’

I will call the nominals containing a reduplicate unit word, like the underlined parts in (177), Reduplicate Unit Word Nominals (RUWNs).

Unlike bare nouns in the language, RUWNs never allow a singular reading. Therefore, the reduplicate unit word in such a nominal can be identified as a plural marker. Accordingly, the word *yi* ‘one’ in the nominal is not a numeral (see 3.2.4).

Reduplicate unit words denote plurality of units, rather than plurality of individuals. In (177a), the individual CL *duo* is reduplicated, and thus the plurality of the lotus units overlaps with the plurality of lotus individuals. In (177b), the collective CL *dui* ‘pile’ is reduplicated, and thus it is the plurality of the unit pile that is expressed.

The plurality type expressed by a reduplicate unit word is abundant plurality. (177a) may not be accepted if there are only two or three lotuses in the river. I thus add the word ‘many’ in the translation. Similarly, (177b) may not be accepted if there are only two or three piles of lotuses on the ground.

The combination of the above two properties, unit plurality and abundant plurality, is also found in the English examples in (174).

3.2.2 The productivity

If a certain formal strategy in language is productive, it is morpho-syntactically systematic. All types of mono-syllabic unit words can be reduplicated to express plurality of units in Mandarin Chinese.

- (178)a. Mingtian qiang-shang hui gua-zhe (yi) zhan-zhan ming deng. [Individual CL]
 tomorrow wall-on will hang-PRG one CL-RED bright light
 ‘There will be many bright lights hung on the wall tomorrow.’
 b. Yani bei-shang lu-chu (yi) tiao-tiao shang-ba. [Individuating CL]
 Yani back-on show-out one CL-RED wound-scar
 ‘There are many scars on Yani’s back.’
 c. Yaunzi-li dui-zhe yi dui-dui xinjian. [Collective CL]
 yard-in pile-PRG one CL-RED letter
 ‘In the yard, there are piles of letters.’
 d. Panzi-li li-zhe yi pian-pian xigua. [Partitive CL]
 plate-in stand-PRG one CL-RED watermelon
 ‘In the plate, there stood slices of watermelon.’
 e. Yani ba yi jin-jin renshen cheng-le-you-cheng. [Standard measure]
 Yani BA one jin-RED ginseng weigh-PRF-again-weigh
 ‘Yani weighed the jins of ginseng again and again.’
 f. Zhuo-shang fang-zhe yi ping-ping yao-shui. [Container measure]
 table-on put-PRG one bottle-RED medicine-liquid
 ‘There are bottles of medicine-liquid on the table.’
 g. Yani jingli-guo zhong-zhong monan. [Kind CL]
 Yani experience-EXP kind-RED hardship
 ‘Yani has experienced various kinds of hardship.’

In addition to the above non-initial positions, RUWNs can also occur at the left-peripheral position of a clause, as seen in (179) (for more examples see Liu 1980: 10; H. Yang 2005: 63; Hsieh 2008: 3):

- (179)a. Ge-ge xuesheng dou you ziji de wangye. [Individual CL]
 CL-RED student all have self DE webpage
 ‘All students have their own web pages.’
- b. Yi gu-gu zhengqi cong jiqi pen-le chulai. [Individuating CL]
 one CL-RED steam from machine spray-PRF out
 ‘Puffs of steam came out of the machine.’
- c. Shuang-shuang qingren bu-ru hui-chang. [Collective CL]
 CL-RED lover step-in meeting-place
 ‘Many pairs of lovers stepped into the meeting place.’
- d. Pian-pian xigua dou hen tian. [Partitive CL]
 CL-RED watermelon all very sweet
 ‘Every slice of watermelon is sweet.’
- e. Cun-cun jifu dou ke dedao baohu. [Standard measure]
 inch-RED skin all can get protection
 ‘Every inch of the skin can get protected.’
- f. Pan-pan cai dou hen tebie. [Container measure]
 plate-RED dish all very special
 ‘Every dish is special.’
- g. Zhong-zhong jixiang biao ming Zhong-yi bu kekao. [Kind CL]
 kind-RED sign indicate Chinese-medication not reliable
 ‘Various signs indicate that Chinese medication is not reliable.’

As for the semantic roles of RUWNs, in addition to possessor, as in (179a), and theme, as in (179b), causer and agent are also possible, as seen in (180a) and (180b), respectively.

- (180) a. Yi zhi-zhi fengzheng la-dao-le shu-shang de xiao qizi.
 one CL-RED kite pull-down-PRF tree-on DE small banner
 ‘Many kites pulled down the banners on the trees.’
- b. Yi ge-ge jizhe zai yuanzi-li he-zhe jiu.
 one CL-RED reporter at yard-in drink-PRG wine
 ‘Many reporters are drinking wine in the yard.’

Reduplicate unit words may also be modified by delimitive adjectives, as shown in (181a), exhibiting [+Delimitable], as in numeral expressions (2.4.3). The noun following a reduplicate unit word may also be modified, as shown in (181b) and (181c).

- (181)a. Yani bei-shang lu-chu-le xiao-kuai xiao-kuai hong-ban.
 Yani back-on show-out-PRF small-CL small-CL red-spot
 ‘There are many small red spots on Yani’s back.’
- b. Yani bei-shang lu-chu-le tiao-tiao zihongse de shang-ba.
 Yani back-on show-out-PRF CL-RED purple DE wound-scar
 ‘There are many purple scars on Yani’s back.’
- c. Yi ben-ben gang shang-jia de shu hen kuai jiu mai-guang-le.
 one CL-RED just on-shelf DE book very fast then sell-out-PRF
 ‘The many books that had been just put on the shelves were sold out very quickly.’

Note that reduplicate unit words, when they are not followed by a noun, may also function as pronominal subjects, taking other nominals in the context as their antecedent, as in (182a), or as adverbials, expressing the meaning of ‘one by one’ or ‘one after another’, as in (182b) (Song 1978, 1980; Guo 1999). In the latter example, the reduplicate CL *tiao-tiao* occurs between the subject *e-shang de qing-jin* ‘the blue veins on the forehead’ and the verb *zhan-chu* ‘show-out’, a typical position for adverbials in the language.

- (182)a. Zhiyu naxie haizi_i, ge-ge_i dou hui Fawen.
 as.for DEM kid CL-RED all know French
 ‘As for those kids, they all know French.’
 b. E-shang DE qing-jin tiao-tiao zhan-chu.
 forehead-on DE blue-vein CL-RED show-out
 ‘The blue veins on the forehead became visible, one next to another.’

Since it is well-recognized that functional forms may have multiple grammatical functions, depending on the syntactic contexts, I will not elaborate these usages of reduplicate unit words here. Note that cross-linguistically, plural markers may be used beyond marking plurality (See footnote 25). In Mano, a plural marker may have intensificative, contrastive focus, and even mirative uses. In examples such as (183), “plural markers are placed outside the noun phrase and function similar to an adverb.” (Khachaturyan 2012)

- (183) lí gbéípié ké vó? [Mano]
 2SG walk do:IPFV PL
 ‘(How come,) you are taking a stroll? (I thought you always stay at home)’

3.2.3 The problems the distributive plural analysis

The plurality encoded by reduplication has been called ‘distributive plural’ in Sanches (1973: 13). Similarly, Li & Thompson (1981: 34) claim that reduplication forms “signify ‘every’” (also see Steindl 2010: 53). Some grammar books in late 50’s and early 60’s (see the review in Song 1980) and Hsieh (2008: 6) also claim that reduplicate CLs have a distributive reading. In Hsieh (2008: 67), based on the assumed distributive reading, RUWNs without *yi* are claimed to have a singular, rather than plural, feature.

Indeed, the reading of (179a), for instance, is that each of the multiple students has his or her own web page. The example does not mean that some students have this property while others do not, although such a meaning is also a plural meaning. However, as correctly pointed out by Song (1980: Sec. 2.2.3) and Guo (1999: 7), the distributive or exhaustive meaning comes from the adverb *dou* ‘all’ in the containing clause, rather than the reduplication itself. They also observe that whenever *dou* is allowed (even though it does not show up), the distributive or exhaustive meaning occurs. In (179c), (179g), and all of the examples in (178), there is no *dou* and no exhaustive reading is attested.

Another source for a possible distributive reading of a RUWN is the occurrence of certain non-collective modifier, such as *zuge* ‘one after another’ in the sentence, as in (184). Thus the default plurality reading of a RUWN can be specified into a distributive plural reading in the context (See Yang 2002: 31).

- (184) Yi zhuang-zhuang xin-shi zuge jiechu.
 one CL-RED heart-thing on.after.another remove
 ‘The worries are removed one after another.’

The fact that RUWNs do not have to encode a distributive reading is seen in their

compatibility with collective verbs. In (185a), for instance, the RUWN *yi ping-ping jiu* ‘bottles of wine’ is selected by the collective verb *hunhe* ‘mix’. Since collective verbs do not select distributive nominals, the RUWNs in (185) are not distributive nominals.

- (185)a. *Yani ba yi ping-ping jiu hunhe zai yiqi.*
 Yani BA one bottle-RED wine mix at together
 ‘Yani mixed the bottles of wine together.’
 b. *Yani ba yi pian-pian shuye dui zai yiqi.*
 Yani BA one CL-RED leaf gather at together
 ‘Yani gathered many leafs together.’

Considering a restricted range of data, Cheng (2009) claims that reduplicate CLs in Mandarin Chinese must occur with *dou* ‘all’ and that they denote the meaning of ‘every’. This claim is descriptively inaccurate.

If we consider three facts, whether both distributive and non-distributive readings are allowed, whether both preverbal and post-verbal positions are allowed, and whether all elements of the type (e.g., all unit words) are applied, we can see that RUWNs in Mandarin Chinese are not constrained at all.

In the language, some non-mass nouns, rather than CLs, may be reduplicated, as seen in (186a, b). Unlike RUWNs, such reduplicate nouns never start with *yi*. They must occur with *dou* ‘all’ and always denote the meaning of ‘every’ (Sanches 1973: 13), and they may not occur in a post-verbal position, as seen in (186c). Moreover, many other non-mass nouns such as *deng* ‘lamp’ and *shu* ‘book’ may not be reduplicated, as seen in (186d). The restriction that only some nouns may be reduplicated to express a plural reading is also seen in other languages (see Rijkhoff 2002: 152).

- (186) a. *Zi-zi dou liulu-chu tade chouhen.*
 character-RED all reveal-out his hatred
 ‘All characters show his hatred.’
 b. *Cun-cun dou faxian-le zhe ge bingdu.*
 village-RED all find-PRF this CL virus
 ‘This kind of virus has been found in all of the villages.’
 c. **Baoyu kanjian-le zi-zi.*
 Baoyu see-PRF character-RED
 Intended: ‘Baoyu saw all the characters.’
 d. **Deng-deng dou hen liang.*
 lamp-PRF all very bright
 Intended: ‘All the lamps are bright.’

In Kam and Northern Zhuang, replication of monosyllabic unit words and monosyllabic non-mass nouns exhibits the same reading and distribution constraints, but reduplication of disyllabic non-mass nouns may have abundant plural reading, although they still may not occur postverbally (Gerner 2010: 275).

3.2.4 Yi ‘one’, definiteness, and specificity of RUWNs

A RUWN may start with *yi* ‘one’ or a demonstrative-*yi* string.

If RUWNs are plural nominals, as pointed out by Hsieh (2008: 59), it is unclear why *yi* ‘one’ may occur with them. I call the *yi* in a RUWN RED-YI (RED is for Reduplication). RED-YI is different from the cardinal number *yi* ‘one’ in the following aspects.

First, unlike other numerals, RED-YI is not in paradigmatic relation with any other

numerals. It may be neither replaced by, nor in contrast to, another numeral, as shown in (187) (Steindl 2010: 69).

- (187)a. {yi/*wu} zhi-zhi xiao ya
 one/five CL-RED small duck
 ‘small ducks’
 b. *Wo kanjian-le yi zhi-zhi xiao ya, er bushi wu zhi-zhi xiao ya.
 I see-PRF one CL-RED small duck but not five CL-RED small duck

Second, in certain contexts, RED-YI is optional (see (177a)), but in some other constructions, it is obligatory. For instance, if the reduplicated unit word is not a kind CL and the RUWN follows a verb such as *you* ‘have’, as in (188a), or the perfect aspect marker *le*, as in (188b), or a demonstrative, as in (188c), *yi* is obligatory. Also, if the unit word is the CL *wei* or the standard measure *jin* ‘cattie’, as in (188d) and (188e), respectively (Kao 2012: 7), *yi* is obligatory.

- (188) a. Nali you *(yi) ping-ping yinliao.
 there have one bottle-RED beverage
 ‘There are bottles of beverage.’
 b. Lang chi-le *(yi) zhi-zhi xiao yazi. (Steindl 2010)
 wolf eat-PRF one CL-RED little duck
 ‘The wolf ate a lot of little ducks.’
 c. Yani ba na *(yi) tou-tou lao niu gan-ji-le gucang.
 Yani BA that one CL-RED old cow herd-into-PRF barn
 ‘Yani herded those old cows into the barn.’
 d. Ke-ting-li zhan-zhe *(yi) wei-wei keren.
 living.room-in stand-PRG one CL-RED guest
 ‘In the living room, there were many guests staning there.’
 e. Yani ba *(yi) jin-jin rensen zhuang-jin beibao.
 Yani BA one catty-RED ginseng put-in backpack
 ‘Yani put the catties of ginseng into the backpack.’

On the other hand, if the unit word is a kind CL, RED-YI may not occur (also see (179g)):

- (189) a. Yani tingjian-le *(yi) zhong-zhong qiguai de shengyin.
 Yani hear-PRF one kind-RED strange DE sound
 ‘Yani heard various kinds of strange sound.’
 b. (*Yi) Zhong-zhong jixiang biao ming Zhong-yi bu kekao.
 one kind-RED sign indicate Chinese-medication not reliable
 ‘Various signs indicate that Chinese medication is not reliable.’
 c. Yani you zhong-zhong maobing.
 Yani have kind-RED problem
 ‘Yani has many varous problems.’

In contrast, a real numeral does not have these distributional properties. Thus, as stated by Steindl (2010: 69), RED-YI “does not function as a numeral here”.

Song (1978) claims that the string of [*yi* AA] is a short form of [*yi* A *yi* A], where A is a unit word. In (190a), *yi* occurs to the left of the reduplicant and the base. In (190b), the second *yi* disappears and the first one remains. In (190c), *yi* does not occur. The three sentences mean

the same.³¹ Since this study argues for the existence of plural markers in the language, I leave an evaluation of Song's claim to another study.

- (190)a. Naxie daoyu jiu xiang yi-ke-yi-ke baoshi.
 those island just look.like one-CL-one-CL diamond
 'Those islands look like diamonds.'
 b. Naxie daoyu jiu xiang yi-ke-ke baoshi.
 those island just look.like one-CL-CL diamond
 c. Naxie daoyu jiu xiang ke-ke baoshi.
 those island just look.like CL-CL diamond

Like unit words in numeral expressions, reduplicate unit words may also be modified by delimitive adjectives. We have seen an example in (181). The modification is also compatible with RED-YI, as seen in (191) (Song 1978: Sec. 8).

- (191) Gu-chang-shang, pu-zhe yi xiao kuai yi xiao kuai doujia he guzi.
 grain-ground-on, spread-PRG one small CL one small CL pod and millet
 'On the ground, spread small patches of pods and millets.'

In (191), both *yi* and the adjective are reduplicated. It is possible that the morphological strategy that expresses the plurality, i.e., reduplication, applies not only to the unit word, but also to all elements to the left of the unit word. Recall that the domain of reduplication may vary, as seen in (176).

RED-YI cannot be a distributive D-element. We have shown that the possible distributive reading of a RUWN is related to *dou* 'all' in the hosting sentence, rather than any element internal to the nominal. I assume that RED-YI is an existential quantifier by default, similar to the *yi* in NEYCs (2.4.4). This assumption can explain the fact that if a RUWN is initiated with *yi* 'one', it is indefinite, as in (177) and some examples in (178).

If a RUWN does not start with *yi*, it can be definite, especially when it occurs in the subject position, as in (179a). A RUWN can also start with a demonstrative-*yi* string, to encode a definite unit-plurality, as seen in (192). Such examples are parallel to the example in footnote 16. The existential quantifier function of *yi* is overridden by the definiteness of the demonstrative in such cases. The availability of these various readings of RUWNs means that the reduplication of a unit word as a morphological strategy to encode unit plurality is underspecified with definiteness.

- (192)a. Wo zhongyu kanjian-le na yi zuo-zuo gao-lou.
 I finally see-PRF that one CL-RED high-building
 'I finally saw those many high buildings.'
 b. Ni dasuan ba zhe yi jin-jin chaye fang-dao nali?
 you plan BA this one kilo-RED tea put-to where
 'Where do you plan to put these kilos of tea?'

Reduplicate unit words also seem to be underspecified with specificity. In (178a), the RUWN is non-specific. But in the examples in (193) below, they are specific indefinite. In (193a), the RUWN *yi feng-feng xin* 'letter after letter' follows the causative marker BA, which introduces a definite or specific causee nominal only (also see (178e)). In the

³¹ The functional element *de* may also follow a reduplicate CL in some constructions. I put the complexity aside here.

existential coda construction in (193b) (Huang 1987; Zhang 2008), the RUWN *yi li-li baoshi* ‘diamonds’ is the subject of the secondary predicate *shanshanfaguang* ‘shine’, and the nominal in this position must be indefinite specific.

- (193) a. Yani ba yi feng-feng xin reng-dao-le huo-li.
 Yani BA one CL-RED letter throw-to-PRF fire-in
 ‘Yani threw letter after letter into the fire.’
 b. Chouti-li fang-zhe yi li-li baoshi shanshanfaguang.
 drawer-in put-PRG one CL-RED diamond shine
 ‘In the drawer, there are many diamonds, which shine.’

However, a RUWN may not start with a quantificational D-element, such as the universal quantifier *mei* ‘every’, *suoyou* ‘all’, the quantifier *renhe* ‘any’, and the interrogative word *na* ‘which’.

- (194) *{mei/suoyou/renhe/na} ben-ben shu (dou) hen gui
 every/all/any/which CL-RED book all very expensive

According to Bošković’s (2012) investigation, in many languages that have no definite article, number markers interact with definiteness and specificity properties. Chinese has no definite article, and it is thus not surprising that RUWNs exhibit certain constraints with respect to such properties.

Another constraint on RUWNs is that they may not be preceded by any D-cluster that contains *xie*, such as *naxie* ‘those’, *zhexie* ‘these’, *yixie* ‘some’, and *youxie* ‘some’. Such a cluster always encodes plurality if it precedes a non-mass noun. This constraint is shown in (195). Comparing (195) with the examples in (192), we see that it is the occurrence of *xie* that makes the examples unacceptable. I leave this issue for future research.

- (195)a. *Wo zhongyu kanjian-le naxie (yi) zuo-zuo gao-lou.
 I finally see-PRF those one CL-RED high-building
 b. *Ni dasuan ba zhexie (yi) jin-jin chaye fang-dao nali?
 you plan BA this one kilo-RED tea put-to where

3.2.5 Numerability of number markers

Reduplicate unit words are incompatible with numerals in Mandarin, as shown by (196):³²

- (196) Zhuo-shang bai-zhe (*jiu) ben-ben xin shu.
 table-on put-PRG nine CL-RED new book
 ‘There are many new books on the table.’

Similarly, in some languages, plural markers never occur with any numerals, a well-known fact stated in textbooks such as Booij (2007: 127). In the Hungarian examples in (55), repeated here as (197), the plural marker *-k* may not occur with the numerals (Csirmaz & Dekany 2010: (88)). The same constraint is also found in Turkish, Western Armanian (Bale

³² The plural-denoting suffix *-men*, which obligatorily occurs with plural pronouns and optionally with plural human-denoting nouns, is also incompatible with numerals, if the CL is not a collective one, as shown in (ia). But *-men* may occur with a numeral, if the CL is a collective CL, as shown in (ib) (Hsieh 2008: 7).

(i) a. san ge laoshi-(*men) b. na san qun xuesheng-men
 three CL teacher-PL DEM three CL student-PL
 ‘three teachers’ ‘those three groups of students’

et al. 2011b), and Bangla (Dayal 2011: 4).

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|-------------|
| (197)a. | három takaró-(*k)
three blanket-PL
'three blankets' | b. | három kutya-(*k)
three dog-PL
'three dogs' | [Hungarian] |
|---------|---|----|--|-------------|

Note that in (197), the plural is not an abundant plural, therefore, the constraint seen in (196) does not have to come from the semantic type of the plurality.

In Indonesian, another CL language, both mass nouns and non-mass nouns can be reduplicated (Dalrymple & Mofu 2012: 236). Reduplicate mass nouns, as in (198a) and (198b), encode multiple units of massive objects (similar to the examples in (173)), and reduplicate non-mass nouns, as in (199a), encode plurality. Like in Hungarian (see (197)) and Bangla (Dayal 2011), in Indonesian, plurality in the form of reduplication does not go easily with numerals. In (199b) (Sato 2009: 10; also see Dalrymple & Mofu 2012: 234), the numeral may not occur with the reduplicate form.

- | | | | |
|----------|---|----|--|
| (198)a. | Mereka telah kemasukan air laut terlalu banyak dan <u>air-air</u> itu sudah
they have ingested water sea excessive many and water-RED that already
berhasil dikeluarkan. [Indonesian]
successfully Pass.exit.Kan
'They have ingested too much sea water, and those [amounts of] water have
successfully been taken away.' | | |
| b. | <u>Minyak-minyak</u> itu muncrat dari manhole kapal dan membeku setelah
oil-RED that stream from manhole ship and solidify then
membentuk seperti sabu dan mengotori pantai sekitar.
form like bubble and make.dirty beach around
'The [streams of] oil streamed from the manhole of the ship and solidified, and
then formed bubbles and polluted the beach.' | | |
| (199) a. | siswa-siswa
student-RED
'students' | b. | tiga siswa-(*siswa)
three student-RED
'three students' |

The following German examples are from Krifka (2007: 26; also see Vos 1999: 52). In (200a), *Pfunde* 'pound.PL' is in a plural form, in the absence of a numeral. In (200b), however, the numeral *drei* 'three' occurs, and then only the singular form *Pfund* rather than the plural form may show up. We thus see another case of incompatibility between numerals and plural markers.

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (200)a. | Peter hat viele Pfunde verloren.
Peter has many pound.PL lost
'Peter lost many pounds.' | b. | drei {Pfund/*Pfunde} Papier
three pound/pound.PL paper
'three pounds of paper' |
|---------|---|----|--|

If reduplicate unit words are plural markers, their incompatibility with numerals, as seen in (196), makes Mandarin Chinese pattern with languages such as Hungarian, Bangla, and Indonesian.

The observation that reduplicate unit words are not compatible with numerals indicates that RUWNs have no syntactic position for a numeral. This is confirmed by the fact that such nominals also reject modifiers that must be licensed by numerals, such as *yue* 'roughly (for a numeral)', *zonggong* 'in total', and *zuzu* 'as many as':

- (201)a. *He-li piao-zhe yue (yi) duo-duo lianhua.
 river-in float-PRG roughly one CL-RED lotus
 b. *He-li piao-zhe zonggong (yi) duo-duo lianhua.
 river-in float-PRG in.total one CL-RED lotus

Yang (2005) claims that a reduplicate unit word may not occur with a numeral bigger than one because both have plural features, and each nominal may not have two plural features. Hsieh (2008: 59) correctly points out that Yang's claim cannot explain the acceptability of examples like *three books* and the unacceptability of examples like **three book* in English. In our opinion, what is wrong with Yang's claim is that the property of a numeral expression is confused with plurality, which has no semantic dependency on numerals (3.1.1).

Hsieh (2008: 67) notes that "the reduplication indicates an indeterminate amount". This indeterminate amount is compatible with the property of plurality. Plurality cares about its contrast with singularity, and it does not care about the exact amount.

In Chapter 2, we define the feature of Numerability as the compatibility between an element and a numeral. We now see that plural markers in Mandarin Chinese and some other languages reject numerals. This means that the plural markers have [-Numerable].

Plural markers in English may occur with numerals and thus have [+Numerable]. One may even find a very different pattern of the interaction between numerals and plural markers in English. Examples like those in (202) are mentioned in Saka (1991: 279; also see Krifka 1998: Ch. 7, fn. 1; Borer 2009: Sec. 1.1):

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| (202)a. 1.0 pianos | b. *1.0 piano |
| c. *one pianos | d. one piano |
| e. 0.5 pianos | f. zero pianos |

Saka (1991: 278) states that "[C]ontrary to conventional wisdom, the meaning of plurality is not 'more than one'. Rather, in English it means 'other than one'." But do the elements other than one form a semantic natural class? It seems that a plural marker must occur if a numeral other than *one* is present. But the adnominal *one*, according to Kayne (2009; cf. Barbiers 2007), is not necessarily a numeral. If the adnominal *one* is not a numeral, it is possible that an English numeral must occur with a plural marker in a numeral expression.

In summary, the reduplicate form of a unit word is identified as a plural marker in Mandarin Chinese and it has the following formal properties:

- (203)a. It denotes unit plurality;
 b. It is attested in all types of unit words;
 c. It is underspecified with definiteness and specificity;
 d. It is not compatible with a numeral, and thus has [-Numerable].

Other properties include the following:

- (204)a. If *dou* 'all' occurs, a distributive meaning emerges (Song 1980);
 b. The semantic type of the plurality is abundant plurality;
 c. It never follows the quantificational D-element *mei* 'every', *renhe* 'any', and *na* 'which'.

3.3. Unit singularity

We have just shown that Mandarin Chinese has plural markers, they are special morphological forms of CLs, and the number markers are not compatible with any numerals. Recall that bare nouns in the language express general number, which is underspecified with either singular or plural. We thus expect that Chinese may encode singularity by forms that are different from both bare nouns and plural markers. Also, both singular and plural markers should exhibit parallel basic syntagmatic properties, such as incompatible with numerals. In this section, we introduce such singular nominals of the language.

3.3.1 SUWNs as unit singularity-denoting nominals

Indeed, a CL that neither shows up in a reduplicate form nor occurs with a numeral consistently encodes singularity, a fact that has been noted by Li & Liu (1978: 4-5), among others.

Compare the examples in (205) and (206). The numeral *san* ‘three’ starts a nominal in (205a), follows the proximal demonstrative *zhe* in (205b), follows the universal quantifier *mei* ‘each’ in (205c), and follows the interrogative determiner *na* ‘which’ in (205d). In each of the examples in (206), the absence of the numeral to the left of the unit word correlates with the consistent singular reading.

- | | | | |
|---------|--|----|--|
| (205)a. | Yani mai-le san ben shu.
Yani buy-PRF three CL book
‘Yani bought three books.’ | b. | zhe san ben shu
this three CL book
‘these three books’ |
| c. | mei san ben shu
every three CL book
‘every three books’ | d. | Na san ben shu?
which three CL book
‘Which three books?’ |
| (206)a. | Yani mai-le ben shu.
Yani buy-PRF CL book
‘Yani bought a book.’ | b. | zhe ben shu
this CL book
‘this book’ |
| c. | mei ben shu
every CL book
‘every book’ | d. | na ben shu
which CL book
‘which book’ |

I will call a nominal that contains a string of a unit word in its simple form and an NP, but not a numeral, like *ben shu* ‘CL book’ in (206a) and those in (206b-d), Simple Unit Word Nominals (SUWNs).³³

In Mandarin Chinese, no noun may be next to a numeral directly (2.3.1). It is a unit word that links a numeral and a noun. The unit word functions as a counting unit in counting (Chapter 2). In SUWNs, no numeral occurs, but they encode exactly one unit. In (206), for instance, the CL *ben* occurs, without any numeral, but the meaning of a single book is expressed. I thus claim that the CL of the SUWN is a singular marker.

Bisang (1999, 2012b: 19) has reported various extended uses of CLs in CL languages. In Chapter 2, we have argued that when a CL occurs with a numeral, it denotes a counting unit. We now see an extended use of CLs in Mandarin Chinese: as a number marker, in the absence of a numeral. Plurality is expressed by the reduplication of CLs and singularity is expressed by the simple form of CLs, in the same syntactic context: i.e., in the absence of a numeral.

It needs to be emphasized that we do not claim that CLs in Mandarin Chinese are singular markers in general. CLs in different syntactic contexts have different syntactic

³³ In S. Wang (1989: 111), when the CL *ge* starts a SUWN, it is treated as an indefinite determiner.

functions. Only in the absence of a numeral, a simple CL that is followed by a noun functions as a singular marker.

3.3.2 The productivity

I further observe that all types of unit words may express singularity, in a SUWN, as shown in (207).

- | | | |
|---------|--|---------------------|
| (207)a. | Wo xiang mai ben shu.
I want buy CL book
'I want to buy a book.' | [Individual CL] |
| b. | Wo gang chi-le kuai ji-rou.
I just eat-PRF chunk chicken-meat
'I just ate a slice of chicken-meat.' | [Individuating CL] |
| c. | Wo xiang mai ping jiu.
I want buy bottle wine
'I want to buy a bottle of wine.' | [Container measure] |
| d. | Wo gang mai-le jin yangrou.
I just buy-PRF catty mutton
'I just bought a catty of mutton.' | [Standard measure] |
| e. | Wo gang chi-le pian xigua.
I just eat-PRF slice water-melon
'I just ate a slice of water-melon.' | [Partitive CL] |
| f. | Wo gang yujian-le qun qiangdao.
I just meet-PRF group robber
'I just met a group of robbers.' | [Collective CL] |
| g. | Tamen zhaodao-le zhong hen tebie de zhiwu.
they find-PRF kind very special DE plant
'They found a kind of very special plant.' | [Kind CL] |

The SUWNS in (207) start with the unit word. A SUWN can also start with a demonstrative, as in (206b), or the universal quantifier *mei* 'every', as in (206c) (D. Yang 1996; Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 530; R. Yang 2001: 66, among others), or the question word *na* 'which', as in (206d). SUWNs that start with the unit word are indefinite, and thus they occur in syntactic positions for indefinite nominals, e.g., the object of a verb, as seen in (206a) and (207). SUWNs that do not start with the unit word, as those in (206b) through (206d) may occur in any argument position. Thus, there is no intrinsic restriction on the syntactic function of the singularity expressed by a SUWN.

The experimental studies of Huang (2009) and Huang & Lee (2009) show that children between three and a half and five years of age are already sensitive to the quantificational difference between bare nouns and unit word-initial SUWNs, and they also understand the singular reading of such SUWNs.

The singular interpretation of SUWNs is also observed in other CL languages or dialects. As in Mandarin Chinese, in the absence of a numeral, when a noun occurs with a unit word, unit singularity is expressed in the Suzhou Wu dialect of Chinese (Shi & Liu 1985), Thai (Piriyawiboon 2010: 90), and Bangala (Simpson et al. 2011: 188). In the Bangala example in (208), for instance, in the absence of a numeral, the string *alo-ta* 'light-CL' denotes singularity. Similarly, in another CL language, Hmong, the construction noun-CL-DEM, which contains no numeral, also encodes singularity (Bisang 2012b: 21).

- (208) Tumi ki alo-ta jele dite parbe please? [Bangla]
 you Q light-CL turn.on give can please
 ‘Can you turn on the light, please?’

The form of the unit word in a SUWN is usually monosyllabic, as in (209a,b), but disyllabic ones are also possible, as in (209c) (Shi & Liu 1985: 161).

- (209)a. Siyu mai-le na xiao bao chaye.
 Siyu buy-PRF that small backage tea
 ‘Siyu bought that small package of tea.’
 b. Siyu jiancha-le mei gongjin chaye.
 Siyu check-PRF every kilo tea
 ‘Siyu checked every kilo of tea.’
 c. kuədʁ ts‘iəʔ [Suzhou Wu Chinese]
 can paint
 ‘a can of paint’

SUWNs may also follow a proper name, as in (210a) (Liu 2006: 79), a personal pronoun, as in (210b) (Shi & Liu 1985: 163), or a modifier, as in (210c) (Shi & Liu 1985: 163).

- (210)a. Siuming bun2 syu1 m4gin3 zo2 [Cantonese]
 Siuming CL book not see PRF
 ‘That book of Siuming’s has disappeared.’
 b. ŋəu (kəʔ) tsəʔ mətsi [Suzhou Wu Chinese]
 1SG MOD CL hat
 ‘my hat’
 c. aɦuā zɿ zi kākā tsɿ-kɛ tsəʔ siə kɿ. [Suzhou Wu Chinese]
 Ahuang then be just.now walk-away CL small dog
 ‘Ahuang is the small dog that walked away just now.’

3.3.3 The problems of the numeral-deletion analysis

It has been generally assumed that a SUWN is derived by the deletion of the numeral *yi* ‘one’ (e.g., Lü 1944; S. Wang 1989: 109), and therefore, clauses containing SUWNs are treated as *yi*-gapping constructions. In this section, I falsify this *yi*-deletion analysis of SUWNs.

First, the assumed deletion has no antecedent, and thus violates the basic identity condition of ellipsis. For instance, the numeral *qi* ‘seven’, which is very similar to *yi* phonologically, is available in the first conjunct in (211a), and one should expect the deletion of *qi* in the second conjunct to be possible, contrary to the fact. On the other hand, SUWNs may be uttered out of blue, without a context-support, to encode singularity consistently. In (211b), *yi* does not occur anywhere, but the SUWN *ben zazhi* ‘CL magazine’ denotes singularity exclusively. If deletion needs an antecedent, to satisfy the recovery condition (e.g., Chomsky 1965: 144), (211b) cannot be the result of deletion.

- (211)a. *Yani mai-le qi ben xiaoshuo, wo mai-le ɕi ben zazhi.
 Yani buy-PRF seven CL novel I buy-PRF seven CL magazine
 Intended: ‘Yani bought seven novels and I bought seven magazines.’
 b. Yani mai-le qi ben xiaoshuo, wo mai-le ben zazhi.
 Yani buy-PRF seven CL novel I buy-PRF CL magazine
 ‘Yani bought seven novels and I bought one magazine.’

Second, the assumed deletion cannot be a lexical-specific operation. If one assumes that the numeral *yi* is so special that its deletion does not need an antecedent (as mentioned to me in a conference and also by xxxx), we still cannot explain why it may not be deleted in other contexts. One wonders why the deletion fails in (212b), (212c), (213b) and (214b).

- (212)a. Yani chi-le pian yao.
Yani eat-PRF CL pill
'Yani took a pill.'
- b. Yani chi-le san-fenzhi- $\{yi/*_ \}$ pian yao.
Yani eat-PRF three-part-one CL pill
'Yani took one third of a medicine pill.'
- c. Yani ba chengji tigao-le $\{yi/*_ \}$ bei.
Yani BA score increase-PRF one time
'Yani doubled the scores.'
- (213)a. Yani he-le bei shui
Yani drink-PRF cup water
'Yani drank a cup of water.'
- b. Yani he-le di $\{yi/*_ \}$ bei shui.
Yani drink-PRF ORD one cup water
'Yani drank the first cup of water.'
- (214) a. Qing jin yi hao fangjian!
please enter one number room
'Please enter Room No. 1!'
- b. *Qing jin $_hao$ fangjian!
please enter number room

It is clear that the alleged deletion fails exactly in the contexts of numerals. According to Wiese (2003), numerals have three uses: cardinal, as in (212b) and (212c), ordinal, as in (213b), and proper-name-like nominal, as in (214a). Obviously, when *yi* occurs as a real numeral in all of these uses, it may not be deleted. I conclude that numerals in Mandarin Chinese may not be deleted, and SUWNs have not undergone any numeral-deletion operation.

As pointed out by xxxx, numeral deletion, as illustrated in (211a), is not possible cross-linguistically. Kayne (2012a: 78) also mentions that numerals may not be deleted in English. (215b) is acceptable, but not at all with the interpretation of (215a). Law (2012: 112-115) also shows that numerals may not be deleted in Mandarin Chinese and Naxi.

- (215)a. Mary has written four papers, whereas John has only written four squibs.
- b. (*)Mary has written four papers, whereas John has only written squibs.

Third, SUWN constructions may not contain numeral-oriented adverbs such as *zuzu* 'as many as', which must be licensed by a numeral. (216b) would be acceptable if *zuzu* were syntactically licensed by an implicit *yi*, contrary to the fact.

- (216) a. Yani zuzu chi-le yi xiang juzi.
Yani as.many.as eat-PRF one box orange
'Yani ate as much as one box of oranges.'
- b. *Yani zuzu chi-le xiang juzi.
Yani as.many.as eat-PRF box orange

In Suzhou Wu Chinese, SUWNs may occur in certain positions where no numeral is allowed. One such position is to the right of a reduplicate verb, which denotes a tentative aspect, as in (217a). Since no numeral may follow such a verb, Shi & Liu (1985: 163) correctly point out that there is no numeral deletion for the SUWN. Another position where no numeral is allowed but a SUWN may occur is to follow a pronoun or a proper name, as seen in (217b). In this case, the SUWN functions as an apposition to the preceding nominal (Shi & Liu 1985: 164).

- (217) a. nɛ k'ø-k'ø tsoŋ zāmiɪ k'ø! [Suzhou Wu Chinese]
 2SG look-RED CL scene look
 'Have a look at the scene!'
 b. nɛ tsɑʔ siæ ts'ioʔlæ
 2SG CL small devil
 'You, small devil'

We claim that like RUWNs, SUWNs do not have a syntactic position for a numeral. Therefore, there is no numeral to be deleted. If SUWNs do not have a syntactic position for a numeral, not only there is no numeral deletion, but also there is no null numeral in their structures (contra Tang 2010: 76).

In a numeral expression, a CL is next to a numeral. With respect to the surface adjacency between a demonstrative and a CL, as seen in (218a) and (218b), Greenberg (1990a [1972]: 168) states that "[S]yntactically also there is variability in that the classifiers need not be confined to numerical constructions. In Mandarin and other languages the classifier is required with demonstratives even in non-numeral phrases." The claim is adopted by many (e.g., T'sou 1976: 1215; Lyons 1977: 461; Croft 1994: 150; Rijkhoff 2002: 165; Gil 2008: 7; Lehmann 2008: 3; Huang et al. 2009: 14; Bisang 1999: 145; 2011: 7).

- (218) a. zhe ben shu (= (206b)) b. na ben shu
 DEM CL book DEM CL book
 'this book' 'that book'

However, examples like (218a) and (218b), which are used to support Greenberg's statement, show a semantic constraint: their interpretations must be singular. This is pointed out by Greenberg (1990a [1972]: 188) himself: "in Mandarin the classifier *ben* required with *shu* 'book' with any number (e.g., *i ben shu* 'one book', *san ben shu* 'three books') occurs with the demonstrative also (*che ben shu* 'this book') but only in the singular." [sic.] In our analysis, such examples are SUWNs, and they are simply singular unit-denoting nominals, without a syntactic position for a numeral.³⁴ Thus, indeed, a CL does not have to follow a numeral. When it does, it functions as a counting unit. But when it does not, it is a singular marker instead.

3.3.4 The issue of definiteness and specificity of SUWNs

In Mandarin Chinese, unit word-initial SUWNs are indefinite, and thus although they may occur in the object position of a transitive verb, as in (218a) and (207), or in the direct object of a ditransitive verb, as in (219a), they do not occur in the position of a topic or primary subject, as seen in (219b).

³⁴ A demonstrative may also be combined with a reduced *yi* 'one', deriving *zhei* (*zhe* + *yi* 'this + one') and *nei* (*na* + *yi* 'that + one') (e.g., Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 530 fn. 17). However, because of reanalysis, *zhei* and *nei* can also function as a pure demonstrative, followed by a numeral other than *yi* 'one'. So (i) is acceptable (Bisang 1999: 145). The opaque function of *yi* in *zhei* in (i) is similar to the opaque function of *et* 'and' in the phrase *and etcetera*, where two conjunctions (*and*, *et*) occur in a row, and *cetera* means 'the rest'.

(i) zhei san feng xin
 this three CL letter
 'these three letters'

- (219) a. Yani gei-le wo ba dao.
 Yani give-PRF I CL knife
 ‘Yani gave me a knife.’
 b. *Ba dao hen gui.
 CL knife very expensive

This is in contrast to languages such as Suzhou Wu Chinese (Shi & Liu 1985), Cantonese, Vietnamese (Daley 1998), and Yongren Lolo (Gerner 2003: 993-4), where a CL-initial SUWN can be either definite or indefinite (see Simpson et al. 2011: 169, and the references thereof), although it also denotes a singular unit.³⁵

If a SUWN starts with a demonstrative, as in (218), it is definite. Since unit words in such a use occur in both definite and indefinite nominals, they themselves are not specified with any definiteness feature.

An indefinite SUWN can also be either specific or non-specific. In (207a) and (207c), the SUWNs are clearly nonspecific. Data like (220) show that the claim that CL-initial nominals must be non-specific in Mandarin Chinese (Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 526; Hsieh 2008: 126-127) is not accurate. First, the causee position following the causer marker *ba* is a typical position for a definite or specific indefinite nominal. Since a SUWN may occur in this position, as seen in (220a), it can be specific (See Chen 2003: 1178 for more such examples). Second, the subject of a secondary predicate in an existential coda construction (Huang 1987) must be specific indefinite. Since a SUWN may also occur in this position, as seen in (220b), it can be specific. Third, an indefinite nominal occurring between *you* ‘have’ and a modal is always interpreted as specific (Tsai 2010: 210). Since a SUWN may also occur in this position, as seen in (220c), it can be specific. Thus the singular marker is not specified with any specificity feature.

- (220) a. Shouwei ba ge cong nanfang lai de xiaotou fang-pao-le.
 guard BA CL from south come DE thief release-away-PRF
 ‘The guard got released a thief who had come from the south.’
 b. Shufen mai-le zhang zhuozi san tiao tui.
 Shufen buy-PRF CL table three CL leg
 ‘Shufen bought a table which has three legs.’
 c. Zhe ci you ge ren {keneng/yiding} hui lai.
 this time have CL person possibly/surely will come
 ‘This time, a certain person will {possibly/surely} come.’

Cross-linguistically, the string CL-NP is not restricted with respect to definiteness and specificity. Li & Bisang (2012: 340) report that in the object position, the string is indefinite in both Mandarin and Wu, but is either definite or indefinite in Cantonese. In the subject position, the string is indefinite in Yi (Jiang & Hu 2010), but definite in both Wu and Cantonese. Liu’s (2006: 74) following table also shows that in three CL languages: Yi, Mandarin and Chinese, there is no general constraint on the definiteness and specificity of SUWNs (see his work for examples in Yi and Cantonese).

³⁵ In Suzhou Wu Chinese, when a SUWN is definite, it exhibits the same tone sandhi as it is preceded by the demonstrative *gəʔ* ‘this’, and thus Shi & Liu (1985: 165) claim that the definite use is the result of the phonological deletion of the demonstrative in the context.

(221) (Liu 2006 : 74)

{CL, NP}	In subject position			In object position		
	Definite	Indefinite		Definite	Indefinite	
		Specific	Non-specific		Specific	Non-specific
Yi	x	✓	x	x	✓	✓
Mandarin	x	x	x	x	✓	✓
Cantonese	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓

In summary, the following four major properties are shared by the plural feature of RUWNs and the singular feature of the simple unit words in SUWNs:

- (222)a. The number feature denotes the number of the unit, rather than that of the individual denoted by the associate noun;
 b. It is attested in all types of unit words;
 c. It is underspecified with definiteness and specificity;
 d. It is not compatible with a numeral.

3.4. Morphological and semantic markedness

I have identified the unit word that is not preceded by a numeral as a number marker in Mandarin Chinese. The newly identified number markers share properties with well-recognized number markers in languages such as English. First, they have stable morphological forms. Plural markers are reduplicate unit words, and singular markers are non-reduplicated unit words in SUWNs. Second, they are productive and systematic. They are found with all types of unit words. Third, they are underspecified with either definiteness or specificity properties. Fourth, they show consistent syntagmatic properties. In English, number markers are compatible with numerals and trigger agreement on verbal elements, whereas in Mandarin Chinese, number markers block the occurrence of numerals.

According to Greenberg Universal 35, in many languages, the singular feature is not associated with any overt phonological content but the plural is. In both English and Mandarin Chinese, plural forms are morphologically marked. In English, the suffix –s is used for regular plural forms, in contrast to the unmarked forms for singularity. In Mandarin Chinese, the reduplicate forms of unit words for plurality is in contrast to the simple forms of unit words for singularity. In some languages, both singular and plural number are overtly expressed, e.g., in Babungo, Bukiyip, Kisi, Nasimo, and Ngiti (cited in Rijkhoff 2002: 150), and Ojibwe (Mathieu 2012). In the following Kisi examples (Childs 1995: 14), the number marking is related to class membership:

- (223)a. nì-lén b. nì-lán [Kisi]
 ear-CL.SG ear.CL.PL
 ‘ear’ ‘ears’

However, in my understanding, one contrast of the plurality-marking between English and Mandarin Chinese is the pattern of the semantic markedness of the plural feature (Bale et al. 2011a). As shown in Bale et al. (2011a), English plural forms are semantically unmarked,

although they are morphologically marked. Therefore, a nominal with a plural marker may denote a singular element, element smaller than one, and even zero, as shown in (202), some of them are repeated here in (224) (in fact, English plurals may even occur with mass nouns e.g., *clothes*; see McCawley 1979; Ojeda 2005).

- (224) a. 1.0 eggs b. 0.5 eggs c. zero eggs

The semantic unmarkedness of plurals in English is also shown in the so-called “inclusive plural”. In (225), the plural noun *children* in A is not interpreted as plural, and therefore, the answer in B is appropriate, but the answer in C is not (Krifka 1989, 2008: Sec. 5.1); see Bale et al. 2011a: 203, 209 for a further discussion of cross-linguistic variations and some pragmatic constraints on the singular interpretation of such a plural nominal in English).

- (225) A. Do you have children? B. Yes, one. C. *No, (just) one.
 (226) A. Do you have two or more children? B. *Yes, one. C. No, (just) one.

In (225), no numeral occurs in A’s question. Therefore, counting is not an issue. A only asks for the existence of children. B’s affirmative answer, followed by the quantity information “one” is appropriate. But C’s negative answer followed by the quantity “one” is self-contradictory. In (226), a numeral occurs in A’s question, and thus counting is an issue here. Therefore, B’s affirmative answer followed by the information that is not compatible with the numeral given by A is not acceptable; but C’s negative answer followed by the numeral that is not compatible with the numeral given by A is an appropriate one.

In Mandarin Chinese, however, plural forms are semantically marked. Since general number is available in the system, a plural marker is used only when the singular-plural contrast matters in the context. They thus never occur in nominals that do not denote plurality. In contrast, in the absence of a plural marker, i.e., in the absence of a reduplicate unit word, a bare nominal denotes general number and thus may express either singularity or plurality.

- (227) Wo mai-le shu.
 I buy-PRF book
 ‘I bought {a book/books}.’

Also, In Mandarin Chinese, question A in (228), for example, may not be answered by the positive answer in B. Instead, if there is only one light, only C is the appropriate answer, with a stress on the numeral *yi* ‘one’. In this aspect, Mandarin plural forms are like plural forms in Western Armenian (Bale & Khanjian 2008: 73; also Bale et al. 2011a: 209).

- (228) A. Qiang-shang shi-bu-shi gua-zhe zhan-zhan ming deng?
 wall-on be-not-be hang-PRG CL-CL bright light
 ‘Are there bright lights hung on the wall?’
 B. *Dui, qiang-shang gua-zhe yi zhan ming deng.
 right, wall-on hang-PRG one CL bright light
 C. Bu dui, qiang-shang gua-zhe YI zhan ming deng.
 not right, wall-on hang-PRG one CL bright light
 ‘No, there is ONE bright light hung on the wall.’

The unmarkedness of the singular form is also seen in the fact that a form usually

interpreted as a singular gets a plural reading in an irrealis context, as shown by (229b):³⁶

- (229)a. Wo mai-le ben shu. b. Wo xiang mai ben shu.
 I buy-PRF CL book I want buy CL book
 ‘I bought a book.’ ‘I want to buy {a book/books}.’

This contrast in the markedness pattern is consistent, and is observed also in the systems of third person pronouns. The number marking in pronouns is obligatory in both English and Chinese. However, in colloquial English, the third person plural pronoun can take a singular antecedent, so long as it does not refer to an identified referent (this is a similar non-specific condition for number flexibility in (229b)):

- (230)a. Someone left their jockstrap in the locker room. (Rullmann 2003)
 b. Someone came this morning, but I didn’t see them.
 c. There’s someone at the door. Go see what they want.
 (231)a. *Bill left their jockstrap in the locker room.
 b. *The man came this morning, but I didn’t see them.

In Chinese, however, the third person singular pronoun *ta* ‘he/she/it’ can take a plural antecedent, regardless of whether its referent is identified. In (232a,b,c), the antecedent of *ta* is a topic or subject, which is identified; whereas in (232d), the antecedent of *ta* is the nonspecific nominal *ji feng xin* ‘several letters’. The context for the special *ta* can be realis, as in (232a,b), as well as irrealis, as in (232c) (contra Xu 1999).

- (232)a. Zhexie shu, wo yiqian meitian wanshang dou kan ta.
 these book I before every evening all read 3SG
 ‘These books, I read them every evening in the past.’
 b. Zhexie dingpao dou huai-le, ba ta reng-le ba. (Zhu 1982: 82)
 those bulb all bad-PRF BA 3SG dump-ASP PRT
 ‘Those bulbs are all defective, let us dump them.’
 c. Zhexie jiahuo, zhineng dui ta bukeqi. (Xu 1999: 7)
 these chap cannot.but to 3SG impolite
 ‘As for these chaps, (we) cannot but be impolite to them.’
 d. Wo xiang xie ji feng xin, ranhou ba ta ji-chuqu. (Yuying Julia Su, p.c.)
 I want write several CL letter then BA 3SG mail-out
 ‘I want to write several letters, and mail them.’

This semantic markedness contrast between English and Chinese does not affect the syntactic status of plural markers in either language. Thus, as in English, plural markers in Mandarin Chinese also head a functional projection, NumP.

3.5. PL marking in CL languages

3.5.1 Reviewing Sanches-Greenberg’s Generalization

The empirical issue investigated in this chapter leads to the theoretical issue of the relationship between CLs and plural markers. The so-called Sanches-Greenberg Generalization states that “[N]umeral classifier languages generally do not have compulsory expression of nominal plurality, but at most facultative expression.” (Greenberg 1974: 25;

³⁶ In Rullmann & You’s (2006: 184) judgment, (229a) also allows a plural reading. Our judgment is different from theirs.

also see Sanches 1973) Indeed, in CL languages such as Japanese, Thai, and Korean, reported plural markers are not systematic (Mizuguchi 2004: 18, 145, among others). The Sanches-Greenberg Generalization has been extended into a complementary distribution relation between CLs and plural markers in T'sou (1976), Doetjes (1996, 1997), and Chierchia (1998). It has been assumed that a language has either CLs or plural markers, and if a language has both systems, a CL does not occur with a plural marker in the same construction (e.g., Borer 2005: 95).

However, it has been observed that there are numeral CL languages in which number marking is obligatory, e.g., Ejagham (Wetters 1981) and Kana (Ikoro 1994, 1996) (see Bisang 2012a: Sec.1). In Northern Kam, CLs must have number inflection, regardless of whether a numeral occurs, as in (233), or no numeral occurs, as in (234) and (235) (Gerner 2006: 243-244, 249), although general number is expressed by bare nouns in the language (Bisang 2012a: Sec. 3).

- | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|---------------|
| (233)a. | i ⁴⁵ jiu ²² na ⁴⁵
one CL:SG river
'one river' | b. | ham ¹¹ t ₁ iu ²² na ⁴⁵
three CL:PL river
'three rivers' | [Norther Kam] |
| (234)a. | wəi ³¹ tu ³³
CL:SG garment
'a garment' | b. | məi ³¹ tu ³³
CL:PL garment
'garments' | |
| (235)a. | va ⁵⁵ hoŋ ²²
CL:SG loom
'a loom' | b. | ʔa ⁵⁵ hoŋ ²²
CL:PL loom
'looms' | |

Allan (1977: 294) and Aikenvald (2003: 100-101) also report the cases where CL languages have number markings. See Bisang (2012a) for further discussion of the issue.

Although, as pointed out in Doetjes (2012: 2), the Sanches-Greenberg generalization does not go the other way, i.e., it does not make any claim about non-CL languages, one still finds the co-occurrence of CLs and plural marking in non-CL languages. Krifka (2008: 7) presents the following German examples to show this. Persian (Ghomeshi 2003: 55-56; Gebhardt 2009: 191-192) and Hungarian (Csirmaz & Dékány 2010: 13) also allow a plural marker and a CL to occur in the same nominal, regardless of whether they are CL languages. The existence of such data also challenge the alleged complementary distribution relation between CLs and plural markers.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|----|---|----------|
| (236)a. | zwanzig Stück Semmel-n
twenty CL bread.roll-PL
'twenty bread-rolls' | b. | fünf Mann Mensch-en
five CL person-PL
'five people'
(title of a play by Jandl & Mayröcker) | [German] |
|---------|---|----|---|----------|

There are also languages that have neither CLs nor plural markers, such as Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011), Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006), and Dëne (Wilhelm *ibid.*). The existence of such languages is beyond the empirical coverage of the alleged complementary distribution relation between CLs and plural markers.

For languages that have general number, as we mentioned in 3.1.2, the use of a plural marker cannot be compulsory. Nevertheless, it is still possible for the language to have a systematic formal contrast between singularity and plurality and morpho-syntactic ways to represent the contrast. We have used Chinese to show this possibility.

The assumed complementary distribution has been rationalized by the hypotheses that (A) mass nouns are inherently plural; (B) all nouns of CL languages are mass nouns, and

therefore, (C) they have no contrast between singularity and plurality, and accordingly, there is no plural marker in such languages (e.g., Chierchia 1998). In Chapter 2, I have argued against hypothesis B, and in this chapter, I have falsified hypothesis C. As for hypothesis A (also see McCawley 1998 [1988]: 568), even though it does not affect our falsification of the assumed complementation distribution relation between plural markers and CLs, it has been shown to be problematic by Schaden (2010), and the references therein. Also see Moltmann (1997) for a claim that it is the semantic selectional requirements such as the Accessibility Requirements that are the conditions on the part structure of an argument in a situation, rather than syntactic restrictions to plural or mass NPs, as opposed to singular count NPs.

The facts discussed in this chapter and the previous chapter shed light on the relations between CLs and plural markers. In a numeral expression, a CL must occur with the numeral, and the CL functions as a counting unit semantically, and as a bearer of the feature Numerability syntactically. My proposal that number and Numerability are different notions can capture the co-occurrence of plural markers and CLs.

In Mandarin Chinese, when a CL occurs in the absence of a numeral, it is a number marker: a simple CL encodes singularity, and CL in reduplicate form encodes plurality. Thus, the notion of number can be encoded by special syntagmatic relation, and special morphological form, of CLs themselves in CL languages.

We have shown that CL languages also have a productive way to encode the notion of plurality. Cognitively speaking, the fact that CL languages also have productive ways to encode the notion of nominal plurality indicates that the contrast between singularity and plurality is not restricted to languages such as English. Acquisition studies also show that Mandarin Chinese and Japanese children “were not delayed relative to English-learning children for 1 versus 4 comparisons” (Li et al. 2009b: 1651), suggesting that children of the CL languages are conceptually sensitive to the singular-plural contrast.

Instead of the Sanches-Greenberg Generalization, which tries to link the lack of obligatory number markers with the availability of CLs, Bošković (2012: 5) tries to link the lack of obligatory number markers with the lack of articles in the relevant languages. The new link implies that languages that have no articles may have general number. Indeed, Mandarin Chinese has no articles, indicating a support to Bošković’s new generalization.

If Mandarin Chinese may express both plurality and singularity, where is the number feature realized? In the generative framework, I assume that the feature is represented by the head of the functional projection NumP, and the head is realized by a reduplicate unit word for [+PL] and by a simple unit word for [-PL]. In addition, unit words in such forms may also either directly move to D or have a certain dependency with D, exhibiting their interactions with the feature of definiteness or specificity.

3.5.2 PL marking strategies in CL languages

Number is expressed by morphological forms of nominal-internal elements (in addition to agreement markers on nominal-external elements in some languages). The morphological strategies can be affixation, reduplication, etc. Different languages may mark number information on different types of elements. In English and Lezgain, for instance, nouns mark number by suffixation (Corbett 2000: 179); in Mokilese (Corbett 2000: 212) and St’át’imcets (Davis & Mathewson 1999: 61), nouns mark number through demonstrative or determinative affixes; and in spoken French (Corbett 2000: 179; Bouchard 2002) and Haitian Creole (Deprez 2006), number contrast is basically marked on articles (e.g., *le voiture* ‘the car’, *les voiture(s)* ‘the cars’ in French).

In CL languages, we have shown that in Mandarin Chinese, plurality is expressed by reduplication of unit words. In this language, when CLs are reduplicated to encode plurality, they keep their possible s-selection restrictions on nouns. For instance, the individual CL *pi*

is for horses, but not for other animals. The restriction maintains when the CL is reduplicated as a plural marker:

- (237) a. yi pi-pi ma b. *yi pi-pi zhu
 one CL-RED horse one CL-RED pig
 ‘horses’

In other numeral CL languages reported in Gerner (2006) (see (233) - (235)), number is also encoded by special morphological forms of CLs. In some other Kam-Tai languages, plurality can be expressed by the reduplication of noun or CLs (Gerner 2006: 255). In Indonesian, plurality is expressed by reduplication of nouns (Dalrymple & Mofu 2012), as seen in (238):

- (238) a. siswa-siswa b. pulau-pulau [Indonesian]
 student-RED island-RED
 ‘students’ ‘islands’

In the same language, different nominal systems may also mark number information in different ways. In English, plural marking in pronouns is very different from that in nouns. In Mandarin Chinese, for personal pronouns and kinship terms, the plural marker is the suffix *-men*. But reduplicate unit words in RUWNs are words. The difference correlates with Corbett’s (2000: 75) claim that between the two ways of number marking, direct morphological operations and number words, the former is more likely for personal pronouns and kinship terms than for other types of nominals.

Since not many studies on number marking in CL languages have been seen in the literature, especially number marking through reduplication, we would like to make a brief comparison between Mandarin Chinese and another CL language, Indonesian, reported in Dalrymple & Mofu (2012). The major similarities of the two numeral CL languages are the following:

First, plurality may be expressed by reduplication, as seen in (238) above. Second, general number is available, i.e., bare nouns may encode either plural or singular entities (e.g., Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: (2): *telur* ‘egg, eggs’), and therefore, plural markings are optional. Third, the plural reading of reduplication does not have to be connected to either definiteness or distributivity (see 2.2 and 2.3 for Mandarin Chinese, and Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 232-234 for Indonesian). These shared properties distinguish the two languages from languages such as Haitian Creole. In Haitian Creole, indefinite nominals may remain unmarked for number, whereas definite ones must have number specification (Deprez 2006). Fourth, in both languages, the plural encoded by reduplicated forms is abundant plural (3.2.1 and Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 234). Fifth, plural markings in RUWNs reject numerals (3.2.5), and in Indonesian, “the use of reduplicated nouns with numerals (with or without classifiers) is possible but dispreferred (Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 243, 257).

The major differences include the following:

First, in the presence of a numeral, a unit word such as a CL is obligatory in Mandarin Chinese, but optional in Indonesian, as seen in (239a) (Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 230); in the latter language, a numeral may even precede a mass noun directly, as seen in (239b) and (239c) (Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 239). This is similar to Yudja, discussed in 2.3.1, although the latter language has no individual CL in the system. As in Yudja, in examples such as (239b) and (239c), “the mass noun does not have conventional portions”, (239b) refers to geographical areas of sea water and (239c) refers to pieces of wood (Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 238).

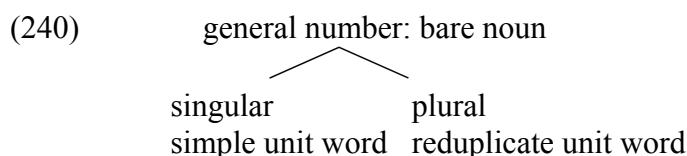
- (239) a. lima (orang) guru b. duo air laut c. sepuluh kayu [Indonesian]
 five CL teacher two water sea ten wood
 ‘five teachers’ ‘two (areas of) sea water’ ‘ten (pieces of) wood’

Second, plurality is expressed by reduplication of unit words in Mandarin Chinese, but by reduplication of nouns in Indonesian, as seen in (238) above. Accordingly, RUWNs express unit plurality rather than individual plurality.

Third, the reading of “inclusive plural” is not found in Mandarin Chinese (see (225)), but is found in Indonesian (Dalrymple & Mofu *ibid.*: 251). In this aspect, Indonesian plurals are again more like plurals in English.

3.6. Chapter summary

In this chapter, we have identified the number system in Mandarin Chinese, a CL language. The system can be summarized in (240):



The existence of general number, which is encoded by bare nouns, means that in this language, plural entities do not have to be expressed by plural markers. When the contrast between plurality and singularity is salient in the context, the former is expressed by reduplication of unit words and the latter is expressed by simple unit words, in the absence of any numeral. The basic properties of the number markers are summarized in (241):

- (241)a. The number feature denotes the number of unit;
 b. It is attested in all types of unit words;
 c. It is underspecified with definiteness and specificity;
 d. It is not compatible with a numeral, and thus has [-Numerable];
 e. Unlike in English, there is no negative correlation between morphological and semantic markedness of number marking.

The facts discussed in this chapter show that CL languages do have systematic ways to encode the contrast between singularity and plurality. They also show that CLs in Mandarin Chinese have [+Numerable] in numeral expressions, but have [-Numerable] when they function as number markers.

Chapter 4 The Syntactic Constituency of Numeral Expressions

4.1. Introduction

This chapter addresses one of the most fundamental issues in the study of the syntactic structures of numeral expressions: their constituency. As we defined in Chapter 1, such expressions contain three basic elements in Mandarin Chinese, i.e., a numeral, such as *san* ‘three’ in (242), a noun, such as *putao* ‘grape’ in (242), and a unit word between them, such as the CL *ke* in (242a), the standard measure *gongjin* ‘kilo’ in (242b), and the container measure *wan* ‘bowl’ in (242c).

- | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------|----|-------------------------|----|-------------------------|
| (242)a. | san ke putao | b. | san gongjin putao | c. | san wan putao |
| | three CL grape | | three kilo grape | | three bowl grape |
| | ‘three grapes’ | | ‘three kilos of grapes’ | | ‘three bowls of grapes’ |

One basic question is, among the three elements, whether there is any syntactic hierarchy. If the unit word surfaces between the other two elements, as in Mandarin Chinese, the question is whether the unit word C-Commands the noun.

Greenberg (1990b [1975]: 227) makes the following statement, without specifying the “many indications”:

“There are many indications that in the tripartite construction consisting of quantifier (Q) [= numeral], classifier (CL), and head noun (N), Q is in direct construction with CL and this complex construction, which will be called the classifier phrase, is in turn in construction with N.”

What is stated here is that if the order of a numeral expression is Numeral-CL-NP, it has a unified left-branching structure, in which the numeral and the unit word form a constituent first, excluding the noun, as in (243a). In this structure, the unit word never C-Commands the NP. Similar proposals have been made in Li & Thompson (1981: 105), Paris (1981: 105-117), Tang (1990a), Croft (1994: 151), Lin (1997: 419), R. Yang (2001), and Hsieh (2008). In contrast, Tang (1990b: 413, 2005), Cheng & Sybesma (1998, 1999), and Li (1999), among others, have proposed a unified right-branching structure, in which a unit word and the noun form a constituent first, excluding the numeral, as in (243b). In this structure, the unit word may C-Command the NP.

- | | | | |
|---------|--|----|--|
| (243)a. | | b. | |
|---------|--|----|--|

In contrast to both schools, X. P. Li (2011: 118) proposes that both left- and right-branching structures are possible, and that the former is mapped to a quantity or measure reading, and the latter is mapped to an individual or counting reading. For instance, *liang ping jiu* ‘two bottle wine’ has a pure quantity reading in (244a), but an individual reading in (244b). It is claimed that (244a) has a structure like (243a), and that (244b) has a structure like (243b).

- (244)a. tade wei neng zhuangxia liang ping jiu.
 his stomach can contain two bottle wine
 ‘His stomach can contain two bottles of wine.’
- b. Ta ling-le liang ping jiu, zuo-shou yi ping, you-shou yi ping.
 he lift-PRF two bottle wine left-hand one bottle right-hand one bottle
 ‘He carried two bottles of wine, one in the left hand and the other in the right hand.’

Although not many arguments have been proposed for any of the above three approaches, I will examine all of those that I have found.

In 2.4.1, I have introduced seven types of unit words: standard measure, container measure, individual CL, individuating CL, collective CL, partitive CL, and kind CL. I will propose that unit words exhibit two different patterns of constituency. On the one hand, numeral expressions of container measures, standard measures, partitive CLs, and collective CLs have a left-branching structure, as in (243a). On the other hand, numeral expressions of individual, individuating, and kind CLs have a right-branching structure, as in (243b).

The proposal is based on arguments from four aspects: the scope of a left-peripheral modifier; the effect of adjective association; the independent syntactic function of the combination of a numeral and a unit word; and the semantic selection relation between a unit word and a noun.

The constituency issue is the first step in analyzing the syntactic structures of numeral expressions. The categorial labels of the constituents identified in this chapter will be specified in the next chapter.

In addition to this introduction section and the final summary section (Section 4.6), the organization of the chapter is the following. Section 4.2 presents the four arguments for a non-unified analysis of the constituency of numeral expressions, and makes the proposal that there are two possible structures. Section 4.3 discusses three invalid arguments in the constituency study. Section 4.4 discusses semantic mappings of the syntactic structures. Finally, Section 4.5 discusses the occurrence of the functional word *de* following a unit word, with respect to the proposed constituency.

4.2. Four arguments for the non-unified analysis

In numeral expressions, unit words do not behave the same syntactically. In this section, I present certain differences, and link the differences to the constituency issue.

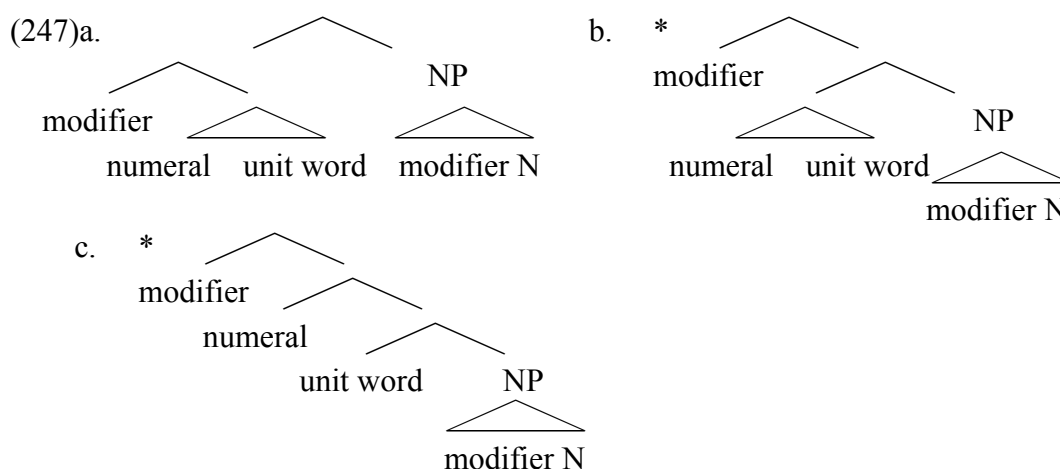
4.2.1 The scope of a left-peripheral modifier

Two incompatible modifiers may co-occur if they scope over separate constituents. In each of the examples in (245) and (246), two incompatible modifiers co-occur:

- (245)a. dada de san wan xiao yingtao
 big DE three bowl small cherry
 ‘three big bowls of small cherries’
- b. fangfangzhengzheng de yi bao sanjiao binggan
 square DE one package triangle cookie
 ‘a square package of triangle cookies’
- c. yuanyuan de yi guan fang-tang
 round DE one can square-sugar
 ‘a round can of sugar cubes’
- d. hen da de yi zhuo xiao keren
 very big DE one table small guest
 ‘a very big table with small guests sitting at it’

- (246)a. dada de yi dui xiao yingtao
big DE one pile small cherry
'a big pile of small cherries'
- b. hen chang de yi pai chao-duan de xiao qiche
very long DE one row super-short DE small car
'a very long row of super-short small cars'

The acceptability of this type of data indicates that the scope of the left-peripheral modifier excludes the NP, which has its own modifier. This fact shows that the two modification domains belong to two separate constituents, and that the first constituent is composed of a numeral and a unit word, as well as the modifier. Putting the categorial labels of the constituent nodes aside, among the three structures in (247), only (247a) can capture the fact that the left modifier does not scope over the NP. Thus, data like (245) and (246) should have a left-branching structure for the three basic elements of the constructions.



In (245), the unit words are all container measures, including the so-called temporary CL *zhuo* 'table' in (245d), which can be understood as a contextually-defined container measure. In (246), the unit words are collective CLs.³⁷ Other types of unit words may not have modifiers that are not compatible with the modifiers of the associated nouns, as seen in (248), for whatever reason. The unit word is the individual CL *li* in (248a), the individuating CL *di* in (248b), the partitive CL *pian* in (248c), the standard measure *gongjin* 'kilo' in (248d), and the kind CL *zhong* 'kind' in (248e).

- (248)a. *[dada de] san li xiao yingtao [Individual CL]
big DE three CL small cherry
- b. *hen da de yi di xiao shui [Individuating CL]
very big DE one CL small water
- c. *hen da de yi pian xiao {xiangjiao/juzi} [Partitive CL]
very big DE one CL small banana/orange
Intended: 'one very big slice of small banana/orange'

³⁷ Although constructions of collective CLs allow incompatible modifiers, as shown in (246), the example in (ia), which looks like a collective CL construction, does not, as seen in (ib). In such a CL copying construction, the first CL can be replaced by the individual CL *ge*, and thus it is not a real collective CL (see 6.5).

- (i) a. san qun yang-qun three CL sheep-CL 'three groups of sheep'
b. *dada de san qun xiao yang-qun big DE three CL small sheep-CL

- d. *hen zhong de yi gongjin qing muliao [Standard measure]
 very heavy DE one kilo light wood
- e. *hen da de yi zhong xiao yu [Kind CL]
 very big DE one kind small fish

Therefore, the left-peripheral modifier test cannot be used to tell the structure of the constructions that have these types of unit words.

It is necessary to be clarified that the occurrence of the left-peripheral modifier cannot be the result of movement from a position between the numeral and the unit word. This is because the modifier must be followed by *de*, however, an adjective next to a unit word unit word may not occur with *de*, as shown in (249) (Tang 1990b: 418; see 5.4.2 of this book). If *de* emerges during the alleged movement, the derivation violates the Inclusiveness Condition (Chomsky 1995: 228), which excludes the adding of any new element during movement.

- (249) *yi [dada de] wan xiao yingtao
 one big DE bowl small cherry

My conclusion to this subsection is that numeral expressions with a container measure or a collective CL have a left-branching structure, in which the numeral and the unit word form a constituent, excluding the noun.

4.2.2 The effect of adjective-association

A delimitive modifier of a noun can occur as a modifier of an individual CL (Zhu 1982: 52; see my 2.4.3). (250a) and (250a') are different only in the position of the delimitive adjective *chang* 'long': it precedes the CL *tiao* in (250a), but follows the same CL in (250a'). The two numeral expressions mean the same, regardless of the position of the adjective. Other examples in (250) show the same pattern. This is the effect of adjective-association introduced in 2.4.1.2.

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| (250)a. yi chang tiao xianglian
one long CL necklace
Both: 'one long necklace' | = | a'. yi tiao chang xianglian
one CL long necklace |
| b. yi bo pian shuye
one thin CL leaf
Both: 'one thin leaf' | = | b'. yi pian bo shuye
one CL thin leaf |
| c. yi hou ben jiaoke-shu
one thick CL text-book
Both: 'one thick text-book' | = | c'. yi ben hou jiaoke-shu
one CL thick text-book |
| d. yi yuan ding maozi
one round CL hat
Both: 'one round hat' | = | d'. yi ding yuan maozi
one CL round hat |
| e. yi xiao fang zhang zhuanpian
one small square CL photo
Both: 'one small square photo' | = | e'. yi zhang xiao fang zhuanpian
one CL small square photo |

However, such an association is not seen in the numeral expressions of a container measure or collective CL, as shown in (251).

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------|---|------------------------------|-------------------|
| (251)a. | yi xiao he kouzi | ≠ | b'. yi he xiao kouzi | [Container meas.] |
| | one small box button | | one box small button | |
| | 'one small box of buttons' | | 'one box of small buttons' | |
| b. | yi da dui maozi | ≠ | b'. yi dui da maozi | [Collective CL] |
| | one big CL hat | | one CL big hat | |
| | 'one big pile of hats' | | 'one pile of big hats' | |

The possible displacement of the modifier in (250) indicates that the unit word C-Commands the noun, so that the modifier of the former can be semantically related to the modifier of the latter. The C-Command relation can be represented by a right-branching structure such as (243b). In (251), however, the readings of the left examples are different from those of the right ones. If the structure of all of the examples in (251) is left-branching, as in (243a), the unit word does not C-Command the noun. This structure captures the fact that the modifier of the former does not hold a dependency relation with the modifier of the latter.

For other types of unit words, the test does not apply, since no acceptable minimal pair can be found. For instance, a mass noun may not be modified by any delimitive adjective (see 2.2.2), and thus the individuating CL construction in (252b) is not acceptable for an independent reason.³⁸ As for kind CLs, when adjectives such as *da* 'big' and *xiao* 'small' precede them, the size reading disappears, and thus the acceptability of both (253a) and (253b) has a different nature from that of the examples in (251).

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|---|----|---|
| (252)a. | yi da di shui
one big CL water
'a big drop of water' | ≠ | b. | *yi di da shui [Individuating CL]
one CL big water |
| (253)a. | yi da lei shuiguo
one big CL fruit
'a major type of fruit' | ≠ | b. | yi lei da shuiguo [Kind CL]
one CL big fruit
'a type of big fruit' |

The effect of adjective-association is similar to the effect of the Neg-Raising. One reading of (254a) is synonymous to (254b). In this reading of (254a), it seems that the meaning of the negation is raised from the lower clause to the matrix clause. Importantly, Neg-Raising is attested in complementation structures only. The higher position of the negation must C-Command the lower position of the negation.

- (254) a. I don't think she is at home.
b. I think she is not at home

My conclusion to this subsection is that individual CL constructions have a right-branching structure and container measure or collective CL constructions have a left-branching structure.

³⁸ The following examples are special ((ii) was mentioned to me by Guy Emerson). The adjectives *da* 'big' and *xiao* 'small' here describe the size of the beard area, rather than each individual hair of the beard. (ii) expresses the meaning that each of the two beard areas looks like a stroke of writing with a brush pen. Although the adjectives in the two examples are next to the nouns, they seem to modify an implicit unit, as in (i), or an explicit unit, such as *bie* in (ii). Since the pattern is not productive, I treat (i) and (ii) as idiomatic expressions.

(i) Ta you da huzi.
3SG have big beard
'He has a big area of beards on his face.'

(ii) Ta you liang pie xiao huzi.
3SG have two CL small beard
'He has two small strokes of beards.'

4.2.3 The independence of syntactic function

The combination of a numeral and a unit word may have an independent syntactic function in association with a dimension-denoting element, such as *chang* ‘length’, *zhong* ‘weight’, or *rongliang* ‘capacity’. In the literature, such a combination is called Measure Phrase (MP). In Corver (2009: 72ff), such an MP is analyzed as a predicate, and in Cornilescu (2009) and Schwarzschild (2006), it is analyzed as Spec of a functional projection MonP (for Monotonicity Phrase). In Mandarin Chinese, the combination may occur either to the left or the right of the dimension-denoting element, when the whole expression is introduced by *de* and functions as a modifier of a noun. In both (255a) and (255b), the attributive introduced by *de* occurs to the left of the noun *gunzi* ‘stick’. Within the attributive, the combination of *san* ‘three’ and *cun* ‘inch’ is associated with the word *chang* ‘length’. The string *san cun* precedes *chang* in (255a), but the order is the other way around in (255b).

- (255)a. [[*san cun*] *chang*] *de gunzi* [Standard measure]
 three inch long DE stick
 b. [*chang* [*san cun*]] *de gunzi*
 Both : ‘a stick that is three inches long’

In (255), the unit word is the standard measure *cun* ‘inch’. In the following (256), the unit word is the standard measure *liang* (1 *liang* = 50 grams). In this example, *san liang* ‘three *liang*’ is associated with *zhong* ‘weight’. Other examples in (257) and (258) also show the independent syntactic function of the combination of a numeral and a unit word. In addition to the standard measure in (255) and (256), the unit word is a container measure in (257), and a partitive CL in (258).

- (256) [[*san liang*] *zhong*] *de danjieshi* [Standard measure]
 three liang heavy DE gallstone
 ‘a gallstone that is two liangs heavy’
 (257)a. [[*san ping*] *rongliang*] *de jiujiu* [Container measure]
 three bottle capacity DE alcohol
 ‘three bottles of alcohol’
 b. [[*san bei*] *rongliang*] *de mianfen*
 three cup capacity DE flour
 ‘three cups of flour’
 (258)a. [[*san duan*] *chang*] *de kewen* [Partitive CL]
 three paragraph long DE text
 ‘three paragraphs of text’
 b. [[*san ceng*] *gao*] *de loufang*
 three floor high DE building
 ‘a building that has three floors’
 c. [[*wushi ye*] *hou*] *de biji-ben*
 fifty page thick DE note-book
 ‘a notebook that has fifty pages’

In contrast, the combination of a numeral and an individual CL may not have this function, as seen in (259). In (259a), the dimension word *chang* ‘length’ is associated with the whole string *san gen kuaizi* ‘three CL chopstick’. In the absence of the word *kuaizi* ‘chopstick’, the string *san gen* ‘three CL’ alone may not be associated with *chang*. Note that in the intended readings of all of the examples in this subsection, the dimension word does not modify the noun to its right. The occurrence of another parallel attributive to the left of the

noun is possible. In (259c), the function of *huang yese* ‘yellow collar’ is the same as [*yi li putao da*] ‘as big as a grape’.

- (259)a. [san gen *(kuaizi) chang] de gunzi [Individual CL]
 three CL chopstick long DE stick
 ‘a stick that is as long as three chopsticks’
 b. [yi li *(putao) da] de danjieshi
 one CL grape big DE gallstone
 ‘a gallstone that is as big as a grape’
 c. [yi li putao da] [huang yanse] de danjieshi
 one CL grape big yellow color DE gallstone
 ‘a gallstone that is as big as a grape and yellow’

The contrast is seen not only in attributive expressions, but also in the so-called double subject constructions such as (260), and comparative constructions such as (261). In Corver (2009), a measure phrase, such as *two feet* in *two feet long*, is analyzed as a nominal predicate. Similarly, in (260a), *liang mi* ‘two meter’ is the predicate of *chang* ‘length’ in Zhang (2009a). If we replace the standard measure *mi* ‘meter’ with the individual CL *zhang*, the sentence becomes unacceptable, as seen in (260b). In the comparative construction (261a), *san cun* ‘three inch’ independently functions as an excessive measure expression (e.g., Xiang 2005), but *san gen* ‘three CL’ may not do so, as seen in (261b) (note that in (260a), the combination of the numeral and the unit word may also precede the dimension word if the auxiliary *you* ‘have’ occurs; e.g., the string *na zhang zhuzi you [liang mi chang]* is synonymous to (260a)).

- (260)a. Na zhang zhuzi [chang liang mi]. [Standard measure]
 that CL table long two meter
 ‘That table is two meters long.’
 b. *Na ge zhuzi [chang liang zhang]. [Individual CL]
 that CL table long two CL
 (261)a. Baoyu bi Daiyu [gao san cun] [Standard measure]
 Baoyu than Daiyu tall three inch
 ‘Baoyu is three inches taller than Daiyu.’
 b. *Baoyu bi Daiyu [gao san gen]. [Individual CL]
 Baoyu than Daiyu tall three CL

Since only a constituent can have an independent syntactic function, the acceptable examples in (255) through (258), (260a), and (261a) are a clear indication that the combination of the numeral and the unit word is a syntactic constituent. The impossibility for the combination of the numeral and the individual CL to have an independent syntactic function in (259), (260b), and (261b), fails to support the constituency of the combination.

Other types of CLs behave like individual CLs in this aspect. The examples in (262) all show that the combination of a numeral and a CL may not have an independent syntactic function to associate with the dimension word *da* ‘bigness, size’.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------|----|--------------------------|----|--------------------------|
| | [Individuating CL] | | [Collective CL] | | [Kind CL] |
| (262)a. | *[san di da] de shui | b. | *[san dui da] de juzi | c. | *[san zhong da] de juzi |
| | three CL big DE water | | three pile big DE orange | | three kind big DE orange |

Data like the following might blur the distinction I just showed, since both the partitive CL *jie* in (263a) and the individual CL *du* in (263b) seem to combine with the numeral *liang*

‘two’ to function as a resultative.

- (263)a. Baoyu ba yi gen cong qie-cheng liang jie.
Baoyu BA one CL onion cut-as two CL
‘Baoyu cut an onion into two sections.’
b. Baoyu ba yi du qiang gaizao-cheng liang du.
Baoyu BA one CL wall change-as two CL
‘Baoyu changed one wall into two walls.’

However, in (263b), the noun *cong* may not show up to the right of the final *jie*, as seen in (264a), whereas the noun *qiang* ‘wall’ can still show up to the right of the final *du*, as seen in (264b). The contrast indicates that (263b) actually is the result of deletion of the final noun. Thus, as claimed above, the contrast between partitive and individual CL constructions remains. In (263a), *liang jie* is a constituent, whereas in (263b), *liang du* is not.

- (264)a. Baoyu ba yi gen cong qie-cheng liang jie (*cong).
Baoyu BA one CL onion cut-as two CL onion
‘Baoyu cut an onion into two sections.’
b. Baoyu ba yi du qiang gaizao-cheng liang du (qiang).
Baoyu BA one CL wall change-as two CL wall
‘Baoyu changed one wall into two walls.’

My conclusion to this subsection is that standard measure, container measure, and partitive CL constructions have a left-branching structure, in which the numeral and the unit word form a constituent, excluding the noun.

4.2.4 Semantic selection

It is well-known that there is a semantic selection relation between CLs of certain types and their associated nouns. We have addressed the syntagmatic nature of selection in 2.2.1. Selection means that syntagmatically “certain forms arbitrarily behave alike in one way and certain others behave alike in another” (Chao 1968: 6). According to Bloomfield (1933: 165), “The features of selection are often highly arbitrary and whimsical.” See Ramchand (2008) for an extended discussion of semantic selection. A recent discussion of the selection of CLs is seen in Wu & Bodomo (2009: 488). In (265a), for instance, the individual CL *pi* may occur with *ma* ‘horse’, but not with *zhu* ‘pig’.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (265)a. | san pi {ma/*zhu} | b. san zhan {deng/*lazu} | c. san sou {chuan/*feiji} |
| | three CL horse/pig | three CL lamp/candle | three CL ship/plane |
| | ‘three horses’ | ‘three lamps’ | ‘three ships’ |
| d. | san ze {xiaohua/*jianyi} | e. san tiao {*xiaohua/jianyi} | |
| | three CL joke/suggestion | three CL joke/suggestion | |
| | ‘three jokes/suggestions’ | ‘three jokes/suggestions’ | |

Even the more general individual CLs such as *jian* (件) have selectional restrictions. *Jian* may occur with *liwu* ‘gift’, *shi* ‘matter’, *yifu* ‘clothes’, *jiaju* ‘furniture’, *zuopin* ‘literature or art product’, but not with nouns such as *shu* ‘book’, *deng* ‘lamp’, *qianbi* ‘pencil’, or *hua* ‘flower’.

Semantic selection is also found in individuating CLs, which occur with mass nouns. In (266a), for instance, the individuating CL *ji* (劑) may occur with *yao-shui* ‘medicine-liquid’, but not with *ji-tang* ‘chicken-soup’.

- (266)a. liang ji {yao-shui/*ji-tang}
two CL medicine-liquid/chicken-soup
'two doses of liquid medicine'
- b. liang pao {niao/*ji-tang}
two CL urine/chicken-soup
'the amount of pee of two peeing events'
- c. liang {pian/*zhang} yun
two CL/CL cloud
'two pieces of cloud'
- d. liang {gu/*tiao} zheng-qi
two CL/CL steam-air
'two puffs of steam'
- e. liang pi {bu/*zhi}
two CL cloth/paper
'two units of cloth'
- f. liang zhang {bu/zhi}
two CL cloth/paper
'two units of paper'
- g. yi gu {kongju/*heping}
one CL fear/peace
'one unit of fear'
- h. yi pai {kongju/heping}
one CL fear/peace
'one unit of peace'

The acceptability contrasts in (266) clearly shows that like other nouns, mass nouns may also occur with particular CLs (contra Chao 1968: 508 "Mass nouns do not have specific classifiers"; also p. 503; Hundius & Kölver 1983: 168; Krifka 2008: Sec. 2).

As pointed by T'sou (1976: 1224), "These are instances of intentional violation of selectional restrictions. They are very much in evidence and the ability to produce them is part of linguistic competence and must be accounted for in an adequate grammar." In Yu Kwang-Chung's (1999) poem, the same CL *pi* in (265a) is used with the noun *taiyang* 'sun', as in *yi pi taiyang* 'one CL sun', to describe the sudden rising of the sun in a dawn, in which the sun looks like a galloping horse. The occurrence of such an effect in turn shows the existence of s-selection of the CL.

A less discussed fact is that kind CLs also show selectional restrictions. Huang & Aherens (2003: 362) list as many as fourteen kind CLs in Mandarin Chinese, and describe their compatible nouns (although no unacceptable forms are given). Our following examples show the acceptability contrast between different kind CLs occurring with different nouns.³⁹

- (267)a. san kuan {shi/shouji/*xuesheng/*lilun}
three CL matter/cellphone/student/theory
'three kinds of cellphones'
- b. san dangzi {shi/*shouji/*xuesheng/*lilun}
three CL matter/cellphone/student/theory
'three kinds of things'
- c. san tao {shi/*shouji/*xuesheng/lilun}
three CL matter/cellphone/student/theory
'three kinds of theories'

Unlike individual, individuating and kind CLs, other types of unit words do not show selectional restrictions on nouns. In (268a), the container measure *chexiang* 'cattle-car (of a train)' is blind to the semantic distinction between *ma* 'horse' and *zhu* 'pig'. The lack of selectional restriction is also seen in the examples of the standard measure in (269), the collective CLs in (270), and the partitive CL in (271) (Note: it is the semantic conflict rather than the arbitrary selectional restrictins that accounts for the constraint that standard and container measures do not occur with immaterial notions, as shown in 2.2.1).

³⁹ The 14 kind CLs are: *zhong*, *ban*, *pai*, *ma*, *mazi*, *dang*, *dangzi*, *deng*, *lei kuan*, *hao*, *shi*, and *yang*. We can add another one: *tao*, as seen in (267c).

- (268)a. san chexiang {ma/zhu} [Container measure]
 three cattle.car horse/pig
 ‘three cattle-cars of horses/pigs’
 b. san wan {yao-shui/ji-tang}
 three bowl medicine-liquid/chicken-soup
 ‘three bowls of liquid-medicine/chicken-soup’
- (269) san sheng {yao-shui/ji-tang} [Standard measure]
 three liter medicine-liquid/chicken-soup
 ‘three liters of liquid-medicine/chicken-soup’
- (270)a. yi dui {shu/shoujuan} [Collective CL]
 one pile book/handkerchief
 ‘one pile of books/handkerchiefs’
 b. yi pian {qiche/mayi}
 one CL car/ant
 ‘one big area of cars/ants’
- (271) san pian {xigua/huluobo/juzi} [Partitive CL]
 three CL watermelon/carrot/orange
 ‘three slices of watermelon/carrot/orange’

Long & Ma (2008) claim that standard measures never occur with animate nouns. But this constraint simply reflects our conventional world knowledge, since we usually do not measure animate entities with standard measures. Thus it is a pragmatic constraint, rather than co-occurrence restriction. If a proper context is found, the constraint disappears. Imagine if the total weight of certain students is 550 kgs, the following sentence is then natural:

- (272) Zhuangzai-zhe 550 gongjin xuesheng de na ge qiqiu manman de sheng-qilai le.
 load-PRG 550 kilogram student DE that CL balloon slow DE rise-up PRT
 ‘The balloon that has 550 kilogram students with it is rising up slowly.’

Therefore, a semantic selection is found in individual, individuating, and kind CLs, but not in other types of unit words.

Selection relation must be represented in a local syntactic relation, i.e., the two elements that hold the relation must form a constituent, excluding other elements. The right-branching structure, as in (243b), can capture this relation, since the unit word and the noun form a constituent. The left-branching structure, as in (243a), however, does not capture the relation, since the unit word and the noun do not form a constituent.

In Hsieh (2008: 47 fn. 15), a unified left-branching structure is proposed. In order to explain the semantic selection between an individual CL and a noun, a feature-percolating theory is mentioned. However, since the CL in the assumed left-branching structure does not C-Command the noun, the assumed percolation is hard to be maintained.

Based on the semantic selection of a unit word on its associated noun, I conclude that individual, individuating and kind CL constructions have a right-branching structure, in which the unit word and the noun form a constituent, excluding the numeral. However, no parallel selection is found for other types of unit words, and thus there is no evidence to support this constituency for them.

4.2.5 Two possible structures

In this section, I have presented four arguments to distinguish a left-branching structure from a right-branching structure. They are summarized in (273).

(273)a.

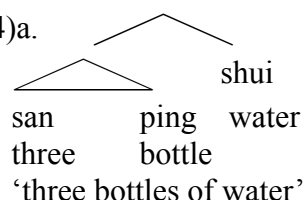
- Argument A: the combination of a numeral and a unit word as the scope of a left-peripheral modifier => Left-branching
- Argument B: the effect of adjective association:
The presence of the effect => Right-branching
The absence of the effect => Left-branching
- Argument C: the independent syntactic function of the combination of a numeral and a unit word
=> Left-branching
- Argument D: Semantic selection of a unit word on a noun => Right-branching

b.

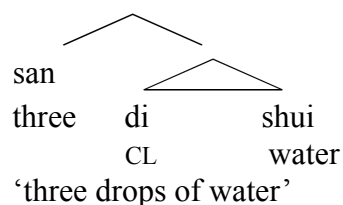
	Left-branching	Right-branching
Container measure	Argument A, B, C	
Standard measure	Argument C	
Collective CL	Argument A, B	
Partitive CL	Argument C	
Individual CL		Argument B, D
Individuating CL		Argument D
Kind CL		Argument D

From the four constituency tests listed in (273a), we can conclude that the constructions of the first four types of unit words listed in (273b), i.e., container measures, standard measures, collective CLs, and partitive CLs, have a left-branching structure, in which the numeral and the unit word form a constituent, excluding the noun, as shown in (274a), and that the constructions of individual and individuating CLs have a right-branching structure, in which the CL and the noun form a constituent, excluding the numeral, as shown in (274b).

(274)a.



b.



In addition to the above four arguments, two more arguments will be added later in 5.5.3, to support the constituency contrast.

One further fact supporting the formal division between the group of individual, individuating and kind CL constructions on the one side, and the constructions of the rest types of unit words on the other side is that the default CL *ge* may alternate with the unit words of the former group only (see 2.4.1.5).

(275)a. san {tai/ge} dianshi-ji Individual CL
three CL/CL TV-set
'three television sets'

b. Yani faxian-le san {tiao/ge} cuowu. Individuating CL
Yani find-PRF three CL/CL error
'Yani found three errors.'

c. Mei ge cunzi dou faxian-le zhe liang {zhong/ge} bingdu. Kind CL
every CL village all find-PRF this two CL virus
'These two kinds of virus have been found in every village.'

- | | | |
|----|---|-------------------|
| d. | san {pian/*ge} xiaojiao
three CL/CL banana
Intended: ‘three slices of banana’ | Partitive CL |
| e. | san {dui/*ge} xiaojiao
three CL/CL banana
Intended: ‘three piles of banana’ | Collective CL |
| f. | san {lan/*ge} xiaojiao
three basket/CL banana
Intended: ‘three baskets of banana’ | Container measure |
| g. | san {bang/*ge} xiaojiao
three pound/CL banana
Intended: ‘three pounds of banana’ | Standard measure |

4.3. Three invalid arguments

In this section, I falsify three arguments that have been used in the literature to support the syntactic constituency analyses of numeral expressions. The arguments are related to the adjacency of a numeral and a unit word, the position of certain partitive markers, and the immobility of the movement of a numeral-CL string.

4.3.1 The adjacency of a numeral and a unit word

In CL languages such as Chinese, a numeral and a CL are adjacent. Greenberg (1972) thus claims that the two elements should form a constituent. Similarly, Croft (1994: 151) claims that since a CL and a numeral co-occur, they must form a constituent. Thus a unified left-branching structure for all types of CL constructions is proposed from this co-occurrence perspective. The claim is adopted in Wilhelm (*ibid.*: 60).

It is not true that a CL is always next to a numeral, cross-linguistically. As noted by Bisang (2012a: fn.1), Greenberg’s constituency is challenged by the fact that in languages such as Ejagham (Watters 1981), a numeral expression is initiated with a CL and ended with a numeral, with the noun in the middle.

Even for the numeral expressions in which the numeral and the CL are adjacent, the adjacency is not an effective argument for the constituency of the string of numeral-CL, however. In English, an auxiliary (e.g., *have* or *be*) needs to occur with a subject or expletive, but the two elements never form a constituent. Also, as pointed out by Krifka (2008: Sec. 6.3), while the co-occurrence of two elements might lead to a certain morphological combination, this does not mean in itself that the two elements form a constituent in the syntactic structure. It is well-known that the fusion of a preposition and its following article in French *aux* (= *à les* ‘to the’) and German *beim* (= *bei dem* ‘at the’) does not mean that the preposition and the article form a syntactic constituent. Similarly, the cliticization of a CL to a numeral to the right, as seen in (276) (Kung 2007: 189), do not imply that the numeral and the CL form a syntactic constituent. The surface adjacency can be the result of certain morphosyntactic operations.

- | | | | | |
|----------|--|----|---|-------------------|
| (276) a. | puma-t'útu lapanák
CL:human-three people
‘three people’ | b. | 'aqx-tam 'alhik
CL:flat-one paper
‘one sheet of paper’ | [Lhiimaqalhqama'] |
|----------|--|----|---|-------------------|

In Mandarin Chinese, contraction is found between a demonstrative and the numeral *yī* ‘one’, as in (277a), and between the numeral *liang* ‘two’ and *san* ‘three’ and the CL *ge*, as in (277b) and (277c), respectively (see footnote 25 for suffix use of *lia*).

- (277) a. zhe yi ge pingguo => zhei ge pingguo
 DEM one CL apple DEM.one CL apple
 ‘this apple’
- b. liang ge pingguo => lia pingguo
 two CL apple two.CL apple
 ‘two apples’
- c. san ge pingguo => sa pingguo
 three CL apple three.CL apple
 ‘three apples’

The morphological operation is not seen in other numerals. This is similar to the case that the numerals 1-3 may undergo certain phonological changes in Tlingit, but other numerals do not do so (Cable 2012: Section 3).

A numeral and a CL may also form a phonological phrase. However, as is well-known, phonological phrases are not necessarily isomorphic to syntactic constituents. For instance, the syntactic constituency of (278a) is not reflected in the phonological grouping in (278b) (Jackendoff 1997: 26) (ω marks a prosodic word boundary).

- (278) a. [_{DP} a [_{NP} [_{AP} big] house]] b. [_ψ [_ω a big] [_ω house]]

Even phonological words do not always correlate with syntactic constituents. Canonical examples are illustrated by the underlined parts of the examples in (279):

- (279) a. That man over there’s working this morning.
 b. You are’t helping.
 c. You’re not helping.

4.3.2 The positions of the partitives *duo* ‘more’ and *ban* ‘half’

4.3.2.1 The position of *duo* ‘more’

Lü et al. (1999 [1980]: 184) claim that *duo* ‘more’ may follow a measure word, but not a CL in general (with exceptions; see 4.3.2.3 below).

- (280) a. liu jin duo putao b. liang xiang duo shu
 six catty more grape two box more book
 ‘six and more catty of grapes’ ‘two and more boxes of books’

Wang (1994: 35) uses the occurrence of the post-unit word *duo* to distinguish CLs from measure words. In Hsieh (2008: 46), it is assumed that if *duo* follows a unit word, the unit word and its preceding numeral should form a constituent. If so, the structure should be left-branching. X. P. Li (2011: 114) uses the same argument to claim that such *duo* constructions have a left-branching structure.

However, the position of *duo* is not a reliable argument in judging the constituency of the containing structure, for the following reason.

Duo is an additive partitive quantifier, scoping over the single unit-morpheme to its immediate left. The unit morpheme can be a numeral unit, such as *shi* ‘ten’, *bai* ‘hundred’, *qian* ‘thousand’, etc., or a measure word, or a CL. In (281), for instance, the unit morpheme to the immediate left of *duo* is *shi* ‘ten’, which is the second morpheme of the word *wu-shi* ‘fifty’. The quantity expressed by this example is 50 plus a part of *shi* ‘ten’. It can be any

(281) wu-shi duo feng xin
 five-ten more CL letter
 ‘fifty and more letters’ ($50 < x < 60$)

(282) a. shi duo mu di
ten more mu land
'10 *mu* and more (of) land' ($10 < x < 20$)
b. shi mu duo di
ten mu more land
'10 *mu* and more (of) land' ($10 < x < 11$)

Similarly, the reading of (283a) is 30 plus part of 10. The quantity expressed by the whole nominal is thus any number between 30 and 40, e.g., 33 *mu*. In contrast, the reading of (283b) is 30 plus a part of one *mu*. The quantity expressed by the whole nominal is any number between 30 and 31 *mu*, e.g., 30.4 *mu*.

- (283) a. san-shi duo mu di
three-ten more mu land
'30 *mu* and more (of) land' ($30 < x < 40$)
b. san-shi mu duo di
three-ten mu more land
'30 *mu* and more (of) land' ($30 < x < 31$)

⁴⁰ The distributions of the partitive markers *duo* ‘more’, *ban* ‘half’, and *ji* ‘a few, several’ are different. Although *duo* may follow either a numeral or a unit word, as seen in (282) and (283), *ban* follows a unit word only, rather than a numeral, as seen in (i); and the host of *ji* may follow a numeral, rather than a unit word, as seen in (ii). But *ji* may also precede a numeral, whereas the other two may not, as seen in (iii).

- (i) a. shi mi ban mi b. *shi ban mi (ii) a. *shi mi ji b. shi ji mi
 ten meter half ten half meter ten meter several ten several meter
 '10.5 meters' '10 and more meters'
- (iii) a. ji bai mi b. *duo bai mi c. *ban bai mi
 several hundred meter more hundred meter half hundred meter
 'several hundreds meters'

(iii) a. *shi-wu duo mi b. *shi-wu ji mi c. *ji wu mi
 ten-five more meter ten-five several meter several five meter

- c. Zuo zhe ge dangao wo yong-le yi ge ban pingguo.
make this CL cake I use-PRF one CL half apple
'I used one and a half apples to make this cake.'
- (287)a. *Ta cong shu-shang zhaixia-le 3/4 ge pingguo.
he from tree-on pick-PRF 3/4 CL apple
b. *Ta cong shu-shang zhaixia-le yi ge duo pingguo.
he from tree-on pick-PRF one CL more apple
c. *Ta cong shu-shang zhaixia-le yi ge ban pingguo.
he from tree-on pick-PRF one CL half apple
- (288)a. Na zhi yang yao-sui-le 3/4 zhi qianbi.
that CL goat chew-broken-PRF 3/4 CL pencil
'That goat chewed three quarters of a pencil into pieces.'
b. Na zhi yang yao-sui-le san zhi duo qianbi.
that CL goat chew-broken-PRF three CL more pencil
'That goat chewed three and more pencils into pieces.'
c. Na zhi yang yao-sui-le san zhi ban qianbi.
that CL goat chew-broken-PRF three CL half pencil
'That goat chewed three and a half pencils into pieces.'
- (289)a. *Wo mai-le 3/4 zhi qianbi.
I buy-PRF 3/4 CL pencil
b. *Wo mai-le san zhi duo qianbi.
I buy-PRF three CL more pencil
c. *Wo mai-le san zhi ban qianbi.
I buy-PRF three CL half pencil

The same numeral expression may occur in one context, but not another. The acceptability contrast exhibited in the above data is neither a contrast between CLs and measure words (as claimed by Lü et al., *ibid*, and Wang, *ibid*.), nor a contrast in the nominal-internal constituency (as claimed by Hsieh, *ibid*, and X. P. Li, *ibid*). Just as existential verbs may not take a definite argument in the VP domain, so certain verbs may be sensitive to other formal properties of nominal arguments. Thus, it is possible that non-incremental verbs such as those in (287) and (289) disallow their internal argument to have a fractional number. Instead, only integers are allowed.

4.3.3 The movement argument

In Mandarin Chinese, the combination of a numeral and a unit word may not be fronted:

- (290)a. Shufen mai-le san ben shu. b. *San ben, Shufen mai-le shu.
Shufen buy-PRF three CL book three CL Shufen buy-PRF book
'Shufen bought three books.'
- (291)a. Shufen mai-le san jin niurou. b. *San jin, Shufen mai-le niurou.
Shufen buy-PRF three jin beef three jin Shufen buy-PRF beef
'Shufen bought three jin of beef.'

This is different from the following Japanese examples, where the combination of the numeral *san* 'three' and the CL *satu* may be separated from the associated noun *hon* 'book' in (292b):

- (292)a. Taroo-wa san-satu no hon-o katta. b. San-satu, Taroo-wa hon-o katta.
 Taroo-TOP three-CL NO book-ACC bought three-CL Taroo-TOP book-ACC bought
 Both: ‘Taroo bought three books.’

Saito et al. (2008: 260) use the contrast between (290) and (292) to show that the CL construction in Chinese is right-branching and thus the combination of the numeral and the CL may not move, whereas the CL construction in Japanese is left-branching and thus the combination of the numeral and the CL can move (see Watanabe 2010 for more discussion of the syntax of Japanese CL constructions). In this chapter, I have also argued that individual CL constructions in Chinese have a right-branching structure, in which the numeral and the unit word do not form a constituent excluding the NP, and thus the unacceptability of (290b) is expected. Our conclusion is compatible with Saito et al.’s. However, if the constructions of some other types of unit words, such as the standard measure in (291a), have a left-branching structure, as we have proposed, how is it that the combination of the numeral and the unit word may still not move, as seen in (291b)?

The unacceptability of (291b) does not falsify my analysis, however. One account of the unacceptability is that the parallel left quantity-denoting constituent of a nominal may not move in Chinese, either, as seen in (293b). The constituency status of the string *hen duo* ‘very many’ is not controversial. The fact that the string may not move does not affect its constituent status.

- (293)a. Shufen mai-le hen duo (de) shu. b. *Hen duo (de), Shufen mai-le shu.
 Shufen buy-PRF very many DE book very many DE Shufen buy-PRF book
 ‘Shufen bought many books.’

Although it is not clear to me why the language has this constraint, at least data like (293) indicate that such a movement argument, if it is considered, is not a valid argument against the analysis proposed here. There might be an independent explanation for the general ban on the left dislocation of quantifiers in Chinese.

4.4. Remarks on a semantic mapping analysis

Non-unified structures of classifier constructions have also been seen in the literature. However, different structures are claimed to correlate with particular readings. In this section, I argue against such a mapping.

X. P. Li (2011: 117) claims that for a numeral expression in Mandarin Chinese, a quantity (= his measure) reading is mapped to the left-branching structure, whereas an individual (= his counting) reading is mapped to the right-branching structure. Four main arguments are presented to support such a quantity-individual mapping (p. 113-116; 119-120): (A) the silence of a numeral; (B) the position of *duo*; (C) the position of *de*; and (D) the deletion of the noun after a reduplicate container measure word. In addition to these four arguments, he also mentions another argument: reduplicate unit words (e.g., *ping-ping* ‘bottle-bottle’) may not take a nominal in a quantity reading as its antecedent (p. 115-116; 120). Similar observation has been reported in Y.H. Audrey Li (1998: 698) and Rothstein (2009). But it is hard to see how this fact is related to the internal constituency of a numeral expression. I thus ignore this final argument. Argument B has been shown to be invalid in 4.3.2.1 above. The problems of Argument C will be discussed in 4.5. In this section, I falsify Arguments A and D.

X. P. Li claims that only the right-branching structure allows the numeral to be silent. This silent numeral argument for the quantity-individual mapping of constituency is based on the examples like (294), assuming there is a silent *yi* ‘one’ in the position marked by ____.

- (294) Siyu mai-le ___ ben shu.
 Siyu buy-PRF CL book
 ‘Siyu bought a book.’

In 3.3.3, I have argued that such a SUWN has no position for a numeral. If so, nominals like *ben shu* ‘CL book’ in (294) contain only two overt elements and thus there is no way to use such examples to look for the contrast between a left-branching and right-branching structure of a three-element nominal.

Now we turn to Argument D. X. P. Li (p. 120) notes that when a container measure is reduplicated, the noun to its right may not be deleted if the whole nominal has an anaphoric relation to an antecedent that is a numeral expression, as shown in (295) (his judgment):

- (295) zhe ge tong zhuang-le san ping jiu, ping-ping *(jiu) dou hen gui.
 this CL bucket hold-PRF three bottle wine bottle-bottle wine all very expensive
 ‘This bucket holds three bottles of wine, each of which is expensive.’

According to Li, *san ping jiu* ‘three bottle wine’ in this sentence has a quantity reading (= his measure reading). Under this hypothesis, the nominal should have a left-branching structure, and the numeral-unit word complex *san ping* ‘three bottle’ is a modifier of the noun. If so, the impossible deletion can be accounted for, assuming the modified noun may not be deleted. However, first of all, if the first clause of (295) has a quantity reading, it should not function as an antecedent of another form, especially a form that encodes a distributive reading (his p. 111; 116; note the occurrence of *dou* ‘all’ in the example). Second, the assumption that a modified noun may not be deleted is problematic. The following sentence also has a quantity reading, but the noun to the right of the unit word, which is assumed to be a modified noun in his analysis, is deleted:

- (296) Baoyu yao mai san bang yingtao, Daiyu yao mai wu bang.
 Baoyu want buy three pound cherry Daiyu want buy five pound
 ‘Baoyu wants to buy three pounds of cherries, and Daiyu wants to buy five pounds.’

We conclude that the above arguments for the quantity-individual mapping of constituency are not convincing.

The syntactic contrast between a quantity reading and individual reading of a nominal has been systematically studied since Y.H. A. Li (1998). Y.H. A. Li presents certain tests to separate the two readings in Mandarin Chinese. For instance, the quantity reading of *san ge ren* ‘three CL person’ in (297a) may not enter into a co-referential relation with a following pronoun, but the individual reading of the same nominal in (297b) may do so (Y.H. A. Li 1998: 698).

- (297) a. San ge ren_i tai-bu-dong zhe jia gangqin. *Tamen_i de liliang tai xiao.
 three CL people lift-not-move this CL piano they DE strength too small
 ‘Three people cannot lift up this piano. Their strength is too weak.’
 b. Ta mingtian hui kandao san ge ren_i, hai hui gen tamen_i zuo pengyou.
 he tomorrow will see three CL people and will with them make friends
 ‘He will meet three people tomorrow and will make friends with them.’

Rothstein (2009) also presents a few contrastive properties of the two readings. They are

compatible with Y.H. A. Li's observations. She (p. 110) also mentions that in English, "[O]n the measure reading, the suffix *-ful(s)* can often be added to the classifier, but this is inappropriate for the individuating reading." The examples in (298) are given to show the contrast:

- (298) a. Add two cup(ful)s of wine to the soup. [quantity]
 b. Bring two cup(#ful)s of wine for our guests. [individual]
 c. We needed three bucket(ful)s of cement to build that wall. [quantity]
 d. Three bucket(#ful)s of mud were standing in a row against the wall. [individual]

According to Akmajian & Lehrer (1976: 412), "[T]he suffix *-ful* added to nouns is a partially productive way of converting nouns to quantifiers." If a speaker chooses the quantifier version of an expression (i.e., the *-ful* form), instead of the simple noun version, the intended meaning must be a quantity (or measure) one, instead of an individual one.

Rothstein further reports certain morphological contrasts of the two readings in Hebrew. However, no constituency contrast is presented.

In Y.H. A. Li (1998), a pure quantity reading of a numeral expression is represented by a functional projection NumP (note that there is no QuantP in her system; see next chapter for the distinction between NumP and QuantP in my analysis), and an individual reading is represented by DP. The latter has one more layer of functional projection than the former. Liao (2010) argues that the contrast should be represented at a higher level, such as in the projection of modals. In neither Y.H. A. Li's work nor Liao's work, where the distinction between quantity and individual readings is also discussed, have we seen any argument to support a contrast in the nominal-internal constituency.

The different types of constituency argued in my 4.2 do not correlate with the quantity-individual contrast. Each of the structures may have both readings. In (299), the individual CL *duo* and the noun *hua* 'flower' form a constituent first, excluding the numeral *san* 'three' (i.e., right-branching structure). Now we see that (299a) has an individual reading and (299b) has a quantity reading. In (300), the kind CL *zhong* 'kind' and the noun *yu* 'fish' also form a constituent first, excluding the numeral *san* 'three'. (300a) has an individual reading and (300b) has a quantity reading. In (301), the container measure *ping* 'bottle' and the numeral *san* 'three' form a constituent first, excluding the noun *jiu* 'wine' (i.e., left-branching structure). (301a) has an individual reading and (301b) has a quantity reading.

- (299) a. Wo ba san duo hua dou fang zai zhuzi-shang le. [individual]
 I BA three CL flower all put at table-on PRT
 'I put all of the three flowers on the table.'
 b. Zheli zhi neng fang san duo hua. [quantity]
 here only can put three CL flower
 'Only three flowers can be put here.'
- (300) a. You san zhong yu you de hen kuai. [individual]
 have three kind fish swim DE very fast
 'There are three kinds of fish which swim very fast.'
 b. Ni zhiduo zhi neng tiao san zhong yu. [quantity]
 you most only can choose three kind fish
 'You can choose only three kinds of fish at most.'
- (301) a. Wo ba san ping jiu dou fang zai zhuzi-shang le. [individual]
 I BA three bottle wine all put at table-on PRT
 'I put all of the three bottles of wine on the table.'

- b. Zhe zhi bing-tong zhi neng fang san ping jiu. [quantity]
 this CL ice-bucket only can put three bottle wine
 ‘This ice-bucket can hold only three bottles of wine.’

In X. P. Li (2011), individual CL constructions have a default individual reading (p. 121), as in my (299a), and such a reading has a right-branching structure. For the possible quantity reading of such constructions, as in my (299b), he resorts to the operation of semantic shift (p. 137). Since quantity reading has a left-branching structure in his analysis, the assumed semantic shift must correlate with a change in the syntactic structure. However, no syntactic evidence has been shown to support a left-branching structure for individual CL constructions.

Moreover, consider the examples of modification constructions in (245) and (246). One of the examples is repeated here as (302). Zhang (2006) shows that if a construction has a pre-numeral modifier, it has a specific and thus individual reading, but the modification evidence shows that in such examples, the construction clearly has a left-branching structure. This is unexpected if individual readings correlate with a right-branching structure.

- (302) dada de san wan xiao yingtao
 big DE three bowl small cherry
 ‘three big bowls of small cherries’

Furthermore, English numeral-initial NPs such as *three small children* have no CL, but they also have the two readings (Y.H. A. Li 1998: 695). The numeral-initial nominals in (303a) and (303b) both have a quantity reading, whereas the one in (304) has an individual reading. There is no evidence for a difference in the C-Commanding relation of *three* and *small children* between (303a) and (304).

- (303) a. That bed sleeps three small children.
 b. That hotel suite accommodated 100 guests.
 (304) Three small children have arrived. They are all in the kitchen.

I thus claim that the contrast between a left- and right-branching structure of unit constructions does not correlate with the contrast between quantity and individual readings.⁴¹

In addition to the two syntax-semantics mappings falsified above, some other mappings are also seen in the literature. For instance, Tang (1990a: 353) mentions that in English, mass noun constructions have a left-branching structure and count noun constructions have a right-branching structure. The same correlation is also stated in Watanabe (2006: 261, 270) for Japanese. It is beyond the scope of this book to discuss these languages. In my analysis of Mandarin Chinese, the contrast between a left-branching and right-branching structure is obviously not that between count and mass nouns, since there is no count nouns in Chinese (Chapter 2). Also, my conclusion that individuating and individual CL constructions have an identical constituency shows that there is no constituency difference between numeral expressions of mass nouns and those of non-mass nouns in the language.

The division between the left- and right-branching structures argued for in this chapter also has no correlation with the division between the alleged sortal and mensural CL constructions (see 2.7.3). According to Grinevald (2002: 261) and Rijkhoff (2002: 48),

⁴¹ Following Rothstein (2009), X. P. Li (2011) also uses numeral expressions with a container measure to support his claim. He correlates the container reading with an individual reading, which is assumed to have a right-branching structure, and correlates the containee reading with a quantity reading, which is assumed to have a left-branching structure. The correlations have been falsified in Zhang (2012a).

individual CLs are sortal ones and individuating CLs are mensural ones. In my analysis, both kinds of CLs have a right-branching structure. My division of the left- and right-branching structures also does not match Ōta's (2003 [1958]: 147) division between measuring (*ji-liang* 計量) and counting (*ji-shu* 計數) constructions: the former is for standard measure and container measure and the latter is for the rest, including individual and collective CL constructions. In my analysis, collective CL constructions have the same structure as that of standard and container measures. Since the sortal-mensural division and the measuring-counting division are not supported by any syntactic evidence, it is not surprising that they do not correlate with the syntactic analysis presented here.

4.5. Constituency and the occurrence of *de* following a unit word

4.5.1 Background

In Mandarin Chinese, the functional element *de* may introduce a modifier such as an adjective or relative clause to the left of another element. We have seen such examples before (e.g., (245) and (246)). *De* may also surface between a unit word and a noun. If the unit word is an individual or individuating CL, there are certain constraints, which will be explained as we progress. However, in general, all types of unit words may be followed by *de*, as observed in Tang (2005: 444), Hsieh (2008: 42), X. P. Li (2011), and Her & Hsieh (2010: 540), as shown in (162), repeated here as (305).

- (305)a. Shufen chi-le yi-bai {ge/gongjin/bao/pian/dui/zhong} de pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-hundred CL/kilo/bag/slice/pile/kind DE apple
 'Shufen ate 100 apples or 100 {kilos/bags/slices/piles/kinds} of apples.'
- b. Shufen chi-le san-fen-zhi-yi li de ganmao-yao.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-third CL DE cold-pill
 'Shufen took one third of a cold pill.'
- c. Yi liang tiao de maojin ni zong mai-de-qi ba!
 one two CL DE towel you after.all buy-can PRT
 'You should be able to afford to buy one or two towels!'

Note that in this chapter, I do not consider numeral expressions that express an inherent or individual-level property (ILP) of the entity denoted by the noun, as shown in the underlined part in (306) (Tang 2005: 434). The syntactic structure of such constructions will be discussed in 5.5.4.

- (306) a. Ta mai-le liang tao [wu ben de shu].
 he buy-PRF two CL five CL DE book
 'He bought two sets of five volume books.'
- b. Ta mai-le liang mi [yi gongfen de shengzi].
 he buy-PRF two meter one cm DE rope
 'He bought two meters of the rope that is 1 cm thick.'
- c. yi ge shi bang de xigua
 one CL ten pound DE watermelon
 'a ten pound watermelon'

Hsieh (2008: 45) claims that "The use of *de* calls for the organization of all the relevant information in an N-C sequence as a constituent" (her N = numeral; C = CL). The same idea is found in X. P. Li (2011: 119, his Argument C, as I mentioned at the beginning of 4.4 above). They thus both argue for a unified left-branching structure from this *de*-perspective.

However, we have shown that an individual CL construction may not have two

incompatible modifiers (see 4.2.1). If *de* occurs, the constraint remains. The consistency does not support a left-branching structure for the numeral expression.

- (307) *Shufen chi-le hen da de yi-bai ge (de) xiao pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF very big DE 100 CL DE small apple

Moreover, if an individual or an individuating CL s-selects a noun, it does so regardless of the presence of *de*. In (308), the noun *pingguo* ‘apple’ may occur with the CL *ge*, but not the CL *zhan*. The latter is for lamps. The selection restriction is not affected by the occurrence of *de*. I have argued that the selection supports a right-branching structure, rather than a left-branching one (4.2.4). This consistency does not support a left-branching structure for the numeral expression.

- (308) Shufen chi-le yi-bai {ge/*zhan} (de) pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF 100 CL/CL DE apple
 ‘Shufen ate 100 apples.’

We thus need a more plausible analysis of the *de* versions of various numeral expressions.

4.5.2 The quantity-reading condition

Morphologically, the functional element *de* is an enclitic consistently (Huang 1989), although it is usually called a particle. Hsieh (2008: 40, 45) observes that *de* may follow an individual CL, as in (308), when the quantity is emphasized. We further find that in a context where the quantity is not emphasized, *de* may not follow an individual CL, individuating CL, or kind CL, but may follow a unit word of other types, i.e., a partitive CL, collective CL, container measure, or standard measure.

- | | | |
|---------|--|---------------------|
| (309)a. | *Zhuozi-shang you san ge de pingguo.
table-on have three CL DE apple | [Individual CL] |
| b. | *Zhuozi-shang you san di de you.
table-on have three CL DE oil | [Individuating CL] |
| c. | *Zhuozi-shang you san kuan de fuzhuang.
table-on have three kind DE clothes | [Kind CL] |
| (310)a. | Zhuozi-shang you san pian de xiangjiao.
table-on have three CL DE banana
‘There are three slices of banana on the table.’ | [Partitive CL] |
| b. | Zhuozi-shang you san dui de yingtao.
table-on have three pile DE cherry
‘There are three piles of cherries on the table.’ | [Collective CL] |
| c. | Zhuozi-shang you san bao de pingguo.
table-on have three bag DE apple
‘There are three bags of apples on the table; | [Container measure] |
| d. | Zhuozi-shang you san bang de yingtao.
table-on have three pound DE cherry
‘There are three pounds of cherries on the table.’ | [Standard measure] |

The division between (309) and (310) coincides with the one between the right-branching type and the left-branching type of numeral expressions. Specifically, the individual CL *ge* in (309a), the individuating CL *di* in (309b), and the kind CL *kuan* in (309c)

have a right-branching structure (see 4.2.5). They all disallow *de* in the same context, where no clue shows that the quantity is emphasized. In contrast, the partitive CL *pian* in (310a), the collective CL *dui* ‘pile’ in (310b), the container measure *bao* ‘bag’ in (310c), and the standard measure *bang* ‘pound’ in (310d), all have a left-branching structure. They all allow *de* in the same context.

If the same right-branching type of numeral expressions occurs in a context where quantity is emphasized, their acceptability improves significantly. In (311), the quantity reading is attested in the presence of the adverb *yigong* ‘total’, and in (312), the quantity reading is attested in the predicate *zugou* ‘enough’.

- (311)a. Zhuozi-shang yigong you 300 ge de pingguo.
table-on total have 300 CL DE apple
‘There are 300 apples in total on the table.’
- b. Zhuozi-shang yigong you 300 di de you.
table-on total have 300 CL DE oil
‘There are 300 drops of oil in total on the table.’
- c. Zhuozi-shang yigong you jin 300 kuan de fuzhuang.
table-on total have about 300 kind DE clothes
‘There are about 300 kinds of clothes in total on the table.’
- (312)a. Yi liang ge de pingguo jiu zugou le.
one two CL DE apple just enough PRT
‘Just one or two apples are enough.’
- b. Yi liang di de you jiu zugou le.
one two CL DE oil just enough PRT
‘Just one or two drops of oil are enough.’
- c. Yi liang kuan de fuzhuang jiu zugou le.
one two kind DE clothes just enough PRT
‘Just one or two kinds of clothes are enough.’

Note that when a quantity is emphasized, the quantity does not have to be a precise one. Hsieh (2008: 37) lists some examples in which an estimate quantity is expressed by an individual CL and *de*. Our examples in (311c) and (312) show this point.

Based on the above acceptability contrast, we propose the following generalization:

- (313) The particle *de* may follow an individual, individuating, and kind CL if the quantity reading of the whole numeral expression is salient.

This generalization is further supported by two more facts.

First, in the presence of a demonstrative, where an individual rather than a quantity-reading is more prominent, the acceptability contrast between the *de*-versions of the left- and right-branching numeral expressions emerges. (Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 393 claim that no demonstrative may occur with a post-unit *de*. However, I find the examples in (314) natural. All of the nominals in (314) can be found via an internet search)

- (314)a. Ni ba na san xiang de shu qingli-diao! [Container measure]
you BA that three box DE book clear-away
‘Clear away those three boxes of books!’
- b. Ni ba na yi dui de lüyou-shu qingli-diao! [Collective CL]
you BA that one pile DE travel-book clear-away
‘Clear away that pile of travel books!’

- c. Ni ba na san jin de fanqie qingli-diao! [Standard measure]
you BA that three kilo DE tomato clear-away
'Clear away those three kilos of tomatoes!'
- d. Ni ba na liang bufen de kewen bei yixia! [Partitive CL]
you BA that two part DE text recite once
'Recite those two parts of the text!'
- (315)a. *Ni ba na san ge de pingguo qingli-diao! [Individual CL]
you BA that three CL DE apple clear-away
- b. *Ni ba na san di de you qingli-diao! [Individuating CL]
you BA that three CL DE oil clear-away
- c. *Ni ba na san zhong de niu-rou qingli-diao! [Kind CL]
you BA that three kind DE cow-meat clear-away

Second, we find the same effect caused by the post-individual CL *de* and quantity adverbs in an exclusively individual-denoting context. While a numeral expression such as (316a) may have either a quantity reading or an individual reading (Y.H. A. Li 1998), it can be disambiguated by various ways. In (316b), the modifier occurs to the left of the numeral 100. Such a construction always has a specific and thus an individual reading (Zhang 2006). In (316c), the word *yigong* 'altogether, in total' signals a quantity context. Since the two ways disambiguate numeral expressions in the opposite directions, they may not be used at the same time, as shown by the unacceptability of (316d). Note that in the examples in (316), no *de* follows the CL *ge*.

- (316)a. 100 ge [Shufen mai] de xigua
100 CL Shufen buy DE watermelon
'the 100 watermelons that Shufen bought'
- b. [Shufen mai] de 100 ge xigua
Shufen buy DE 100 CL watermelon
'the 100 watermelons that Shufen bought'
- c. Ta yigong chi-le 100 ge xigua.
He total eat-PRF 100 CL watermelon
'He ate 100 watermelons in total.'
- d. *Ta yigong chi-le [Shufen mai] de 100 ge xigua.
he total eat-PRF Shufen buy DE 100 CL watermelon

The contrast in (317) below shows that when *de* follows an individual CL, the pre-numeral modifier construction in (317b) is as bad as (316d), although no quantity adverb such as *yigong* 'total' shows up.

- (317)a. 100 ge de xigua
100 CL DE watermelon
'100 watermelons'
- b. *[Shufen mai] de 100 ge de xigua
Shufen buy DE 100 CL DE watermelon

(317b) is different from (317a) in that it has a pre-numeral modifier. We can see that the *de* construction may not host a pre-numeral modifier (more examples showing a similar constraint are seen in Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 394; Tang 2005: 448). (317b) is different from (316b) only in the presence of *de* to the right of the CL *ge*. The constraint seen in (317b) is the same as the one in (316d). In both cases, the exclusive individual reading of the pre-numeral modifier construction is in conflict with something: it is in conflict with the adverb *yigong* 'total' in (316d), and with the post-CL *de* in (317b). It is plausible to assume

that like the adverb, the post-CL *de* in (317b) also provides a quantity context. Accordingly, the *de* version of the right-branching numeral expression is associated with a quantity reading.

The above contrast tells us that with respect to the occurrence of *de*, the left-branching type is less constrained, whereas the right-branching type is licensed only in a quantity context. We try to explain this contrast in the next subsection.

Note that in 4.4, I argued against the claim that a left-branching structure encodes a quantity reading exclusively and a right-branching structure encodes a non-quantity reading exclusively. The pattern observed here further falsifies the claim.

4.5.3 Different sources of *de*

It is possible that there are two different sources of *de* occurring with a numeral expression, and the one with a left-branching construction is structurally ambiguous, but the one with a right-branching construction is not ambiguous. In the latter case, the *de* construction is exclusively related to a quantity reading.⁴²

In this sub-section, I show that the *de* version of an individual CL construction is a quantity-comparative modification construction. The modification analysis of the *de* version of measure word constructions has been seen in Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 393) and Tang (2005). In X. P. Li (2011), the *de* construction is called the as-many/much-as construction. I now combine these insights and propose that the construction is a specific type of modification construction: elliptical comparative modification construction.

Elliptical comparative modification constructions are independently observed in Mandarin Chinese. Before moving on, I introduce the fact that in Mandarin Chinese, the cluster *name-X* ‘that X’, where X is an adjective such as *da* ‘big’, *duo* ‘many’, and *huai* ‘bad’, needs a discourse or linguistic antecedent. In (318a), the cluster *name da* ‘that big’ takes *zhima* ‘sesame seed’ as its antecedent. In such a construction, the word *name* ‘that’ can be deleted, without affecting the reading. (318a) and (318b) have the same reading. In this construction, *de* introduces a comparative modifier. (318c) is my analysis of (318b).

- (318)a. Shufen mai-le [yi ge [[zhima name da] de wanju]].
 Shufen buy-PRF one CL sesame that big DE toy
 b. Shufen mai-le yi ge zhima da de wanju.
 Shufen buy-PRF one CL sesame big DE toy
 Both: ‘Shufen bought a toy as big as a sesame seed.’
 c. Shufen mai-le [yi ge [[zhima ~~name~~ da] de wanju]].
 Shufen buy-PRF one CL sesame that big DE toy

Similarly, I claim that *de* in (319a) also introduces a comparative modifier. The full form of (319a) is (319b), where the first *pingguo* ‘apple’ and *name duo* ‘that many’ are deleted at PF. (320) shows the same point. In the following, I discuss (319) only.

- (319)a. Shufen chi-le yi-bai ge de pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF 100 CL DE apple
 ‘Shufen ate 100 apples.’

⁴² In a *de*-nominal, [XP de YP], XP is a major constituent of the nominal (Zhang 2012b). A possible derivation of such a nominal is the following basic steps, where *de* is a realization of *n*. But the argumentation of this book is independent of the hypothesis of the derivation (cf. Li 2012).

<i> [XP YP]; <ii> YP [XP t_{YP}]; <iii> de [YP [XP t_{YP}]]; <iv> [_{nP} [XP t_{YP}] [_n de [YP t_i]]]

But I do not assume that *de*, as well as other functional elements, has a unique syntactic position (see Li 2012).

- b. Shufen chi-le [[[yi-bai ge pingguo] ~~name duo~~] de pingguo].
 Shufen eat-PRF 100 CL apple that many DE apple
- (320)a. Shufen chi-le san-fen-zhi-yi li de ganmao-yao.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-third CL DE cold-pill
 ‘Shufen took one third of a cold-pill.’
- b. Shufen chi-le [[[san-fen-zhi-yi li ganmao-yao] ~~name duo~~] de ganmao-yao].
 Shufen eat-PRF one-third CL cold-pill that much DE cold-pill

In (319b), the antecedent of *name duo* ‘that many’ is the numeral expression *yi-bai ge pingguo* ‘one hundred CL apple’, which is a syntactic constituent.⁴³ The deletion of the noun, i.e., *pingguo* ‘apple’ in (319b), is an instance of Backward Deletion, in which the licensing string (“antecedent”) occurs to the right of the ellipsis site, and both the licensing string and the ellipsis site must be right-peripheral in their respective domains (Wilder 1997: 92). In (321), for instance, Backward Deletion of *any of our sales people*, which is the object in the relative clause of the subject, is licensed by the object of the verb *like* (Wilder 1997: 87):

- (321) [Anyone [who meets ~~any of our sales people~~]]
 [really comes to like any of our sales people]

Similarly, in (319b), the ellipsis site of *pingguo* is right-peripheral in the domain of [*yi-bai ge pingguo*], and its licensing string *pingguo* is right-peripheral in the domain of the object of the verb *chi-le* ‘eat-PRF’.

The operation of the deletion of the string *name duo* ‘that many’ in (319b) is parallel to the operation of the deletion of *name* in (318c). The nonparallel details of the two operations can also be explained. In (318c), the delimitable word *da* ‘big’ may not be deleted with *name* ‘that’, since its absence will lead to a different reading. Compare (318b) with (322).

- (322) Shufen mai-le yi ge zhima de wanju.
 Shufen buy-PRF one CL sesame DE toy
 ‘Shufen bought a toy that is made of sesame seeds.’

Following the same recoverability principle in deletion (Hankamer 1973, Chomsky 1965, 1968), the delimitable word *duo* in (319b) must be deleted together with *name*, since its presence may lead to a partitive reading of *duo* (see 4.3.2), which is not the intended reading. Compare (319a) with (323).

- (323) Shufen chi-le yi-bai ge duo de pingguo.
 Shufen eat-PRF one-hundred CL more DE apple
 ‘Shufen ate more than 100 apples.’

It is thus the general recovery condition of PF deletion that explains why the delimitable word must not be deleted in (318), and must be deleted in (319).

There is a similarity between the *de* version of a numeral expression and the elliptical comparative construction in (318). As noted in Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 392), in the *de* version of a container measure construction, the referent of a container measure does not have to be present in the discourse. In (324a), there are two container-denoting words, *wan* ‘bowl’ and *bei* ‘cup’, and neither is followed by *de*. It seems that there are two elements

⁴³ *Name* ‘so, that’ has a distal feature, in contrast to *zheme* ‘this’, which has a proximal feature. The latter may not be bound (cf. Ducceschi 2012), and therefore, *name* in all of the examples discussed here may not be replaced by *zheme*.

competing for the container instrument for the single drinking event. The sentence is found to be unacceptable. In (324b), however, *bei* is followed by *de*, but *wan* is not. In this case, it is clear that *wan* denotes the instrument, and *bei*, like *sheng* ‘liter’, denotes a measure unit. In the discourse context of (324b), no cup has to be present. The wine can be contained in a jar or a bottle.

- (324)a. *Ta yong xiao wan he-le san bei jiu.
 he with small bowl drink-PRF three cup wine
 b. Ta yong xiao wan he-le san bei de jiu.
 he with small bowl drink-PRF three cup DE wine
 ‘He drank three cupfuls of wine from a small bowl.’

In the elliptical comparative construction in (318), similarly, the referent of *zhima* ‘sesame seed’ does not have to occur in the discourse, and usually it does not. In this sense, (318) and the *de* construction in (324b) are similar. What is relevant here is the property under the comparison: size in (318) and volume in (324b).

Two arguments support this elliptical comparative analysis of the *de* version of individual CL constructions.

First, if an expression cannot occur in a full-fledged quantity comparative construction, it may not occur in a *de* version of a numeral expression. The forms in (325a) and (326a) are not acceptable, nor are those in (325b) and (326b). This correlation supports my hypothesis that the a-forms and b-forms are derivationally related.

- | | | |
|---|----|---|
| (325)a. *[yixie shu name duo de shu]
some book that many DE book
Lit.: ‘as many as some books’ | => | b. *yixie de shu
some DE book |
| (326)a. *[mei (yi) ben shu name duo de shu]
every one CL book that many DE book
Lit.: ‘as many as every book’ | => | b. *mei (yi) ben de shu
every one CL DE book |

Second, if a nominal has an exclusive non-quantity reading in a certain context, it may not function as an antecedent of *name duo* ‘that many’, and consequently *de* may not follow the CL of such a nominal. According to Li (1998), Chinese operator *dou* ‘all’ ranges over an entire set of individuals to derive a universal expression, and the operator *you* ‘exist, have’ asserts the existence of individuals. “The number expression occurring with *dou* and *you* must be interpreted as denoting individuals, rather than quantity.” (p. 697) Li’s two examples are cited here as (327a) and (327b):

- (327)a. San ge xuesheng dou lai zher le.
 three CL student all come here PAR
 ‘The three students all came here.’
 b. You san ge xuesheng lai zher le.
 have three CL student come here PAR
 ‘There are three students that came here.’

As expected, *de* may follow neither the CL of the nominal that is in construal with *dou*, as seen in (328a), nor the CL of the nominal that is in construal with *you*, as seen in (328b). This is in contrast to the examples in (311) and (312), in which a quantity context is provided and *de* may occur.

- (328)a. San ge (*de) pingguo dou lan le.
 three CL DE apple all rotten PAR
 ‘The three apples all got rotten.’
 b. You san ge (*de) pingguo lan le.
 have three CL DE apple rotten PAR
 ‘There are three apples that got rotten.’

In my elliptical comparative perspective, *de* introduces a modifier to the left of another element (i.e., the modifiee). The surface order is further derived by ellipsis. The syntactic position of *de* is the same as that of (318c). Crucially, the noun following *de* is not in a numeral expression at all. The noun that is in a numeral expression has been deleted, and the containing numeral expression is embedded in the modifier. Thus the position of *de* in this case does not show the constituency of the elements within a numeral expression (contra Hsieh 2008: 45; X. P. Li 2011: 115; 119).

We have seen that the *de* version of the right-branching structure is constrained by the quantity-reading condition, but for the *de* version of the left-branching structure, this condition is not seen. This contrast can be explained by the hypothesis that when *de* occurs in a left-branching numeral expression, it is ambiguous between the *de* that introduces a comparative modifier and the *de* that does not. It is in the latter case that *de* occurs between the two syntactic constituents of the left-branching structure, i.e., between the numeral-unit-word string and the NP. In the former case, *de* is a comparative modification marker, which is external to the numeral expression. The two analyses in (329) show the contrast:

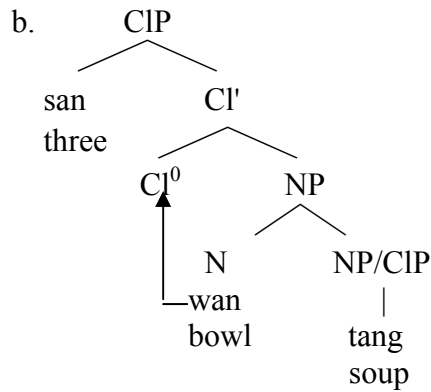
- (329)a. [[san bei jiu]—~~name-*duo*~~] de jiu b. [[san bei] de jiu]
 three cup wine that much DE wine three cup DE wine
 ‘three cupfuls of wine’ ‘three cups of wine’

In (329a), *de* is out of the numeral expression *san bei jiu* ‘three cup wine’, whereas in (329b), *de* occurs between two syntactic constituents of a numeral expression, *san bei* ‘three cup’ and *jiu* ‘wine’.

I have proposed a fine-grained analysis of the *de* versions of numeral expressions, to capture the constraint on the occurrence of *de* with individual, individuating, and kind CL constructions, and the absence of the constraint on the other types of numeral expressions. This analysis is different from Cheng & Sybesma’s (1998) relativization analysis, Tsai’s (2003: 173) NP-internal DP analysis, and Tsai’s (2011) clitic analysis, to be briefly illustrated below.

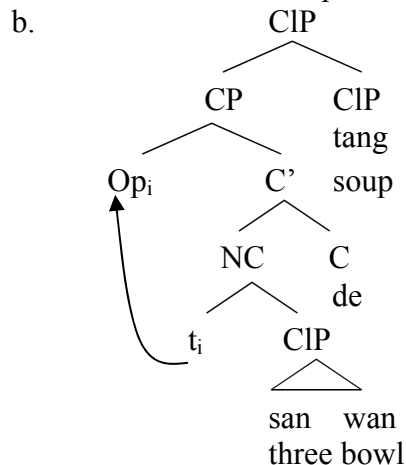
In Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 406), the *de*-less numeral expression (330a) has the structure in (330b), where a container measure word moves from N to CL. The structure is a right-branching one, which I have argued against in 4.2.

- (330)a. san wan tang
 three bowl soup
 ‘three bowls of soup’



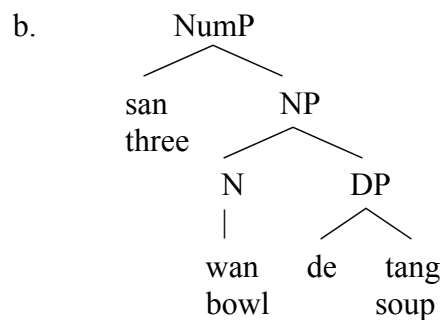
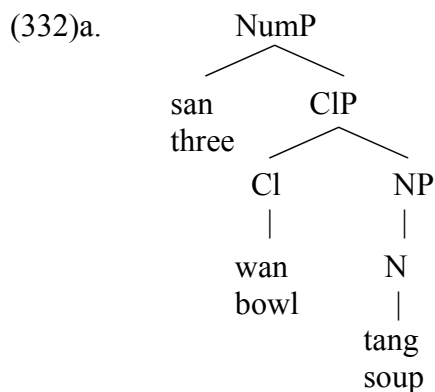
In their relativization analysis of the *de* version of numeral expressions, (331a) has the structure in (331b) (Cheng & Sybesma 1998: 398), where *de* is always base-generated between *san wan* ‘three bowl’ and *tang* ‘soup’. This is compatible with my (329b), but not (329a).

(331)a. san wan de tang
three bowl DE soup
‘three bowls of soup’



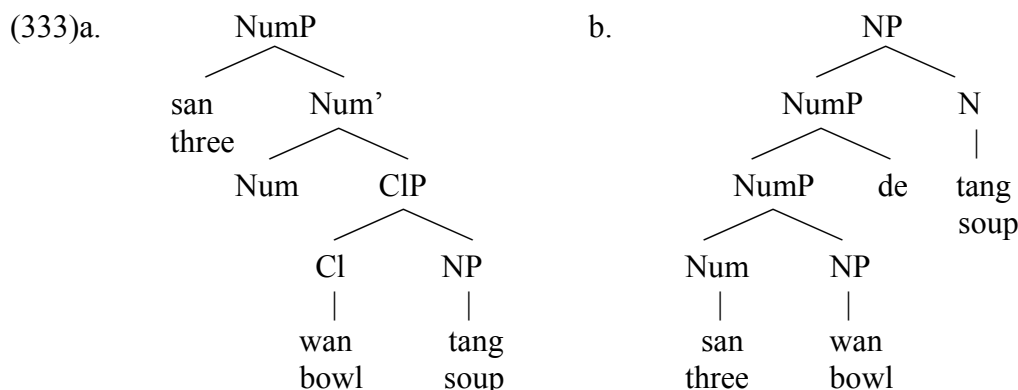
(NC = Nominal Clause)

In Tsai’s (2003: 173) NP-internal DP analysis, (330a) and (331a) have the structures in (332a) and (332b), respectively. Both structures are right-branching, which cannot capture the facts presented in 4.2 of this book.



In Tsai’s (2011: 7) clitic analysis, (330a) and (331a) have the structures in (333a) and

(333b), respectively (no argument is given in his paper for the branching contrast), and *de* in (333b) is analyzed as a clitic.



(333a) is similar to the two trees in (332), and thus it shares their empirical problems.

Tsai claims that in other constructions, *de* heads a functional projection and thus licenses an empty category to its right; however, since *de* in (333b) is a clitic, it cannot serve as a licenser of an empty category to its right. But, morphologically, we know that *de* is an enclitic in all constructions, in need of a phonological host to its left (Huang 1989). There is no non-clitic form of *de*. If we assume the *de* in (333b) is special in other aspects, we need to identify the aspects.

Moreover, none of the three analysis, the relativization analysis, the NP-internal DP analysis, and the clitic analysis, considers the *de* constructions of other types of unit words. Accordingly, the arguments for my ellipsis comparative analysis of the constructions have not been taken into account.

4.6. Chapter summary

In this chapter I have investigated the constituency of numeral expressions in Chinese. I have argued that the constituency of the numeral expression with an individual, individuating, and kind CL is different from that of the constructions with other types of unit words.

I have discussed four issues: the scope of a left-peripheral modifier; the effect of adjective association; the independent syntactic function of the combination of a numeral and a unit word; and the semantic selection of a unit word on a noun. Based on the different behaviors of the different types of unit words, I have identified two structures: a left-branching structure for numeral expressions of container measures, standard measures, partitive CLs, and collective CLs; and a right-branching structure for numeral expressions of individual, individuating, and kind CLs. In the former structure, the unit word does not C-Command the NP, whereas in the latter structure, the unit word does C-Command the NP.

I have also falsified invalid arguments such as the adjacency of a numeral and a unit word and the position of the partitive markers *duo* ‘more’ and *ban* ‘half’. I have also argued against the quantity-individual semantic mappings with the different syntactic structures. Finally, I have presented a comparative deletion analysis of the constructions in which the functional particle *de* follows a unit word.

A further issue to be investigated is the categorial labels of the nodes of the different structures. This issue will be discussed in the next chapter.

5.1. Introduction

The goal of this chapter is to formulate syntactic structures to represent the major relations and interactions among different elements of a numeral expression, in both CL languages such as Chinese and non-CL languages.

In Chapter 4, we have reached the conclusion that there are two basic configurations of numeral expressions in Mandarin Chinese: a left-branching structure for constructions of container measures, standard measures, partitive CLs, collective CLs, and a right-branching structure for constructions of individual, individuating, and kind CLs. The unit word does not C-Command the NP in the former structure, but it does in the latter structure. Thus the basic hierarchical relations have been identified, but neither the syntactic labels for the constituents of the structures, nor the possible derivations of the structures have been discussed.

In this chapter, we argue for two functional projections below DP: UnitP and DelP, in addition to NumP (or called #P or #^{max}), which represents number (e.g. Ritter 1991, 1995), and QuantP, which hosts quantifiers such as *much* (Borer 2005). Theoretically, we adopt the theory that each syntactic head carries one and only one feature (Kayne 2005b; Szabolcsi 2011: 2), although a morph may bear different features. The two newly identified features, [Numerable] and [Delimitable], head UnitP and DelP, respectively.

With the two functional projections, we will present our derivations of the left- and right-branching structures of Chinese numeral expressions, and address the realizations of the head of UnitP in different constructions, both cross-linguistically and in the same language.

I argue that a numeral and a unit word hold a Spec-Head relation of UnitP in certain steps of the derivation, and thus the occurrence of either of them means the projection of UnitP. But the occurrence of a plural marker correlates with the projection of NumP, rather than UnitP. In the structure of mass nominals, there is neither UnitP nor DelP. This analysis is thus different from Borer (2005) in the base-position of numerals, in the syntactic relation between number markers and the CLs of numeral expressions, and in the functional projections to encode countability. In discussing the cross-linguistic variation in the realizations of unit elements, the current research also challenges Wilhelm's (2008) numeral-oriented analysis.

The chapter is organized as follows. Section 5.2 argues that the unit word in a numeral expression heads UnitP, and Section 5.3 argues that NumP is for number markers, including the CLs in SUWNs and RUWNs in Mandarin Chinese. Section 5.4 then argues for the projection of DelP, to host delimitive adjectives. Section 5.5 presents possible derivations of both left- and right-branching numeral constructions in Chinese. In Section 5.6, I use the two features, [Numerable] and [Delimitable], to represent various kinds of null versions of individual and individuating CLs in different languages. Section 5.7 is a brief summary.

5.2. The projection of UnitP

5.2.1 Unit words and the head of UnitP

We have seen in Chapter 2 that a unit word is [+Numerable] and is thus always countable. It has been proposed by many syntacticians that the countability of human language is represented by a functional projection. Chinese CLs have been generally considered to be the realization of the head of this functional projection. However, different scholars give different labels to the functional category, e.g., DivP or CLP (e.g., Borer 2005). As I argued in 2.7.2, the general function of CLs in numeral expressions is to represent a unit for counting, telling us what counts as one in counting. This general function of CLs is more than dividing. I thus

do not use the label DivP.⁴⁴

CLs in numeral expressions have been treated as nominal auxiliaries in Chao (1948, 1968: 584), Lu (1951: 42), Gao (1948: Ch. 4, *fu-mingci* ‘auxiliary noun’), and Blühndorn (2006 “auxiliar-substantive”), as numeral auxiliaries in Ōta (2003 [1958]: 146), as light nouns in Wiltchko (2005) and Huang (2009), and as “leached grammaticalized nouns” in Gerner (2010: 275). Bowers (1991: 19) assumes that in numeral expressions in Mandarin Chinese, “the classifiers are phonetic realizations of Nm”, which is a functional head parallel to a functional head of a clause. In all of these works, CLs of numeral expressions are claimed to be parallel to functional elements such as auxiliaries of clauses, although no systematic argument has been given.

Before we see the similarities between verbal auxiliaries and CLs, let us review our understanding of the notion of verbal auxiliary or auxiliary in a clause. It is generally recognized that a word that ‘helps’ the main verb in expressing certain moods, aspects, tenses or voices, in a simplex sentence, is an auxiliary verb. For instance, *was* is the passive auxiliary in (334a), *has* is the perfect auxiliary in (334b), and *should*, *have* and *been* are the modal, perfect and passive auxiliaries respectively in (334c).

- (334)a. Greg was defeated.
b. Miguel has defeated Greg.
c. Erik should have been present.

We find at least five shared properties between auxiliaries of clauses and CLs in numeral expressions (an additional one, the place-holder argument, will be presented next chapter). If the former may head a functional projection, so may the latter.

First, neither auxiliaries of clauses nor CLs in numeral expressions may function as an argument or predicate. The apparent predicate use of modals can be the result of ellipsis of the following VP. For instance, to the right of *keyi* ‘may’ in B’s answer in (335), the VP *youyong* ‘swim’ is elided, and the ellipsis is licensed by the availability of the overt form *youyong* in A’s question.

- (335) A. Wo keyi youyong ma?
I may swim Q
‘May I swim?’
B. Keyi.
‘You may.’

Second, neither auxiliaries of clauses nor CLs in numeral expressions may have any thematic relation to any nominal. In this respect, CLs are different from light verbs and their nominalized version light nouns, since it is generally assumed that light verbs do have thematic relation with an external or causer argument of a clause.

Third, both auxiliaries of clauses and CLs in numeral expressions select substantive categories. The former selects verbal phrases and the latter selects nominal phrases.

Fourth, they both can be absent or have null forms in certain constructions and in certain languages. Not all clauses have overt auxiliaries (Kayne 2012b: Sec. 4). Similarly, in Chinese, idiomatic expressions and list contexts no CL occurs between a numeral and a noun, as seen in (336).

⁴⁴ Cheng & Sybesma (1999) claim that CLP is the counterpart of DP in non-CL languages. The claim receives critical response from Wu & Bodomo (2009). Ndayiragije & Nikema (2011) further show that in some languages with both determiners and CLs, a CL may occur with a determiner in the same nominal.

- (336) wu ma fen shi [idiomatic expression in Mandarin Chinese]
 five horse divide body
 ‘five horses pull a body apart (as an ancient death penalty).’

Fifth, they both license ellipsis, like many other head elements.⁴⁵ As in other languages (e.g., Hankamer 1971; Sag 1980; Lobeck 1987, 1995; Chao 1988, Zagana 1988), head elements in Chinese may license the ellipsis of the string to their right, whereas phrasal elements may not do so. In (337a), the overt modal *hui* ‘will’ licenses the VP ellipsis, whereas in (337b), the adverbial NP *jīn-nián* ‘this year’ does not license the VP ellipsis.

- (337)a. Baoyu hui mai baoxian, Daiyu ye hui ~~mai baoxian~~.
Baoyu will buy insurance Daiyu also will buy insurance
'Baoyu will buy insurance, and Daiyu will also buy insurance.'
b. *Baoyu qu-nian mai-le baoxian, Daiyu jin-nian ye ~~mai-le baoxian~~.
Baoyu last-year buy-PRF insurance Daiyu this-year also buy-PRF insurance

Parallel to the head elements that license ellipsis, the CL *ben* in the second conjunct of (338) may also license an empty NP to its right, and the meaning of the NP can be recovered from an NP in the first conjunct, i.e., *shu* ‘book’.

- (338) Baoyu mai-le san ben shu, Daiyu ye mai-le san ben shu.
Baoyu buy-PRF three CL book Daiyu also buy-PRF three CL book
'Baoyu bought three books, and so did Daiyu.'

Head elements can not only license ellipsis, but also be stranded. In (339a), the modal *keyi* ‘can’ is stranded. The missing VP has a dependency with the left-peripheral *mai xiaoshuo* ‘buy novel’. In (339b), the word *nali* ‘there’ is not a head element and thus it cannot be stranded. Similar to the head element in (339a), the individual CL *ben* in (339c) is also stranded, and the missing NP has a dependency with the topic *xiaoshuo* ‘novel’. This fact shows that CLs in numeral expressions are head elements.⁴⁶

- (339)a. Mai xiaoshuo, Baoyu (dangran) keyi.
buy novel Baoyu of.course can
'Buy novels, of course Baoyu can.'
- b. *Mai xiaoshuo, Baoyu (danran) keyi zai nali.
buy novel Baoyu of.course can at there
- c. Xiaoshuo, Baoyu yinggai mai wu ben.
novel Baoyu should buy five CL
'Novels, Baoyu should buy five copies.'

The five shared properties indeed show that CLs in numeral expressions behave like

⁴⁵ I adopt the theory that only head elements may license ellipsis. This theory does not entail that all kinds of head elements may do so. The complementizer *for*, the determiner *the*, and the non-finite Infl *to* in ECM and raising constructions do not license the ellipsis of their complements. See Bošković (2012) for a discussion on what kinds of heads may license ellipsis.

⁴⁶ The following question has been raised to me: why the string after the unit word *bei* in (ia) may not move, if the unit word is a head element. My answer is that *de* and the element to its right never form a maximal projection (Zhang 1999; 2009), thus such a string may not move (Chomsky 1994; 1995: 253).

(i) a. [[san bei] DE jiu] (= (329b)) b. *[de jiu]_i [[san bei] t_i]
 three cup DE wine DE wine three cup
 'three cups of wine'

auxiliaries in the nominal domain.⁴⁷ However, CLs also have certain properties that seem to be shared with substantive elements, rather than functional elements.

The most telling property in this respect is that individual, individuating, and kind CLs have selectional restrictions (4.2.4). In the literature, it has been claimed that elements with selectional properties should be treated as substantive, rather than functional elements (Cardinaletti & Giusti 2006: 52). According to Ramchand (2008: 117), “Selection can be achieved via category labels on lexical items plus a constrained theory of lexical insertion (which we need anyway).” It is plausible that a certain functional category represents the syntactic position of counting units, and various CLs are just the lexical realizations of the category. Then it is possible that various CLs have their own combination properties.

But still, one wonders why there are so many CLs of the same type. As we know, all CLs are developed from substantial elements such as nouns and verbs. As realizations of a functional head, CLs seem to keep the selectional restrictions of the original source. This suggests that grammaticalization does not have to affect all formal features of a lexical item in the same speed. From a different perspective, if formal features of various types can be bundled into formatives in various ways, it should not be surprising that there are gradient differences between substantive and functional elements. CLs may belong to what Borer (2005: 100) calls “twilight zone between the substantive and the functional”, or semi-lexical category in the sense of Corver & van Riemsdijk (2001), or functional category in the faculty of language in the broad sense, rather than in the narrow sense (see Déchaine & Tremblay 2011). In any case, the fact that CLs exhibit selectional restrictions may enrich our current understanding of the contrasts between functional and substantive elements.

A further discussion of two relevant issues is in order here. First, in Mandarin Chinese, non-kind CLs can be modified by delimitive adjectives (2.4.3). However, if this type of adjectives are hosted by a specific functional projection (to be argued in 5.4), there is no problem for two functional projections to co-occur in a specific hierarchy. Importantly, CLs may not be modified by other types of adjectives, unlike nouns.

Second, CLs have been claimed to be an open system (T’sou 1976: 1217; Loke 1997; Aikhenvald 2003: 99; H. Zhang 2007: 57; Wu & Bodomo 2009: 490). My own examination tells me that in Mandarin Chinese, the alleged open system is usually seen in container measures (e.g., *san CD wenjian* ‘three CDs of files’) (Chao’s 1968 so-called temporary measures are either container measures or nouns in EYCs). Such unit words occur in the left-branch types of numeral expressions only. In my analysis to be presented in 5.5.2, these types of unit words are base-generated at N and they surface at the same position as other unit words by movement. Since the elements occurring at N come from an open system, it is natural that these unit words look like in an open system. Gebhardt (2011: 127) is right in saying that CLs like *ben* (for books) and container measures such as *bao* ‘bag’ “should not be lumped together”, when we decide whether unit words are functional or lexical. On the other hand, occasionally, we do see new individual or individuating CLs (e.g., *san qiu bingqiling* ‘three CL ice-cream’, where *qiu* is from the noun *qiu* ‘ball’). In such cases, we see the on-going grammaticalization from a noun to a CL. The new function of the lexical item in the new syntactic position (i.e., occurring between a numeral and a noun in the language) does not mean the syntactic category in the new syntactic position is lexical rather than functional.

With the above discussion as a background, I adopt the well-established theory that CLs are realizations of an independent functional head. I label the projection UnitP, and go ahead to examine its structural properties.

⁴⁷ The five similarities between auxiliaries and CLs also indicate that CLs are more qualified to be treated as nominal auxiliaries than articles (cf. Roehrs 2009). Articles may not have a null form in article languages and do not license ellipsis. The same is true of demonstratives, another kind of functional elements in nominals.

5.2.2 The Spec-Head relation between a numeral and a unit word

In a numeral expression, a numeral and a unit word exhibit a dependency relation. Counting makes sense only when we know what counts as one unit. The quantity of *two bags of apples* is different from *two slices of apples*, although the numerals are the same. In the literature, as Li (1924 [1992: 81]) notes that a CL in a numeral expression encodes the unit for counting. From a semantic perspective, a numeral needs an operator to access the unit for counting. In Krifka (1995: 400; also Wilhelm *ibid.*: 55), the operator is called OU (for Object Unit), and a unit word such as a CL is a linguistic form of OU. If no unit word shows up, the unit meaning is part of the semantics of either the noun or the numeral in non-CL languages (Quine 1968; also see Wilhelm *ibid.*). In Kobuchi-Philip (2007), a unit word is the semantic argument of a numeral. In Mandarin Chinese, since a numeral always occurs with a unit word such as a CL, when it combines with a noun, the semantic argument of the numeral is always overt.

This semantic dependency in counting, regardless of whether it is an operator-variable relation or argumentation relation, is between a numeral and one and only one counting unit. This accounts for Ratliff's (1991: 696; see also Bisang 1993: 24) "double classifier constraint", since each instance of counting may have only one counting unit.⁴⁸

The main semantic function of CLs in numeral expressions is to specify a unit for counting, rather than to make a semantic classification (see 2.7.3). Therefore, the co-occurrence of CLs with numerals makes the CLs in numeral expressions different from other types of CLs that are incorporated into verbal expressions in sign languages (e.g., Sandler & Lillo-Martin. 2006) or noun CLs in Bantu languages (e.g., Aikhenvald 2003; Svenonius's 2008 SortP).

While some scholars call CLs in numeral expressions nominal auxiliaries, as I mentioned in the last subsection, others (e.g., Ōta 2003 [1958]: 146) call them numeral auxiliaries. We can see the general acknowledgment of the dependency between numerals and CLs in numeral expressions.

In the last subsection, we have argued for the head status of CLs, and the above discussion shows the dependency between CLs and numerals in numeral expression. We now turn to the status of numerals.

Cross-linguistically, numerals have been identified as NPs or APs (e.g., Zweig 2006, Corver & Zwarts 2006, Corver et al. 2007: 755; Stavrou & Terzi 2008).⁴⁹ Numerals in numeral expressions have been assumed to be base-generated at a Spec position (Borer 2005: 96), and the relation between a numeral and a CL is represented as a Spec-Head relation in Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 406). Danon (2012) claims that both a Spec and a head position are possible for the base-position of numerals, cross-linguistically and even in the same language. In Aboh et al. (2011: 8), it is assumed that numerals are phrasal in English but are heads in Mandarin Chinese. Their theoretical background is that modification possibility can show the phrase level of an element. Their only argument is that in (340a) the numeral is modified by *exactly*, but in its Chinese counterpart, (340b), however, the adverb *jiu* 'exactly' must precede the whole VP, rather than the numeral *san* 'three'. This argument is weak. In (340c), any of the three adverbs, *zonggong* 'in total', *dayue* 'estimatly', and *zuzu* 'as many as', may occur to the immediate left of the numeral. The constraint on the adverb *jiu* 'exactly' is lexical, and

⁴⁸ Counting may use a complex unit, e.g., *kilometer per hour*, or *liang-ci* 'unit of vehicle per time' (see Zhang 2002), but it may not use two different units.

I also put aside other uses of CLs (Bisang 1999). See Piriawiboon (2010: 110) for an analysis of multiple occurrences of CLs in one numeral expression in Thai. Also see Chapter 6 for my research of double CL constructions in Mandarin Chinese.

⁴⁹ Yang (2005: 45) also claims that numerals are phrasal. But her two arguments are either incomplete or unconvincing. One argument is that a numeral can be replaced by the question phrase *ji* 'how many'. But in order to show the numeral replaced by *ji* is phrasal, we need to see *ji* is phrasal. Another argument is that numerals can be conjoined. But conjuncts do not have to be phrasal (Zhang 2009b).

thus does not apply to other adverbs. Therefore, numerals in Chinese, as in English, can be modified.

- (340)a. I bought exactly three books.
 b. Wo jiu mai-le san ben shu.
 I exactly buy-PRF three CL book
 ‘I bought exactly three books.’
 c. Wo mai-le {zonggong/dayue/zuzu} san ben shu.
 I buy-PRF in.total/estimatly/as.many.as three CL book
 ‘I bought {three books in total/three books estimatly/as many as three books.’

The non-head status of numerals can be supported by the fact that unlike head elements in Chinese (see 5.2.1 above), numerals may not license ellipsis or be stranded. In (341), the numeral *san* ‘three’ may not license the ellipsis of string to its right, i.e., *ben shu* ‘CL book’.⁵⁰

- (341) Baoyu mai-le san ben shu, Daiyu ye mai-le san *(ben shu).
 Baoyu buy-PRF three CL book Daiyu also buy-PRF three CL book
 ‘Baoyu bought three books, and so did Daiyu.’

One might wonder why the deletion in English examples such as (342) does not require this licensing condition, assuming numerals in English are not head elements.

- (342) Bill bought five books and Kim bought six ~~books~~.

In fact, we can find other examples in English in which deletion does not have to follow a head element. Assume sluicing is derived by deletion in English (Merchant 2001). In (343), the string after *which model*, which is not a head element, is deleted.⁵¹

- (343) They discussed a certain model, but they didn’t know which model.

To represent the dependency between a numeral and a unit word, and the non-head status of numerals, following the basis idea of Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 406) and Watanabe (2006; 2010), I assume that a numeral is base-generated at the Spec of UnitP and an individual, individuating, or kind CL, is realization of Unit. The base-positions of the elements in (344a) are shown in (344b):

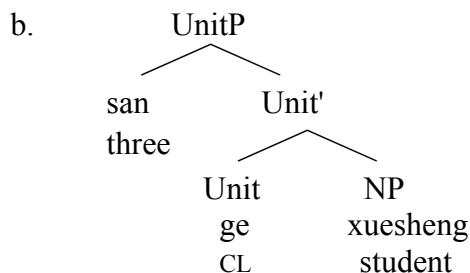
⁵⁰ Examples like the following do not seem to pattern with (341b). In (i), the numeral *si-bai* ‘four hundred’ is stranded. A plausible analysis of such an example is that the final morpheme of the numeral, *bai* ‘hundred’ in (i), is reanalyzed as a collective CL, similar to *shuang* ‘pair’ or *da* ‘dozen’. See 2.3.1.

(i) Baoyu mai-le san-bai ben shu, Daiyu mai-le si-bai.
 Baoyu buy-PRF three-hundred CL book Daiyu buy-PRF four-hundred
 ‘Baoyu bought 300 books, and Daiyu bought 400.’

⁵¹ Chinese sluicing constructions, however, are not derived by deletion (Wei 2011). Instead, the *wh*-phrase in the constructions is the predicate of an empty subject. In (ia), the copula *shi* ‘be’ to the left of *shui* ‘who’ is obligatory. As illustrated in (ib), there is an empty subject for the predicate *shui*, but no deletion occurs in this sluicing construction.

(i) a. Shufen gu-le yi ge zhushou, dan wo bu zhidao *(shi) shui.
 Shufen hire-PRF one CL assistant but I not know be who
 ‘Shufen hired an assistant, but I don’t know who.’
 b. Shufen gu-le [yi ge zhushou]_i, dan wo bu zhidao [pro_i shi shui].
 Shufen hire-PRF one CL assistant but I not know be who

- (344)a. san ge xuesheng
three CL student
'three students'



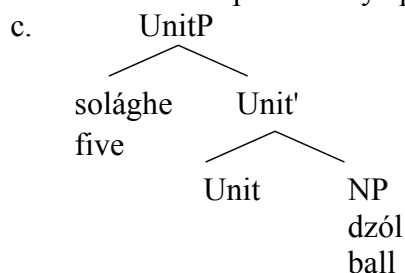
In the structure in (344b), the numeral asymmetrically C-Commands the unit word. The locality of the dependency between the two elements is reduced to the “closest c-command” (see Chomsky 2000: 122).

Since a numeral and a unit word hold a Spec-Head relation in certain step of the derivation, UnitP is projected if a numeral occurs, regardless of whether there is any overt form for the head of this projection. But the occurrence of a plural marker does not correlate with the projection of UnitP.

Accordingly, for a numeral expression without a plural marker and a CL, UnitP is still projected. In this case, the head of Unit is null. The base-positions of the elements in (345a) (Wilhelm 2008: 46) are represented in (345c). The string *wu ma* ‘five horse’ in (345b), an expression in Classical Chinese or idiomatic expression in modern Chinese, has a similar structure. It is possible that in a non-CL language, individual CLs consistently have a null form (see 5.6.2), whereas in Chinese idiomatic constructions, an individual CL shows up in the form of a zero-allomorph.

- (345)a. solághe dzól [Dëne]
five ball
'five balls'

- b. wu ma fen shi [idiomatic expression in Mandarin Chinese]
five horse divide body
'five horses pull a body apart (as an ancient death penalty).'



I put aside the details of the categories of the Spec and Complement of Unit. Such details do not affect the argumentation of this book. Regarding the Spec of Unit, it needs further study to specify whether the category of numerals in a specific language or construction is nominal or adjectival, or both (Zweig 2006, Danon 2009). Regarding the Complement of Unit, it is possible that the nominal complement of Unit is nP, or other functional categories (see 5.4).

5.2.3 The surface position of numerals and other quantifiers

There are two major kinds of quantifiers: those that may be followed by the functional word

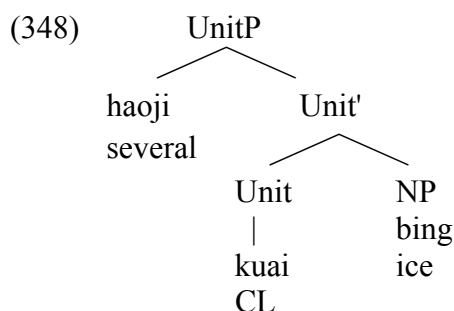
de and those that may not, as shown in (346a) and (346b), respectively (2.5). As in Chapter 2, we only consider the ones that do not occur with *de*.

- (346)a. daliang (de) xuesheng b. haoji (*de) ge xuesheng
many DE student several DE CL student
'most students' 'several students'

We have showed that within the quantifiers that do not occur with *de*, some of them, including numerals, must be followed by a unit word, and some reject a unit word, when they occur with a noun. The examples of the two types are in (347a) and (347b), respectively. We have also mentioned in 2.5.2 that the latter type of quantifiers, together with those patterning with *daliang* in (346a), is not used for counting.

- (347)a. haoji *(kuai) bing b. yidianr (*kuai) bing
several CL ice a.little CL ice
'several chunks of ice' 'a little ice'

I have just argued that the base-position of a numeral in a numeral expression is Spec of UnitP. I extend this claim to all quantifiers that need to occur with a unit word. The occurrence restrictions of such quantifiers are thus represented by the Spec-Head relation. So *haoji* ‘several’ in (347a) is also base-generated at Spec of UnitP. The base-positions of the elements in (347a) are shown in (348):

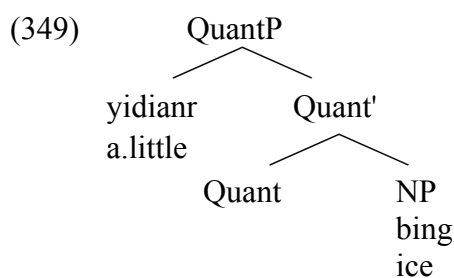


Moreover, following Borer (2005) and Watanabe (2010: 46), I assume that all kinds of quantifiers surface at Spec of QuantP. In Gebhardt (2009), a numeral quantifier has the feature [+Absolute], for a precise quantity, and a non-numeral quantifier has the feature [-Absolute], for a non-precise quantity.⁵²

One fact to support the same surface position for numerals and quantifiers is that in the Shangzhou dialect of Mandarin Chinese, the quantifier [tɕi²¹] ‘how many’ undergoes the same kind of segmental and tone changes as other monosyllabic numerals (i.e., from 1 to 10), when they are followed by the general CL [kə⁵⁵] (C. Zhang 2007).

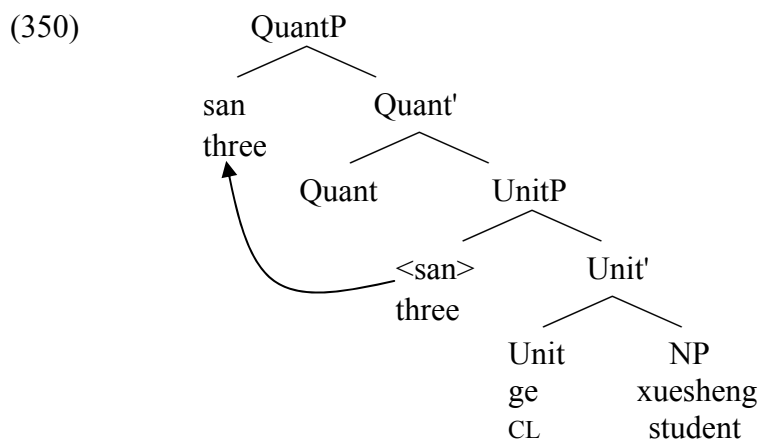
QuantP can be projected without UnitP (roughly equivalent to her Div^{max}). If there is neither a numeral nor a unit word, as in (347b), UnitP is not projected. The structure of (347b) is (349):

⁵² See Watanabe (2010: 45) for a claim that all [-Absolute] quantifiers (vague-quantity expressions, in his term) in Japanese are merged in Spec of QuantP.



QuantP encodes quantity, while UnitP encodes counting. Only counting needs numrals and counting unit. Some animals are able to discriminate between different quantities without counting (see Agrillo et al. 2011 and the references thereof). Moreover “some developmental studies indicate that infants may also preferentially use continuous variables in quantity discrimination” (Agrillo et al. *ibid.* p. 281). In Feigenson et al. (2002), for example, 12-month-old children were allowed to choose one of the containers, after they saw crackers placed sequentially into two containers. It is observed that infants were able to choose the larger quantity when comparing one cracker versus two, and two crackers versus three, however, when crackers were of different sizes, the choice was determined by total surface area or total volume (Agrillo et al. *ibid.* p. 282). Thus the separation of a quantity-denoting category (QuantP) and a counting-denoting category (UnitP) has its cognitive foundation.

I also adopt Borer & Ouwayda’s (2010: 12) and Watanabe’s (2010: 46) claim that a numeral must move from its base-position to Spec of QuantP. A numeral never occurs with another quantifier. This fact can be captured if numerals and quantifiers compete for the same surface position. So this numeral-raising hypothesis is plausible to us. Moreover, a numeral does not have to surface next to a unit word, whereas the base-generated Spec-Head relation may not be intervened by any other element (e.g., an adjective). From this perspective, the raising of a numeral away from UnitP is also plausible. Accordingly, a more complete form of (344b) should be (350):



Presumably, parallel to a numeral, quantifiers like the one in (348) are also raised to Spec of QuantP.

The Spec of QuantP thus must contain a quantifier such as a numeral. The whole QuantP encodes a quantized entity, which can function as an incremental theme of a telic event (Krifka 1989, Dowty 1991), as shown by the example in (351).

- (351) Yani manmande ao-hua-le yidianr bingtang.
 Yani slow bake-melt-PRF a.little sugar
 ‘Yani slowly baked a little sugar until it melted.’

Considering Li's (1998) idea that pure quantity readings are represented by a functional projection below DP, I assume that QuantP is the functional projection for such readings (I do not use her label NumP, which is for the feature number in my analysis; see next section).

Regular pronouns do not take QuantP as their antecedent (Li 1998), although an English phrase such as *that many* or Chinese phrase *name duo* 'that many' may take a QuantP as its antecedent (4.5.3). In the two examples in (352), the object of the second conjunct refers to the quantity of five copies, rather than the entities of the five books expressed by the first conjunct. This constraint separates QuantP from other kinds of nominal categories.

- (352) a. John bought five books and I also bought {that many/*them/*it}.
 b. Baoyu mai-le wu ben shu. Daiyu ye mai-le {name duo/*tamen/*ta}.
 Baoyu buy-PRF five CL book Daiyu also buy-PRF that many/3PL/3SG
 'Baoyu bought five books, and Daiyu also bought that many.'

Numerals may also move further to Spec of DP, to encode definite or generic readings. Wu (2006, contra Li & Thompson 1989: 130; Cheng & Sybesma 1999: 528-530; 2009: 144) convincingly shows that numeral-initial nominals in Mandarin Chinese can yield a definite reading (numeral-initial nominals can also be definite in the CL languages Japanese and Korean; see Downing 1996: 163 and Yi 2012: 149). In (353a) (Wu 2006: 129), *dou* 'all' does not show up, therefore, Cheng & Sybesma's (1999: 539) claim that the definite reading of a numeral-initial nominal is related to *dou* does not apply here. The preposed object *san ben shu* 'three CL book' in (353b) is also definite (Liao & Wang 2011: 158). Moreover, in (353c) (Wu & Bodomo 2009: 492), the two nominals both have a generic reading.⁵³

- (353)a. San ge wen guan xia-de zhi daduosuo.
 three CL rotten official scare-DE keep shiver
 'The three rotten officials were shivering with fear.'
 b. Wo san ben shu kan wan yihou, you mai-le ling yi ben.
 I three CL book read finish after then buy-PRF another one CL
 'After I read the three books, I bought another one.'
 c. Yi jia feiji de sudu bi yi sou lunchuan de sudu kuai.
 one CL plane DE speed than one CL ship DE speed fast
 'An airplane's speed is faster than a ship's.'

The numeral *zero* in English may move through DP to license a NPI in the clause, as in (354) (cited from Postal 2002).

- (354) Hector sent zero presents to any of his ex-wives.

5.3. The co-occurrence of QuantP, UnitP, and NumP

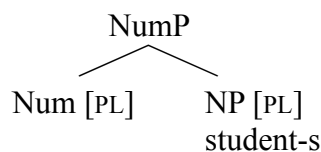
5.3.1 CLs and NumP

Adopting Ritter (1991), among others, I assume NumP (or called #P or #^{max}) is for the feature number, which is the locus of the contrast between morphological singularity and plurality (the simple [PL] feature here is enough for the purpose here; see Harbour 2007 and 2008 for a more refined feature analysis of number). The syntactic structure of the English word in (355a) is represented in (355b).

⁵³ In Wu & Bodomo's (2009: 500) structure, it is not clear where the syntactic position for a numeral is.

(355)a. students

b.



The head of NumP can be realized by an independent word, such as *mau* in the Hawaiian example in (356) (cited from Dryer 2005).

(356) ‘elua a‘u mau i‘a [Hawaiian]

two my PL fish

‘my two fish’

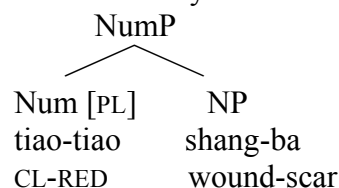
For Mandarin Chinese, NumP can host a RUWN or SUWN. Since such a nominal rejects numerals (Chapter 3), no UnitP is projected for NumP in Mandarin Chinese. The structure of the internal argument of (357a) is represented in (357b); and the structure of the internal argument of (358a) is represented in (358b) (the possible DP projection dominating NumP is omitted).⁵⁴

(357)a. Baoyu bei-shang lu-chu tiao-tiao shang-ba.

Baoyu back-on show-out CL-RED wound-scar

‘There are scars on Baoyu’s back.’

b.

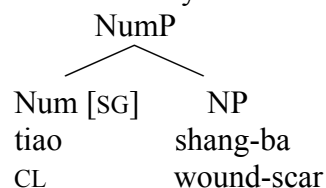


(358)a. Baoyu bei-shang lu-chu tiao shang-ba.

Baoyu back-on show-out CL wound-scar

‘There is a scar on Baoyu’s back.’

b.



So far, we have identified two syntactic positions for CLs: the head of UnitP (5.2.1 above) and the head of NumP. The latter is for the unit words in RUWNs and SUWNs.

The structure in (355b) is independent of UnitP and thus Numerability, and therefore it can also represent the so-called mass plural (2.2.6).

Moreover, although NumP is an independent functional projection, it is possible for a plural marker to host other features such as gender features in addition to a number feature, and for some other element such as adjective or determiner to exhibit number features. In the Walloon example in (359a) (cited from Bernstein 2001), the plural marker *-ès* (feminine) is

⁵⁴ Our analysis is different from Yang (2005: 85 fn. 19). In her analysis, NumP is projected above CLP. In order to generate a reduplicate CL form, a CL moves from the head of CLP to the head of NumP, and then moves further to D. At D, it is spelled out as a reduplicate form. My analysis does not have the CL-to-Num movement.

attached to the adjective, and in the German example in (359b), we see the plural article *die* (also, English indefinite article *a* has [-PL] feature; see Danon 2011: 309 for more discussion). Thus, the same ϕ -features often appear on multiple forms within the same DP, a phenomenon of agreement (Danon 2011: 303).

- (359) a. *dès vètès- ouh* [Walloon] b. *die Bücher* [German]
 some green.F.PL door the.PL book.PL
 ‘some green doors’ ‘the books’

5.3.2 Certain attested numeral and quantifier constructions

So far, we have discussed three functional projections: QuantP, UnitP, and NumP. Regarding UnitP, I have argued that a numeral and a unit word are in a Spec-Head relation. Therefore, UnitP is projected if a numeral occurs, regardless of whether there is any overt form for the head of this projection. If neither occurs, UnitP is not projected.

QuantP is projected if a quantifier occurs. In 5.2.3 I also claim that UnitP is always dominated by QuantP. So in all cases where UnitP occurs, QuantP is also projected, but not vice versa.

I have also assumed that if a number marker occurs, NumP is projected.

Some combinations of the three functional projections are listed in (360), with relevant examples. (I omit the possible projection of DP above the functional projections in (360) and omit both QuantP that dominates UnitP and possible DP in the trees in this subsection). In (360), CL refers to the CL in a numeral expression. *C means the combination is impossible in Mandarin Chinese.

(360)

	quantifier		CL	PL-marker	example	QuantP	UnitP	NumP
	non-numeral	numeral						
A	-	+	+	-	(350)	✓	✓	
B	-	+	-	-	(345a) (345b)	✓	✓	
C	+	-	+	-	(348)	✓	✓	
D	+	-	-	-	(349)	✓		
E	-	+	+	+	(361)/*C	✓	✓	✓
F	-	+	-	+	(362)/*C	✓	✓	✓
G	+	-	+	+	(364)/*C	✓	✓	✓
H	+	-	-	+	(366)/*C	✓		✓

In the patterns represented by the first four rows of (360), there is no number marker. Therefore, NumP is not projected.

A. This represents the numeral expressions in Mandarin Chinese, as seen in (350).

B. This represents the numeral expressions without CLs and number markers, as in (345a) and (345b).

C. This represents the construction in which a CL occurs with a non-numeral quantifier, as in (348).

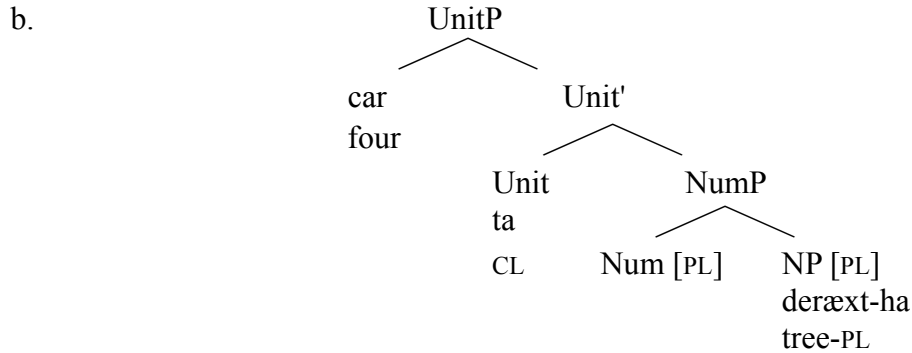
D. This represents the construction in which a non-numeral quantifier combines with a bare noun, as in (349).

In E and F, a numeral occurs with a plural marker. This is impossible in Mandarin Chinese (3.2.6).

E. For constructions that have a CL, a number marker, and a numeral, both UnitP and NumP are projected. In this case, since a unit word is higher than a plural marker, UnitP is

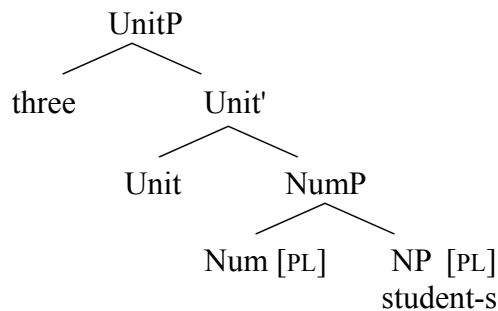
projected above NumP (Svenonius 2008; Gebhardt 2009; Ott 2011; cf. Harbour 2008: (10)). In my analysis, the base-positions of the elements in (361a) (Gebhardt 2009: 227) are represented in (361b). A similar Persian example, *se-ta ketab-ha* ‘three-CL book-PL => three books’, is found in Ghomeshi (2003: 59 (36b)).

- (361)a. car ta deræxt-ha [Persian]
four CL tree-PL
‘four trees’



F. For constructions that have both a plural marker and a numeral, both UnitP and NumP are projected, although the head of Unit can be null. The base-positions of the elements in (362a) are represented in (362b), where UnitP is added to the structure in (355b)., to host the numeral.

- (362) a. three students
b.



Recall that the co-occurrence of a numeral and a plural marker is not possible in languages such as Hungarian, Finnish, Bangla, and Mandarin Chinese (2.2.6 and 3.2.6). But for some languages, the interactions could be more complicated. In Finnish, for instance, although, as seen in (363a), no plural noun occurs with a numeral, as noted in Brattico (2010), if a demonstrative precedes the numeral, the demonstrative must be plural, as seen in (363b). The plural agreement is licensed by the projection of NumP, and the numeral is hosted in UnitP (cf. Danon 2011: 301).

- (363) a. Kolme auto-a aja-a tiellä. [Finnish]
three car-part.SG drive-SG road
‘Three cars drive on the road.’
b. Ne kaksi pien-tä auto-a seiso-ivat tiellä.
those.PL two.SG small-part.SG car-part.SG stand-past.3PL road.adess
‘Those two small cars stood at the road.’

G. For constructions that have a CL and a PL marker, but not a numeral, both UnitP and

NumP are also projected. (364a) is an English example in which a kind CL, a PL marker, and a quantifier co-occur, without a numeral. In the Ahmao example in (364b) (Wang 1986: 76), similarly, the quantifier *pidzan* ‘several’ and a portmanteau morph *dzhai*, which contains a CL and a singular (SG) number morpheme, occur together, without a numeral. In such examples, the quantifier is hosted by UnitP and the plural marker is licensed by NumP. The configurations of the structures for such examples should be similar to (361b) and (362b).

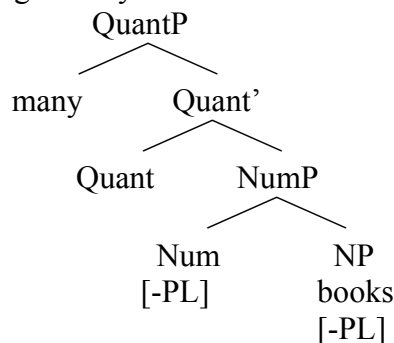
- (364)a. many kinds of books
 b. pidzau dzhai tci [Ahmao]
 several CL.MED.SG.INDEF road
 ‘several roads’

This pattern is not seen in Mandarin Chinese, since no quantifier may occur with a plural marker in the language, as shown by (365):

- (365) He-li piao-zhe (*daliang/*haoji) duo-duo lianhua.
 river-in float-PRG much/severl CL-RED lotus
 ‘There are lotuses floating on the river.’

H. A non-numeral quantifier may combine with a plural noun, as in (366). The quantifier is hosted by QuantP and the number marker is licensed by NumP. Since there is neither a numeral nor a unit word, UnitP is not projected. The structure for (366a) is (367). This pattern is impossible in Chinese, as seen in (365) above.

- (366) a. I bought many books. b. I bought so much clothes.
 (367)

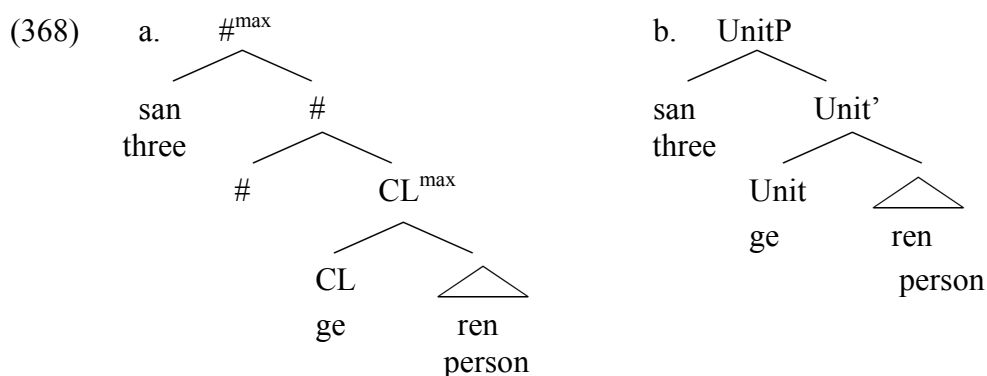


This approach is different from Borer (2005) in three major aspects: the base-position of numerals, the syntactic relation between number markers and CLs in numeral expressions, and the functional projections to encode mass nominals. The last difference will be addressed later at the end of 5.6.1. The other two aspects are elaborated as follows.

First, numerals are base-generated in Spec of #^{max} in Borer (2005: 96; also Li 1999: 86, Huang et al. 2009: 312), as in (368a), but in Spec of UnitP in the present approach, as in (368b).⁵⁵⁵⁶

⁵⁵ In Huang et al. (2009: 312), numerals are base-generated at Spec of NumP, but on page 296 of the same book, numerals are generated at the head of NumP. See Bartos (2011: 317) for a critical comment on Huang et al.'s inconsistent treatment of numerals.

⁵⁶ My analysis is compatible with Munn and Schmitt's (2005: fn. 5) claim that "Num may not be the locus for overt numerals, which may be higher in the structure". Massam (2009: 675) also points out that "in Niuean, it is clear that number and numerals are not in the same projection, as argued by Pearce (2007) also for various Oceanic languages." Similarly, Espinal (2010: 987 fn. 8) states that her analysis of Catalan and Spanish suggests



In both approaches, CL is hosted by a functional projection: CL^{\max} in (368a) and UnitP in (368b). However, (368b) captures the formal dependency between a CL and a numeral (5.2.2), but (368a) does not.

Second, a plural marker and a CL are hosted in the same functional head, CL or Div, in Borer (2005), but in my analysis, the projection of NumP is independent of the projection of UnitP. In my analysis, a CL is always hosted by Unit, but a plural marker is related to Num. This analysis, as well as Gebhardt (2009), is able to cover the possible co-occurrence of a CL and a number marker in the same construction, as in (361) and (364) (also see Allan 1977: 294; Aikenvald 2003: 100-101; 249; Gerner & Bisang 2008; Ueda 2009: 123; Csirmaz & Dékány 2010: 13, among others). Moreover, in my analysis, the occurrence of a numeral means the projection of UnitP, even in the absence of both a plural marker and a CL. We have discussed such examples in 5.2.2.

5.4. The projection of DelP

5.4.1 Delimitive adjectives and DelP

I have just argued that numerability is represented by the projection of UnitP. In Chapter 2, I have also argued that Delimitability is a feature independent of Numerability. In this subsection, I argue that Delimitability projects another functional projection. In de Belder (2011a,b), a more specific projection, SizeP, is proposed. We have seen in Chapter 2 that Delimitability is related to not only size information such as big and small, but also shape information such as thin and round and boundary information such as whole or partial. I thus extend de Belder's SizeP into DelimitP, shortened as DelP.

Syntactically, the projection of DelP is attested in at least two aspects. One is that the head of such a projection can be realized by a diminutive marker, as argued in de Belder (2011b). The occurrence of a diminutive marker indicates atomicity and thus a non-mass reading.

- | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------|----|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| (369)a. | pane
bread
'bread' | b. | panino
bread-DIM
'bread roll' | [Italian] |
| (370)a. | Brot
bread
'bread' | b. | Bröchen
bread-DIM
'bread roll' | [German] |

In Gan, the diminutive suffix *tsiʔ* can follow various types of elements: N, Adj, V, CL,

that, in addition to Num, a different function must be attributed to numerals. According to her, semantically, numerals introduce a cardinality function over singularities or pluralities.

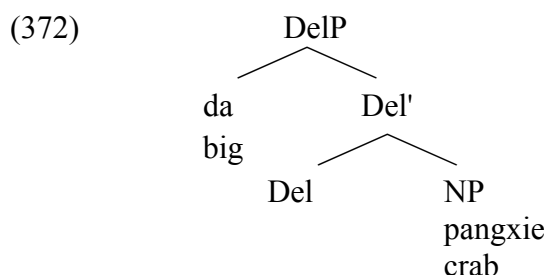
and D (proper names) (X. P. Li 2011b). The unselective selection of the diminutive marker is not a typical property of a substantive element. See Fortin (2011: Chapter 2) for a discussion of the properties of such affixes. It is possible that like CLs in numeral expressions, diminutive affixes are semi-functional heads or nominal-internal auxiliaries.

Another consideration to support the projection of DelP is that a functional projection may license a particular type of modifiers. In Cinque (1994), different types of adjectives are hosted in the Spec of various functional projections. The projection of DelP to host delimitive adjectives at its Spec is compatible with Cinque's approach (also see Déchaine & Tremblay 2011 for the claim that size adjectives are semi-lexical elements).

It is obvious that a nominal with a delimitive adjective does not have to occur with a numeral or unit word, as seen in (371a), where the delimitive adjective *da* 'big' occurs, without any numeral or unit word. Thus DelP can be projected in the absence of UnitP. On the other hand, a numeral expression does not have to contain a delimitive adjective, as seen in (371b), where the CL *zhi* occurs, without any delimitive adjective. Thus UnitP can be projected without DelP. We thus see the independence of DelP from UnitP.

- (371)a. Wo yao mai da pangxie. b. Wo yao mai san zhi pangxie.
 I want buy big crab I want buy three CL crab
 'I want to buy big crabs.' 'I want to buy three crabs.'

The structure of the object in (371a) is (372) (the possible DP projection dominating DelP is omitted). In this structure, DelP is projected, in the absence of UnitP.



Mass nouns reject diminutive adjectives (2.3.2), and therefore, no DelP is immediately projected above NP for a mass noun such as *you* 'oil'.

5.4.2 The syntax and morphology of pre-unit word adjectives

In this subsection, three issues will be addressed: the position of DelP, the category-level of pre-unit-word modifiers, and the representations of multiple delimitive adjective constructions, in Mandarin Chinese.

Recall that in Chinese, not only non-mass nouns, such as *pangxie* 'crab' in (373a), but also unit words, such as the CL *zhi* in (373b), can be modified by delimitive adjectives (2.4.3 and 4.2.2):

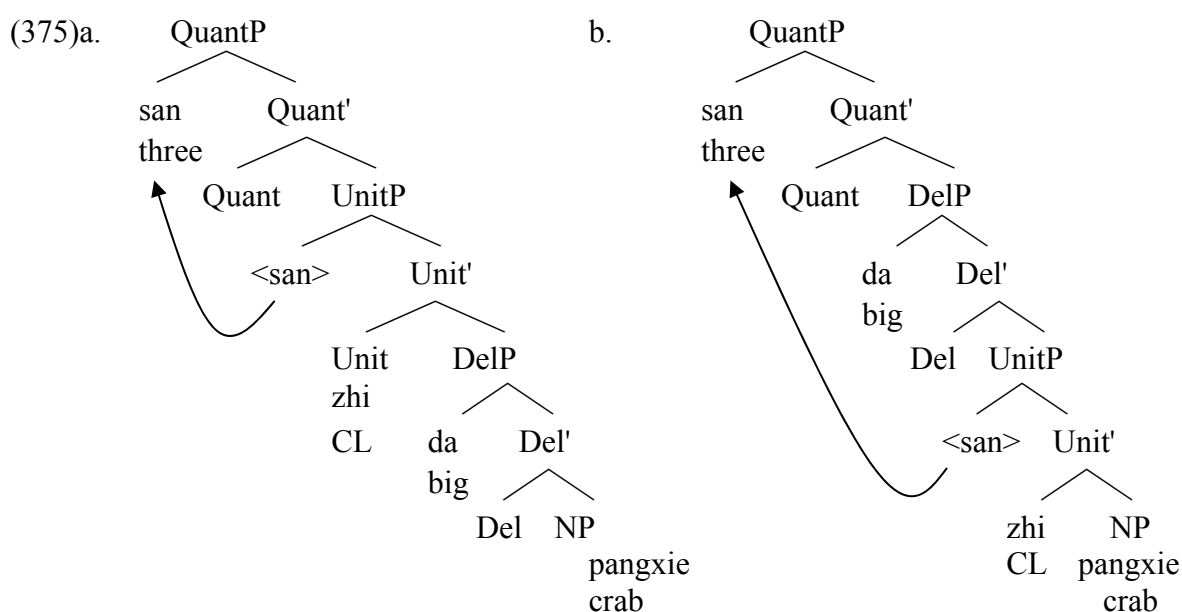
- (373)a. san zhi da pangxie b. san da zhi pangxie
 three CL big crab three big CL crab
 'three big crab' 'three big crab'

One might claim that the adjective in (373b) has moved from the position in (373a). However, it is not always possible to associate a pre-CL adjective to a post-CL adjective, since mass nouns reject delimitive adjectives, as shown in (374b) (Chapter 2). In (374a), the adjective *xiao* 'small' has to be base-generated above UnitP. Moreover, a pre-CL delimitive

adjective may occur with a post-CL delimitive adjective, as shown in (374c, d).

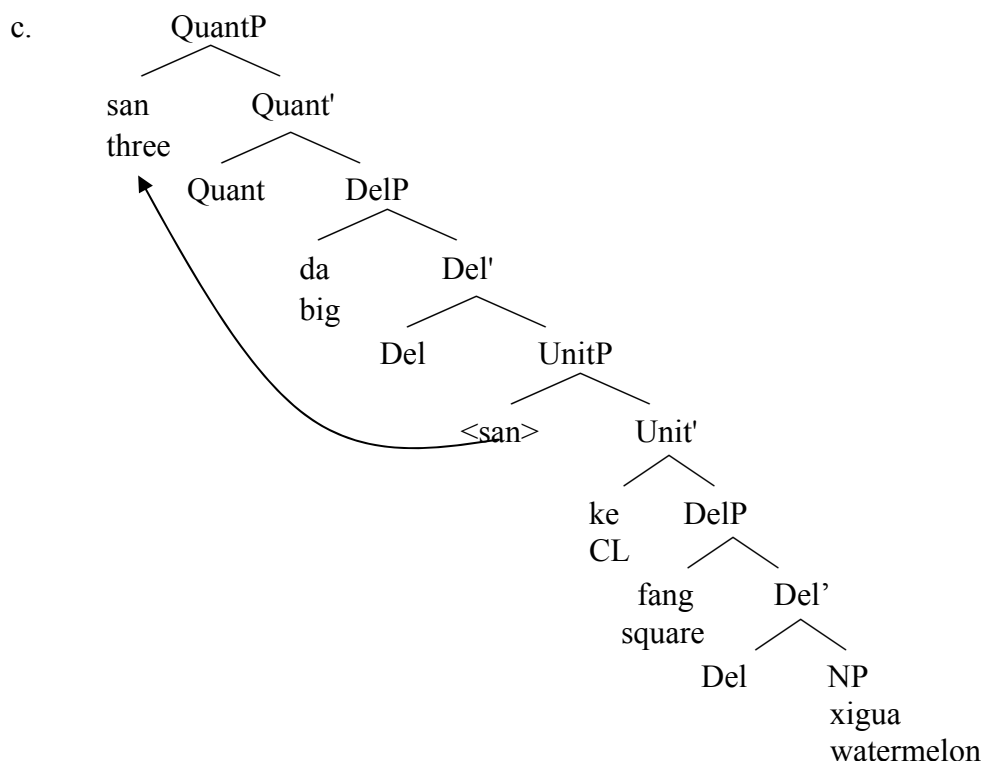
- (374)a. san xiao di shui
three small CL water
'three small drops of water'
- b. *san di xiao shui
three CL small water
- c. san da ke fang xigua
three big CL square watermelon
'three big square watermelon'
- d. san xiao pian yuan shuye
three small CL round leaf
'three small round leaves'

Thus a DelP higher than UnitP is independently required. Accordingly, I claim that in (373a), DelP is projected below UnitP, and in (373b), DelP is projected above UnitP. In both sentences, the adjective occurs in its base-position, hosted by DelP. (375a) is the structure of (373a), (375b) is the structure of (373b); and (375c) is the structure of (374c).⁵⁷



⁵⁷ Like other kinds of modifiers, delimitive modifier may also occur to the left of a numeral (Zhang 2006), or even the left of a demonstrative, with the support of the functional word *de* (see 4.2.1). I leave open the syntactic derivations of such constructions.

- (i) dada de san zhi pangxie
big DE three CL crab
'three big crabs'
- (ii) da de nei zhi pangxie
big DE that.one CL crab
'the big crab'



That functional categories are projected in different positions is also seen in other cases (e.g., the multiple projection of NegP for different domains of negation and the two projections of repetitive AspP, two projections of frequentative AspP, and two projections of celerative AspP, with different semantic effects, in Cinque 1999). See also Déchaine & Tremblay 2011 for a discussion of the relevant theoretical issues.

In structures like (375b), DelP is not below UnitP. This analysis is different from the one in de Belder (2011a,b), where SizeP is under DivP, which correlates with my UnitP. The possibility for DelP to project in two positions shows that it does not pattern with a typical functional projection. It behaves like something between a functional and a substantive projection (See Fortin 2011: Ch. 2 for more discussion of such semi-functional properties of diminitives, which are analyzed as realizations of Del in this book) (More cases of multiple projections of DelP with the same UnitP will be introduced in Chapter 6).

Returning to (373), we see the synonymous relation between (373a) and (373b). This semantically transparent relation is compatible with the right-branching structure in which the position of a pre-CL adjective is hosted by a higher DelP, and thus C-Commands a possible post-CL adjective, which is hosted by a lower DelP (the representation of a left-branching structure is discussed in the next section).

We now turn to the category-level of pre-unit-word modifiers. When a delimitive adjective modifies a noun, it can be followed by the functional word *de*, as seen in (376). In addition to the simple form of the adjective in (376a), a pre-*de* adjective can also be in a reduplicate form, as in (376b), in a coordinate construction, as in (376c), or with a degree word *hen* ‘very’, as in (376d) (Wang 1995: 306, 314). For the three complex forms, *de* must be present between them and the modified nouns.⁵⁸

⁵⁸ In Li’s (2012: 32) example *hui-meng-meng zhaopian* ‘grey misty photo’, no *de* occurs between the reduplicate adjective and *zhaopian* ‘photo’. However, it seems that *zhaopian* is the only noun that may follow the complex adjective directly. The idiomatic usage thus does not challenge the generalization stated in the text.

- (376)a. chang de xianglian
long DE necklace
'long necklace'
- b. chang-chang *(de) xianglian
long-RED DE necklace
'long necklace'
- c. chang erqie cu *(de) xianglian
long and thick DE necklace
'long and thick necklace'
- d. hen chang *(de) xianglian
very long DE necklace
'very long necklace'

However, when an adjective modifies a unit word, no *de* is allowed to intervene between them, as seen in (377a) and (377b) (note that we are talking about the *de* to the left of a unit word, not to the right of a unit word; the latter issue is discussed in 4.5). As expected, none of the three complex forms may precede a unit word. The example in (377c) shows this constraint.

- (377)a. san chang *(de) tiao xianglian
three long DE CL necklace
'three long necklaces'
- b. san da *(de) xiang xianglian
three big DE box necklace
'three big boxes of necklaces'
- c. *san chang-chang (de) tiao xianglian
three long-RED DE CL necklace
'three necklaces'

The ban of *de* in data like (377a) has been noted since Tang (1990b: 419). In Cheng & Sybesma (1999: 529 fn.16), it is conjectured that "[T]his may be due to some obligatory cliticization of CL to Numeral" (also see Yang 2001: 72). However, in the presence of *chang* 'long', the CL *tiao* in (377) is not next to a numeral. Moreover, it is well recognized that a clitic may be hosted by a cluster that is composed of another clitic and its host (e.g., both '*d*' and '*ve*' are clitics and the latter is hosted by '*I'd*' in '*I'd've brought some for you, if I'd known.*'). Thus, if a CL is an enclitic and *de* is also an enclitic (Huang 1989), why can the CL not take the cluster *chang de* 'big DE' as its host in (377a)? It is clear that the constraint in (377) is beyond the alleged clitic status of the CL.

It is well-recognized that pre-*de* modifiers are phrasal (e.g., Fan 1958, C. Huang 1989, Tang 1990b: 420). So the constraint under the discussion is the following generalization:

- (378) An adjective to the left of a unit word cannot be phrasal.

But such adjectives do not show properties of syntactic head elements. For instance, they do not license ellipsis:

- (379) *Baoyu mai-le san da kuai doufu, Daiyu mai-le si xiao ~~kuai doufu~~.
Baoyu buy-PRF three big CL tofu Daiyu buy-PRF four small CL tofu

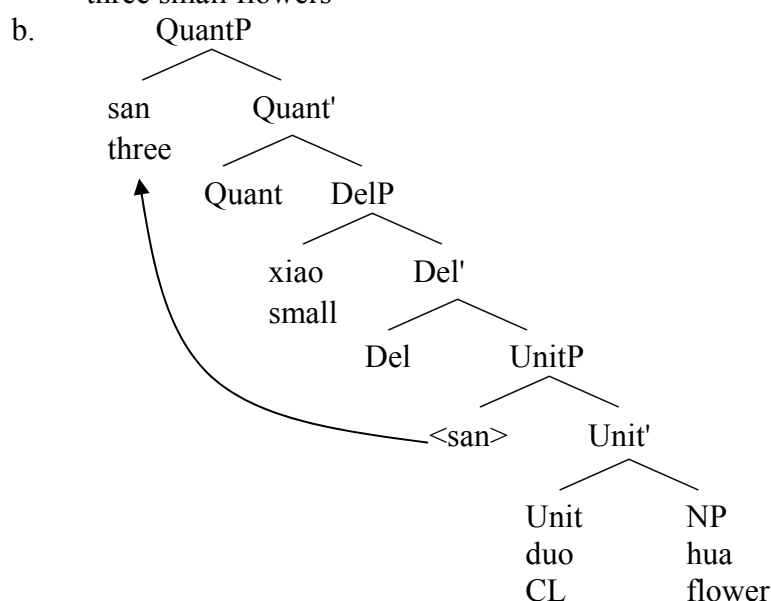
Therefore, I do not adopt Tang's (1990: 418) claim that the cluster *chang-tiao* in (377a) is a complex head cluster. Instead, extending Matushansky's (2006) theory, I assume that the pre-unit word adjective is syntactically at Spec of DelP, but it undergoes a morphological merger operation and is thus adjacent to the unit word at PF.

Such an adjective to the left of an individual or individuating CL behaves like a phrasal prefix or proclitic morphologically. Phonologically, each of such an adjective must be monosyllabic (Liu 1980: 10). This constraint rules out reduplicate adjectives, as in (380a), and adjectives that are modified by another element, as in (380b), to the left of an individual or individuating CL.

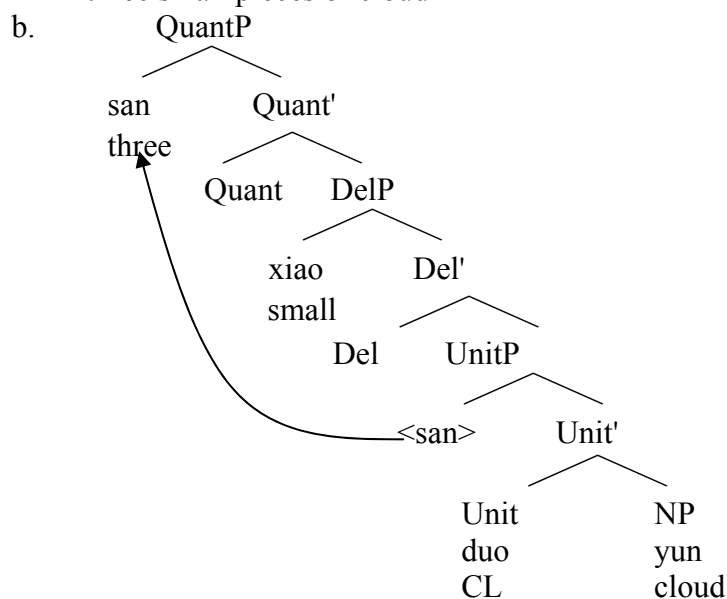
5.5.1 The representations of the right-branching structure

Individual, individuating, and kind CL constructions have a right-branching structure (4.2.5). In the three trees in (375) above, we have specified the labels of the constituent nodes for the right-branching structures of individual CLs. One more such example is (385a), where, the individual CL *duo* occurs. It has the structure in (385b). In (386a), the individuating CL *duo* occurs. It has the structure in (386b). As for constructions with a kind CL, they also have a right-branching structure. (387a), where the kind CL *lei* occurs, has the structure in (387b). We can see that there is no structural difference among the constructions headed by the three types of CLs: the CLs are all base-generated at Unit, C-Commanding the NP.

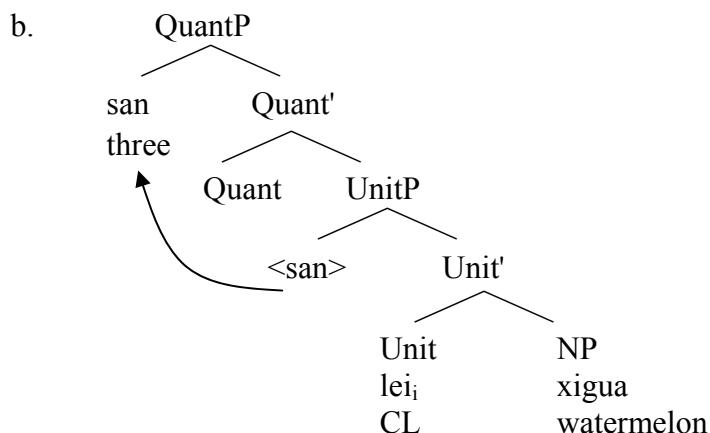
(385)a. san xiao duo hua [Individual CL]
three small CL flower
'three small flowers'



(386)a. san xiao duo yun [Individuating CL]
three small CL cloud
'three small pieces of cloud'



- (387)a. san lei xigua [Kind CL]
three CL watermelon
'three kinds of watermelons'

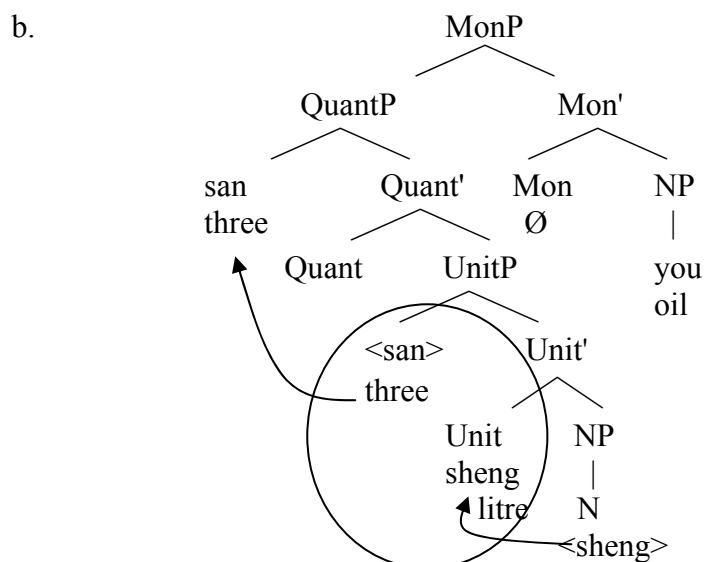


5.5.2 The representation of the left-branching structure

A left-branching structure is for numeral expressions of container measures, standard measures, collective CLs, and partitive CLs (see 4.2.5). In this structure, the unit word does not C-Command the associated NP. Therefore, the unit word and the NP may have incompatible adjectives, and the former does not have a selection relation with the latter.

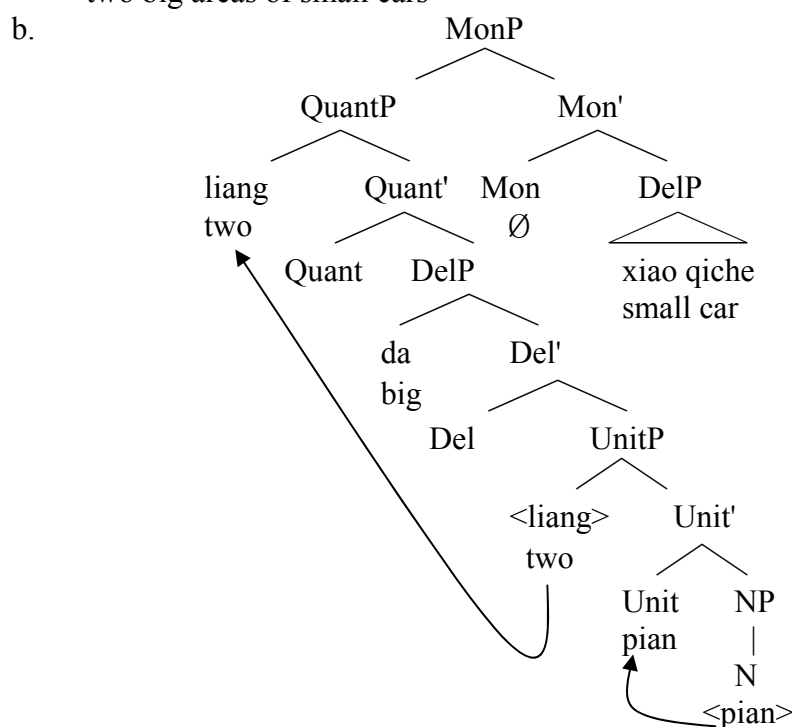
However, the unit words of the left-branching structure, such as the standard measure *gongjin* ‘kilo’ and container measure *bei* ‘cup’ in *san bei cha* ‘three cup tea’ also share formal properties with CLs of the right-branching structure (2.4.1). I claim they all surface at the same syntactic position in numeral expressions, i.e., the head of UnitP, but the unit words of the left-branching structure are base-generated at N, and then undergo head movement and surfaces at Unit. Moreover, in the left-branching structure, the QuantP, which contains the UnitP headed by the unit words, and the NP are integrated together by MonP (for Monotocity Phrase) in the sense of Schwarzschild (2006: 100; also see Cornilescu 2009). For instance, the structure for (388a) is (388b). In this structure, the locality between the numeral *san* ‘three’ and the unit word *sheng* ‘litre’ is achieved derivationally, after the latter moves to Unit and before the former moves to Spec of QuantP, as illustrated by the encircled part.

- (388)a. san sheng you [Standard measure]
three litre oil
'three litres of oil'



Similarly, the structure for (389a) is (389b).

- (389)a. liang da pian xiao qiche [Collective CL]
 two big CL small car
 'two big areas of small cars'



In this analysis, collective CLs, partitive CLs, standard CLs, and container CLs are all base-generated at N, and surface at Unit, and the hosting QuantP and the NP are Spec and Comp of R, respectively, as in (389b). There are three characteristics in the proposed derivation of the left-branching structure.

First, there is a head movement from N to Unit in the derivation. A similar head movement from N to a functional head is proposed in Cheng & Sybesma (1998: 406; see (330b) above) for container measure constructions. Tang (2005: 452-453) presents three arguments against this kind of movement, trying to show that nouns such as *beizi* 'cup' and

benzi ‘notebook’ are different from unit words such as the container measure *bei* ‘cup’ or *wan* ‘bowl’ and thus they may not move to the position of a unit word. A, unlike either a measure word or an individual CL, a noun may not be followed by another noun, as shown by the noun *wan* in (390a). B, unlike a unit word, an NP can occur at an argument position, as shown by *da de wan* ‘big DE bowl’ in (390b). C, a noun “cannot appear alone with numerals like *yi* ‘one’,” as in (390c).

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| (390)a. <i>yi ge wan (*shui)</i>
one CL bowl water
‘one bowl’ | b. <i>Da de wan hen gui.</i>
big DE bowl very expensive
‘Big bowls are expensive.’ | c. <i>yi *(ge) wan</i>
one CL bowl
‘one bowl’ |
|--|---|---|

However, all of these three arguments simply show that nouns and unit words have different distributions. Unit words in numeral expressions are defined by their syntactic local relation to a numeral. Their surface positions can be the result of syntactic operations. One can claim that if the word *wan* ‘bowl’ is base-generated at N, and then if the CL *ge* is base-generated at Unit, *wan* has no way to move to Unit. The surface order of (390a) is thus derived. In (390b), no numeral occurs and thus UnitP is not projected. Then there is no N-to-Unit movement. (390c) simply shows that the head of UnitP cannot be empty in Chinese. Therefore, the movement analysis is not challenged. An element has the function of a unit word only when it occurs in a specific syntactic position, i.e., syntactically local to a numeral. In none of the three examples in (390), the word *wan* is local to a numeral, and thus it is not a unit word. This is similar to the situation that Infl can be realized by an auxiliary or a raised verb, but the possibility of the verb movement does not blur the distinction between auxiliaries and verbs.

Following Roberts (2010), Branigan (2011: 40), and Hartman (2011), I assume that head movement can be an operation in narrow syntax. The N-to-Unit movement in the left-branching structure is an instance of nominal-internal head movement. Nominal-internal head movement has been independently attested in Modern Hebrew (Borer 1999, Ritter 1991), Irish (Duffield 1996), Welsh (Rouveret 1991), and Romance languages (Longobardi 1994), among other languages. Such head movement is parallel to the head movement in the verbal domain (Pollock 1989). Along with the literature cited above, this study of nominal-internal head movement shows the cross-categorical symmetry in displacement phenomena (Chomsky 1970).

Note that in both left-branching and right-branching structures, the unit word surfaces at a head position, therefore, the string to its right can be elided, regardless of the syntactic relation between the unit word and the string. We have seen the ellipsis and stranding examples of individual CL constructions in (338) and (339) above. Similarly, the container measure *wan* ‘bowl’ in the second conjunct of (391a) may also license an empty NP to its right, and the meaning of the NP can be recovered from an NP in the first conjunct, i.e., *tang* ‘soup’. Also, the container measure *wan* ‘bowl’ in (391b) is stranded, and the missing NP has a dependency with the topic *niurou-tang* ‘beef soup’.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (391)a. <i>Baoyu he-le san wan tang, Daiyu ye he-le san wan tang.</i>
Baoyu drink-PRF three bowl soup Daiyu also drink-PRF three bowl soup
‘Baoyu ate three bowls of soup, and so did Daiyu.’ | b. <i>Niurou-tang, Baoyu yinggai he wu wan.</i>
beef-soup Baoyu should drink five bowl
‘Beef soup, Baoyu should eat five bowls of it.’ |
|---|---|

Second, the unit word starts from the position of N, which is not a position for

functional element. Recall that the CL *ge* may alternate with an individual, individuating, or kind CL, but not a unit word of any other types, in a numeral expression (4.2.5). The contrast matches the contrast between those with the right-branching structure and those with the left-branching structure. This restriction on the functions of *ge* indicates that this CL is base-generated at the head of UnitP, rather than N. The types of the unit words that may not alternate with *ge* can be less abstract and thus are not base-generated at the position of a functional head.

The substantive properties can be clearly seen in container measures. Such unit words may have complex forms, containing a non-delimitive modifier, such as *ma* ‘horse’ in (392a), and *suliao* ‘plastic’ in (392b). It is plausible that the complexes are base-generated at N and move to a functional position (See Watanabe 2012 for further noun properties of measure words). In contrast, individual and individuating CLs may not have such complex forms, as seen in (392c). They are more like intrinsic functional elements, base-generated at a functional head.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (392)a. wu ma-che liangshi
five horse-cart food
‘five horse-carriages of food’ | b. wu suliao-tong qiyou
five plastic-bucket gasoline
‘five plastic buckets of gasoline’ |
| c. *wu suliao-duo hua
five plastic-CL flower | |

Third, the MonP structure for the left-branching numeral expressions is compatible the properties stated in Schwarzschild (2006) and Cornilescu (2009). For instance, the Spec of MonP is always a QuantP, such as *a bit* (Schwarzschild 2006: 100) or a measure phrase (see Cornilescu 2009). The Spec-Complement relation of a QuantP and a NP represents the semantics that the interpretation “in which the dimension is monotonic on the relevant part-whole relation in the domain given by the noun” (Schwarzschild 2006: 73). Moreover, the unit word of the measure phrase exhibits properties of nouns, crosslinguistically. Furthermore, the associated noun can be either a mass noun or non-mass noun (Schwarzschild 2006: 69; Cornilescu 2009: 45).

Note that MonP can be below DP, if a D-element such as a demonstrative occurs. In Mandarin Chinese, in addition to quantity-denoting, a numeral expression can also be individual-denoting, even in the absence of an overt D-element (see 4.4). Generally speaking, a nominal containing a QuantP or MonP can represent incremental themes for telic eventualities.

In my analysis, the contrast between the unit words that are base-generated at a functional head and those that start out in N has nothing to do with the contrast between count and mass status of nominals. My analysis is different from Cheng & Sybesma (1998, 1999; see my 2.7.4 above), where it is claimed that the alleged count unit words are base-generated at the functional head CL, whereas the alleged mass unit words start out in N and then undergo N-to-CL movement.

5.5.3 The occurrence of *de* and the order of adjectives

In this subsection, we address the occurrence of the particle *de* and the order of delimitive adjectives in numeral expressions, with respect to the contrast between the left- and right-branching structures. The two aspects further support our syntactic analysis of numeral constructions.

In 4.5, I have analyzed the availability of the particle *de* to the right of a unit word: it is available for the left-branching structure in general, and for the right-branching structure in the quantity reading, but not available for the right-branching structure in the non-quantity

reading. In that section, I have also argued that if *de* occurs in a right-branching construction, it is in fact out of the numeral expression, since the surface order is the result of deletion from a comparative modification construction.

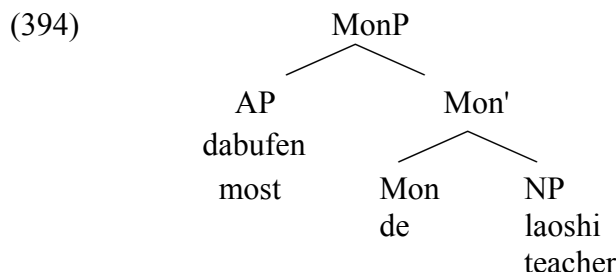
From the structure in (389) we can see that the constituent boundary between the Spec of Mon and the complement of Mon makes the occurrence of *de* always possible. *De* can simply surface at the position of Mon. This captures the fact that there is no quantity-reading constraint on the occurrence of *de* in the left-branching structure. From a different perspective, if the MonP here is substantially not different from nP (“an extended noun phrase”, according to Schwarzschild 2006: 67), and *de* may head nP (Zhang 1999), the general availability of *de* for the left-branching structure is captured.

In contrast, there is no syntactic position parallel to Mon in the right-branching structure of a numeral expression. Therefore, the possible *de* construction must be derived by comparative deletion, from a quantity-denoting construction (see 4.5.3 for details). Therefore, such a *de* construction always has a quantity reading.

Another fact with respect to *de* is the structure of a special type of quantifiers. If it is possible for a quantifier to be followed by *de*, the quantifier may not be followed by a CL. At the beginning of 2.5, we mention such quantifiers, e.g., as *daliang* ‘a lot’, *suoyou* ‘all’, *quanbu* ‘all’, *daduoshu* ‘most’, *dabufen* ‘most’. In (393a), *dabufen* ‘most’ may not be followed by the CL *wei*, and in (393b), *daduoshu* ‘most’ is subject to the same constraint.⁵⁹

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------|----|------------------------|
| (393)a. | dabufen (*wei) laoshi | b. | daduoshu (*wei) laoshi |
| | most CL teacher | | most CL teacher |
| | ‘most teachers’ | | ‘most teachers’ |

It is possible that each of such quantifiers is a quantificational AP, and it is linked to the NP by Mon, which is realized by *de*. Therefore, there is no syntactic position for a unit word. The absence of the CL *wei* in (393) is accounted for. The structure of (393a) is (394):



Note that we do not assume that *de*, as well as other functional elements, has a unique syntactic position. Although the functional head Mon can be realized by *de*, the particle *de* may also surface in other positions, in other syntactic structures (see Li 2012).

⁵⁹ *Dabufen* ‘most’ may occur with any nouns, while *daduoshu* ‘most’ occurs with various kinds of nouns (mass and non-mass), except material mass nouns. In (ib), the material noun *moshui* ‘ink’ may not follow *daduoshu*.

- (i) a. {dabufen/daduoshu} shu diao-dao di-shang le.
 most/most book fall-to ground-on PRT
 ‘Most of the books fell on the ground.’
 b. {dabufen/*daduoshu} mo-shui liu-dao di-shang le.
 most/most ink-water flow-to ground-on PRT
 ‘Most of the ink flew to the ground.’
 c. {dabufen/daduoshu} qingkuang dou hen hao.
 most/most situation all very good
 ‘Most of the situations are very good.’

We now move to the issue of the order of delimitive adjectives in numeral expressions. When a shape and a size adjective co-occur with the same modifyee, the shape adjective should be closer to the modifyee than the size adjective (Vendler 1968), regardless of how this order constraint is syntactically represented (see McKinney-Bock 2010 and the references therein). In Chinese, this default order is observed in the absence of the functional word *de* (Sproat & Shih 1988, 1991). In our following discussion, we use examples without *de*, to see the effect of the default order. Compared with (395a), (395a') is not acceptable. Similarly, compared with (395b), (395b') is not acceptable.

- (395)a. si pian xiao yuan shuye a'. *si pian yuan xiao shuye [pre-NP Adj]
 four CL small round leaf four CL round small leaf
 'four small round leaves'
- b. si xiao yuan pian shuye b'. *si yuan xiao pian shuye [pre-CL Adj]
 four round small CL leaf four small round CL leaf
 'four small round leaves'

If two delimitive adjective do not occur in a row in a numeral expression, the above order constraint is seen in individual CL constructions only, but not in the constructions of container measures, collective CLs, and partitive CLs. In (396), where the individual CL *tiao* and *pian* occur, the size adjective *xiao* 'small' must precede the shape adjective *chang* 'long' or *fang* 'square'. In (397), where the container measure *pan* 'plate', the collective CL *dui* 'pile', and the partitive CL *kuai* occur, the order of the two adjectives is free.

- (396)a. si xiao tiao chang qiezi [Individual CL]
 four small CL long eggplant
 'four small long eggplants'
- a'. *si chang tiao xiao qiezi
 four long CL small eggplant
- b. si xiao pian fang binggan [Individual CL]
 four small CL square cookie
 'four small round cookies'
- b'. *si fang pian xiao binggan
 four square CL small cookie
- (397)a. si xiao pan yuan binggan [Container measure]
 four small plate round cookie
 'four small plates of round cookies'
- a'. si yuan pan xiao binggan
 four round plate small cookie
 'four round plates of small cookies'
- b. si da dui chang qiezi [Collective CL]
 four big pile long eggplant
 'four big piles of long eggplants'
- b'. si chang pai xiao qiezi
 four long row small eggplant
 'four long row of small eggplant'
- c. si da kuai chang qiezi [Partitive CL]
 four big chunk long eggplant
 'four big chunks of long eggplants'

- c'. si fang kuai da qiezi
four square chunk big eggplant
'four square chunks of big eggplants'

Such a comparison between the two orders of adjectives is impossible for other types of unit words. Kind CL and standard measures may not be modified by size and shape adjectives, and the noun following an individuating CL may not be modified by these kinds of adjectives, either. Thus the test of the adjective order does not apply to the numeral expressions of these unit words.

The contrast in the adjective order indicates that in a numeral expression, an individual CL, as well as its modifier, C-Commands the modifier of the associate NP, and therefore, they are all in the same domain, in which the two types of adjectives follow the Vendler order. Our right-branching structure captures this adjective order fact. In our proposed structure, the pre-CL adjective is hosted by the DelP above UnitP, and it C-Commands the modifier of the noun, which is hosted by the DelP below UnitP.

In contrast, for container measures, collective CLs, and partitive CLs, their modifiers do not interact with the modifiers of the NP, and therefore the Vendler order is not enforced. The absence of the interaction indicates the absence of C-Command relation between the two adjectives. Our left-branching structure captures this adjective order fact. In the structure, the pre-unit word adjective is hosted by a DelP within the Spec of Mon, but the modifier of the noun is hosted by a DelP within the complement of Mon. The two adjectives have no C-Command relation. Therefore, the lack of the Vendler's order effect is explained.

5.5.4 The structure of attributive numeral expressions

So far, we have discussed the syntactic structures of numeral expressions for counting or measuring. We now move to attributive numeral expressions, which express an inherent or individual-level property (ILP) of the entity denoted by the noun, as shown by the underlined part in (398).

- (398) a. Ta mai-le liang tao [wu ben de shu].
he buy-PRF two CL five CL DE book
'He bought two sets of five volume books.'
- b. Ta mai-le san kuai [si ceng de dangao].
he buy-PRF three CL four layer DE cake
'He bought three pieces of four-layer cake.'
- c. Ta mai-le liang mi [yi gongfen de shengzi].
he buy-PRF two meter one cm DE rope
'He bought two meters of the rope that is 1 cm thick.'
- d. yi ge shi bang de xigua
one CL ten pound DE watermelon
'a ten pound watermelon'

The ILP constructions are discussed in many works (e.g., Tang 2005: 434; Schwartzchild 2006; Hsieh 2008; Corver 2009: 125; Cornilescu 2009; Her & Hsieh 2010; Liao & Wang 2011: Sec. 5; X. P. Li 2011). Semantically, such attributive constructions are for classifying, rather than counting. The former and the latter belong to Rijkhoff's (2002) quality and quantity modifiers, respectively. Crucially, unlike pseudo-partitive constructions, attributive numeral expressions do not encode a monotonic ordering relation. For instance, for (398a), regardless how many *taos* 'sets' of the books are bought, each set is always composed by five volumes. The external counting with the unit *tao* does not track any part-whole relation inside

the nominal *wu ben de shu* ‘five volume book’.

Syntactically, they are different from the pseudo-partitive constructions discussed in previous chapters. In such ILP constructions, the higher unit word can be either a CL, as in (398a), (398b), and (398d), or a measure word, as in (398c) (contra Her & Hsieh 2010: 536). Like in other constructions that contain a complex attributive, the functional word *de* must occur to the right of the attributive, i.e., the right of the second unit word in (398) (contra Her & Hsieh 2010: 536). In Dutch, the counterpart of *de* here is analyzed as a nominal copula in Corver (2009: 125). In both English and Dutch, the measure words may not be plural when they occur in attributive constructions (e.g., *a ten pound(*s) watermelon*). In Romanian, a numeral and a unit word preced the associate noun in pseudo-partitive construction, but they follow the noun in the attributive constructions (Cornilescu 2009: 44). Following Schwartzchild (2006) and Cornilescu (2009), I treat attributive numeral expressions as ordinary nominal modifier. In the structure of (398a), for example, the underlined part *wu ben de shu* ‘five CL book’ is an NP, which is selected by the collective CL *tao*. In the NP, the numeral *wu* ‘five’ and the unit word *ben* form a QuantP, and the QuantP is an adjunct of the NP *shu* ‘book’.

5.6. Various realizations of the head of UnitP

According to Chomsky’s (2001: 2) Uniformity Principle, “[I]n the absence of compelling evidence to the contrary, assume languages to be uniform, with variety restricted to easily detectable properties of utterances”. In line with this principle, I assume that universally, UnitP is projected for numeral expressions, and a unit word surfaces at the head of UnitP. I also assume that the numeral of such an expression is hosted at Spec of UnitP. I have argued that a numeral expression in Mandarin Chinese has either a left-branching or right-branching structure, depending on the type of the unit words. It is possible that numeral expressions in other languages have different structures. According to Borer (1984), functional categories are the locus of parametric variations. We thus expect Unit, as a functional head, to be the locus of some parametric variations. In this subsection, I discuss the different realizations of Unit in different languages and for different numeral constructions in the same language.

5.6.1 Representing noun types and shifts of countability

With the two functional projections, UnitP and DelP, our theory can precisely represent the syntax of various kinds of nominals with respect to countability, classified in 2.2.2. Recall the summary in (22), repeated here as (399):

(399)

	[Numerable]	[Delimitable]	example	countability status
a.	+	+	<i>apple</i> in (7a), (13a)	count with a delimitable feature
b.	+	-	<i>belief</i> in (7f), (13f)	count without a delimitable feature
c.	-	+	<i>furniture</i> in (8b), (13b)	non-count, non-mass
d.	-	-	<i>oil</i> in (8a), (13d)	mass

For type a, the type of count nouns with a delimitable feature, if both a numeral and a delimitive adjective occur, both UnitP and DelP are projected, but the head of UnitP is null in English.

For type b, the type of count nouns without a delimitable feature, if a numeral occurs, UnitP is projected, but DelP is not projected. Like the nominals of type a, the head of UnitP for this type is also null.

For type c, the type of non-mass and non-count nominals such as *furniture* in English

and *pangxie* ‘crab’ in Chinese, if a delimitive adjective occurs, DelP is projected; but if a numeral occurs, there must be an overt unit word to realize the head of UnitP, such as *piece* in English, and an individual CL in Mandarin Chinese.

For type d, the type of mass nominals such as *oil* in English, DelP is never projected; but if a numeral occurs, there must be an overt unit word to realize the head of UnitP. The overt form, such as *drop*, correlates to an individuating CL in Mandarin Chinese. If there is no numeral, neither UnitP nor DelP is projected.

In English, nominals of type c and type d are different from those of type a and type b in the overtness of the head of UnitP, when a numeral occurs: the head of UnitP must be overt for type c and d, whereas it is null for type a and type b.

The absence of DelP is crucial for mass nouns. This analysis is thus different from the one in Borer (2005), where mass readings are represented by the absence of DivP (correlating to my UnitP) alone. This is the third major difference of the current analysis from Borer (2005), in addition to the two differences mentioned at the end of 5.3.2. Instead of Borer’s single functional projection DivP, we have both UnitP and DelP, to encode the contrast between count and non-count nouns, and the contrast between mass and non-mass nouns.

We now specify the representations of the output of the three shifts introduced in 2.2.5. In the output of the Universal Grinder, neither UnitP nor DelP is projected. Thus there is neither overt nor covert Unit or Del for the nominal *apple* in (400).

(400) There is apple in the salad.

In the output of the Universal Sorter, such as *two chocolates* in (401) (de Belder 2011a: 70; 2011b: 173), the head of UnitP is realized by a silent version of a kind CL, and the Spec of UnitP is the base-position of the numeral of the construction.

(401) I studied two chocolates: a low fat variety and a normal one.

Note that English does have overt kind CLs such as *kind* and *type*, but if an overt CL occurs, the plural marker will occur on the CL, rather than the noun (*two kinds of chocolate*). So if one assumes that there is a deletion of a unit word, one needs to explain the apparent transference of the plural marker from the unit word to the noun. A similar situation is seen in (402), where the plural marker seems to be “transferred” to the remaining adjective when the modified noun is missing.

(402) I’ve got three smalls and five larges.

In both (401) and (402), the head of UnitP is silent. In English, Unit takes NumP as its complement (see pattern F in (360)), and thus the plural marker on the element next to the numeral is captured.

This is also true of the Universal Packager. In the output of the Universal Packager, such as *two waters* in (403), the numeral is base-generated at Spec of UnitP, and the head of UnitP is realized by a silent version of a container measure. This silent container measure can be a pro-form, interpreted in the discourse (cf. Wiese & Maling’s 2005 implicit CL analysis of the Universal Packager effect).

(403) Give me two waters.

In this analysis, the features of Numerability and Delimitability help us to identify the occurrence of UnitP and DelP, and the types of the covert forms allowed in certain

constructions.

5.6.2 Major typological patterns of null head of UnitP

Following Croft (1994: 151-152), I assume that standard measures (e.g., *kilo*), container measures (e.g., *bottle* in *three bottles of milk*), kind CL (*kind* in *three kinds of chocolate*), partitive CLs (e.g., *section* in *three sections of orange*), and collective CLs (e.g., *group* in *three groups of students*) are universally available. In my analysis, these five types of unit words all surface at the head of UnitP.

We now concentrate ourselves on the cross-linguistic variations of the null head of UnitP.

In languages such as Chinese, the head of UnitP is always realized by an overt element, in regular productive phrasal nominals. Specifically, individual CLs select nominal with [+Delimitable] and individuating CLs select nominal with [-Delimitable]. In this pattern of languages, there is no null head of UnitP.

The second pattern is that the silent Unit correlates with both individuating and individual CLs in Mandarin Chinese. The silent Unit in Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011), Ojibwe (Mathieu 2012), and Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 64) selects a nominal with either [+Delimitable] or [-Delimitable]. In other words, any noun may surface with a numeral directly, including a mass noun, as shown in (404) (Lima 2010: 7; 2011), (405), and (406) (Mathieu 2012: 186) (parallel examples in Halkomelem and Blackfoot can be found in Wiltschko 2012: (33), (34)). In (404) and (405), where the nouns are mass nouns, the silent Unit is a covert counterpart of an individuating CL in Chinese, and in (406), where the noun is not a mass noun, the silent Unit is a covert counterpart of an individual CL in Chinese.

- | | | | |
|----------|---|---------------------|----------|
| (404) | txabĩa apeta | (= (52)) | [Yudja] |
| | three blood | | |
| | ‘three units of blood’ | | |
| | (the exact unit is decided by the context: drops, puddles, or containers) | | |
| (405) a. | bezhig azhashki | b. niizh azhashki-n | [Ojibwe] |
| | one mud | two mud.PL.IN | |
| | ‘one chunk of mud’ | ‘two chunks of mud’ | |
| (406)a. | bezhig baagan | b. niizh baagan-an | |
| | one nut | two nuts.PL.IN | |
| | ‘one nut’ | ‘two nuts’ | |

As we mentioned in Chapter 2, in compounds, idiomatic expressions, and certain list contexts in Chinese, like in Yudja, no CL occurs, regardless of the Delimitability value of the noun:

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| (407)a. | san-jiao-xing | b. wu-ma-fen-shi | c. wu-jin shangdian |
| | three-angle-shape | five-horse-divid-body | five-medal shop |
| | ‘triangle’ | ‘five horses divide a body’ | ‘hardware store’ |

Similarly, in English compounds, both silent individual CLs and silent kind or individuating CLs can be found (the examples in (408) are from Wiltschko 2012: 157):

- | | | |
|-------|---------------------|----------------------|
| (408) | a. three card trick | b. five spice powder |
|-------|---------------------|----------------------|

The third pattern is that the silent Unit correlates with Chinese individual CLs only, but not individuating CLs. The silent Unit in Dëne (Wilhelm *ibid.*), Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006),

and Haitian Creole (Deprez 2005: 861), selects only nominals with [+Delimitable], i.e., non-mass nouns. In (409a) (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 46), the non-mass noun *dzól* ‘ball’ combines with the numeral ‘five’ directly, whereas in (409b) (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 47), the mass noun *bër* ‘meat’ may not do so. The same contrast is reported in Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006).

- (409)a. solághe dzól b. *solághe bër [Dëne]
 five ball five meat
 ‘five balls’

Some Formosan languages in Taiwan seem to behave like Dëne and Karitiana (Tang 2004). They have neither CLs nor plural morphology, and numerals can combine with non-mass nouns directly, but not with mass nouns. In Jingpo (Cheung 2003: 28), CLs are required for mass nouns, but optional for non-mass nouns:

- (410)a. udi (hkum) sanit b. n-gu *(tum) sanit [Jingpo]
 egg CL seven rice CL seven
 ‘seven eggs’ ‘seven grains of rice’

In addition to concret nouns, Wilhelm (*ibid.*: 48) also reports that in Dëne, abstract nouns encode unbound concepts and they may not combine with a numeral directly.

The fourth pattern is seen in languages like English. In English, generally speaking, the silent Unit selects nominals with [+Numerable], whereas an overt Unit selects nominals with [-Numerable]. In *three books*, where *books* is [+Numerable] and [+Delimitable], the Unit is silent. Similarly, in *three beliefs*, where *beliefs* is [+Numerable] and [-Delimitable], the Unit is also silent. In contrast, in *three pieces of paper* or *three pieces of furniture*, where *paper* or *furniture* is [-Numerable], the Unit is realized by *pieces*.

Since Unit is always [+Numerable], we can see that in English, Unit as a bearer of the feature also takes nominals that have this feature as its complement. Therefore, there is an [+Numerable]-Agree relation between the silent Unit and its selected noun, in English.

The above four patterns are summarized in (411).

(411) Realizations of the head of UnitP

	standard and container measures, kind, collective, and partitive unit words	other unit words that select [-Delimitable] N	other unit words that select [+Delimitable] N
Chinese	overt	individuating CL	individual CL
Yudja	overt	Ø	
Dëne	overt		Ø
English	overt	Ø for [+Numerable] N	

The above classification of the various patterns of the realization of Unit is made on the consideration of three fundamental factors: the overttness of the functional head Unit, the selection of the Delimitability feature by Unit, and the selection of the Numerability feature by Unit.

In Manarin Chinese, since the head of UnitP may not be silent, no noun may be next to a numeral, and thus all nouns in the language are non-count nouns. In contrast, since the silent head of UnitP selects both [-Delimitable] and [+Delimitable] nouns in Yudja, all nouns are count nouns in the language. The feature delimitabilty may make further classifications in the

languages. In Dëne, the silent head of UnitP selects [+Delimitable] nouns only, thus only nouns of this type are count nouns in the language. Finally, since the silent head of UnitP selects nouns with [+Numerable], regardless of whether they are [+Delimitable] (e.g., *ball*) or [-Delimitable] (e.g., *belief*), only nouns of this type are count nouns.

In my analysis, no morphological plurality marker is considered for the syntax of countability, and unit words can be silent. Considering languages such as Yudja, Dëne, and Tongan, where a bare noun may combine with a numeral directly, without any CL or number marker, I agree with Wilhelm (*ibid.*: 63-64) that “a grammatical marker of countability is not a universal requirement” (contra Doetjes 1997). In contrast to the overt grammatical marker approach, in my approach, silent unit words may encode countability in the syntactic structures of numeral expressions. Like other types of functional heads, human languages may differ in the overtness of the head of UnitP.

The idea that languages may have silent elements to encode counting unit is not new. For example, Sharvy (1978) states that English might have empty CLs correlating to Chinese individual CLs. Thus *three books* contains a silent individual CL, *Open three beers* contains a silent container measure, and *We tasted three Canadian beers* contains a silent kind CL. Krifka (2008: Sec. 6.3) also states that “[C]ount nouns in [+Num -Cl] languages have meaning with ‘built-in’ classifiers” (also Krifka 1995: 406; Muromatsu 2003: 84). Moreover, Delsing (1993), Van Riemsdijk (2005) and Vangsnes (2008) claim that kind readings of numeral expressions in Germanic languages have a silent CL. Thus when *three wines* means ‘three kinds of wine’, a silent kind CL occurs. Csirmaz & Dékány (2010: 11) also argue for the existence of zero CLs in Hungarian. In Bowers (1991: 19), the nominal functional head Nm, which is realized by a CL in Mandarin Chinese, is labelled by an empty category *e* for the structure of the English nominal *these three good books* (in his structure, the numeral is an adjunct of NmP).⁶⁰

The analysis of this book has developed the idea of silent CL, and further identified the possible conditions for a silent CL to occur. According to my investigation, the availability conditions for silent CLs, as well as the exact conditions for certain types of overt CLs in Chinese, may correlate with the co-occurrence restrictions of the CLs. Also, identifying the exact type of a silent unit element (kind CL or container measure, etc.) is decided syntagmatically, as seen in (401). But generally speaking, the ambiguity possibility does not falsify the existence of empty unit words (contra Doetjes 1996: 48-49).

In this analysis of numeral expressions, individual and individuating CLs behave like auxiliaries in nominal domains. Auxiliaries are base-generated at the functional heads. Their formal features and overtness at PF are subject to language variation, as expected (Kayne 2012b).

Grammatical formatives such as tense markers, definiteness markers (e.g., articles), and counterfactual markers (e.g., subjunctive mood markers) are found to be overt in many non-CL languages, but not overt in Chinese. In contrast to this pattern, individual CLs as unit words in numeral expressions are obligatorily overt in Chinese, but not overt in non-CL languages. Moreover, the effects of Universal Sorter and Universal Packager, which contain covert kind CLs and covert container measures, respectively, are also absent in Chinese. All of these indicate that Chinese does not show context-dependent flexibility in certain aspects. With more and more studies of syntactic issues, we cast a reasonable doubt on the belief that Chinese syntax is more discourse-dependent than other languages, and the claim that Chinese is a discourse-oriented language (e.g., Tsao 1977).

⁶⁰ One might wonder if English has silent form for the head of Unit, how Chierchia’s (1998) typology of NP denotations is captured. In his typology, bare nouns in Mandarin Chinese are all mass nouns, which is not true (2.3.2). For more critical comments on other parts of the typology, see Borer (2005: Ch. 4).

5.6.3 A comparison with numeral-oriented approaches

The proposed unit word-oriented analysis of the language variation in the syntax of numeral expressions is different from the noun-semantics-oriented analysis and number-morphology-oriented analysis, which I have argued against in 2.6.2 and 2.6.3, respectively.

this unit word-oriented analysis of the language variation is also different from the numeral-oriented analysis proposed in Wilhelm (*ibid.*) (adopted in Hsieh 2008: 36-37). Following Krifka (1995: 400), Wilhelm (2008: 54) first introduces an operator or function that specifies the objects to be counted as atoms. This atom-accessing function is called OU (short form for Object Unit) (1995: 400). She then makes the following statement (p. 56):

in general, counting involves an atom-accessing function OU. Languages differ in whether OU is part of the meaning of numerals or expressed separately by numeral CLs. In other words, I propose that there is crosslinguistic variation in the semantics of numerals, and that this variation is responsible for the difference between Chinese and Dëne/English. Chinese, Dëne, and English are the same, however, in that in each of them the count/mass distinction is based on atomicity, and not on number properties such as inherent singularity.

According to this numeral-oriented approach, in languages such as Dëne and English, the unit meaning of CLs is integrated into numerals, countability correlates with atomicity of the element denoted by a noun, and only count nouns may semantically be compatible with a numeral. In Chinese, however, unit meanings are expressed by CLs, rather than numerals.

I do not adopt this approach for the following four reasons.

First, in non-CL languages such as Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011) and Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm 2008: 64), a numeral may occur with a mass noun, as in (404). Thus, if the unit meaning is integrated into the numerals in such languages, the theory cannot explain why the combination of a numeral with a mass noun is impossible in Dëne, but possible in Yudja and Halkomelem Salish. In my unit word-oriented approach, both types of languages may have silent CLs and they differ in the selection of the Delimitability feature by the silent CLs. The variation correlates exactly with that between individual and individuating CLs in CL languages. In Wilhelm (*ibid.*), the pattern of Halkomelem Salish is mentioned, without an analysis (her p. 64).

Second, the five types of unit words listed at the beginning of 5.6.2 also exist in non-CL languages that have no plural markers. The following Dëne examples are from Wilhelm (2008: 47), and the Karitiana examples are from Müller et al. (2006: 133).

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|--|---|-------------|
| (412)a. | solághe <u>nedádhi</u> bër
five pound meat
'five pounds of meat' | b. | náke <u>tutılı</u> tı'ólátué
two bottle beer
'two bottles of beer' | [Dëne] |
| (413)a. | Myhin-t <u>kilo</u> -t ouro na-aka-t
one kilo-OBL gold DECL-AUX-NFUT
'One kilogram of gold fell.' | | i-'ot-<o>t
part-fall-RED-NFUT | [Karitiana] |
| | b. | jõnso naka-ot-Ø
woman DECL-bring-NFUT | sympom-t <u>byt</u> -ypip ese
two-OBL bowl-in water
'The woman brought two bowls of water.' | |

In another non-CL and non-plural-marker language, Yudja (Lima 2010: 10-11), the partitive CL *txa* is available, to distinguish the part of an entity (e.g., pieces of meat from an animal) from the whole body of the entity (e.g., the whole animal). In the latter case, *txa* does

not occur.

If a numeral always contains unit information in such languages, an additional operation is necessary to get rid of the information when the numeral occurs with any unit word of the five types. This is because a numeral is in construal with one unit only. For instance, when the meaning of ‘five groups of students’ or ‘five boxes of books’ is expressed, the numeral for ‘five’ in a non-CL language must exhibit the same properties of the corresponding numeral in a CL language. It is not clear to me how this is achieved in this numeral-oriented approach.

Third, the assumption that the count and non-count distinction is based on atomicity is problematic. The problem is discussed in Rothstein (2010a), Krifka (2008), Chierchia (2010), among others (see my 2.6.2). The numeral-oriented approach tries to cover English, as well as other languages, but does not explain the complexity of the languages. In my Chapter 2, I proposed a four way contrasts for the count-mass distinction. My new analysis can explain not only the regular cases, but also the cases that are labeled as “semantics-syntax mismatches” in Wilhelm (*ibid.*: 64), e.g., *furniture*.

Fourth, the two arguments used to support the idea that unit meanings are integrated into numerals in non-CL languages are weak. Both arguments are intended to show numerals in non-CL languages are different from those in CL-languages. The first argument is that some numerals in Dëne are specifically for human, which might mean that “Dëne basic numerals contain a general classifier that accesses the atoms or object units in the denotation” (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 58). The argument implies that a numeral that contains unit information should not exist in CL languages. However, Mandarin Chinese does have words that encode the combination of a numeral and a CL. For instance, *lia* = *liang* ‘two + CL’, and *sa* = *san* ‘three + CL’ (see footnote 25 in Chapter 3 for a different use of *lia*).

- | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|
| (414)a. | lia mantou
two+CL steamed.bread
‘two items of steamed bread’ | b. | lia pingguo
two+CL apple
‘two apples’ |
| (415)a. | sa mantou
Three.CL steamed.bread
‘three items of steamed bread’ | b. | sa pingguo
three.CL apple
‘three apples’ |

In neither Dëne nor Mandarin Chinese, is such morphological contraction systematic. Therefore, they do not tell us the general structural contrasts between CL and non-CL languages.

The second argument to support the idea that unit meanings are integrated into numerals in non-CL languages is that “In English and Dëne, but not in Mandarin and other languages with obligatory numeral classifiers, numerals can be used pronominally. In the latter, only the numeral-classifier combination can be used pronominally.” In (416), *one* alone can mean ‘one new blanket’, whereas in the Mandarin Chinese examples in (417), *yi* ‘one’ alone may not stand for ‘one new blanket’.

- (416) I bought two new blankets. One is black and one is red.
- (417)a. Wo mai-le liang tiao xin tanzi. Yi tiao hei de, yi tiao hong de.
I buy-PRF two CL new blanket one CL black DE one CL red DE
‘I bought two new blankets. One is black and one is red.’
- b. *Wo mai-le liang tiao xin tanzi. Yi hei de, yi hong de.
I buy-PRF two CL new blanket one black DE one red DE
(Intended: ‘I bought two new blankets. One is black and one is red.’)

The data indeed show that numerals in the two languages behave differently. However, I

doubt whether the contrast can show that a numeral contains unit information in non-CL languages. Data like (416) and (417a) can be derived by deletion. In (416), the NP *new blanket* is deleted after each instance of *one* (see 5.2.2).⁶¹ In (417a), the NP *xin tanzi* ‘new blanket’ is deleted after each instance of *yi tiao* ‘one CL’. The deletion is licensed by the CL *tiao*, which is a head element (5.2.1). (417b) is not acceptable simply because a numeral is not a head element, and thus it cannot license the deletion of the string *tiao xin tanzi* ‘CL new blanket’. (See 5.2.2 for a comparison between English and Chinese in this respect).

The two approaches, the unit-word-oriented and the numeral-oriented approach to numeral expressions, have been seen in Quine (1969: 36), in a slightly different version. Quine states that a CL in a CL language can be treated as a constituting part of a numeral, so that a numeral is sensitive to the semantic type of the noun when it applies to the noun. On the other hand, a CL can also be treated as a unit word for the noun, so that a numeral can apply to the noun. Quine does not make a choice between the two approaches. But the present approach to individual and individuating CLs argues for the second one.

In addition to Wilhelm’s (*ibid.*) semantically numeral-oriented approach, Lehmann (2008) proposes a morphologically numeral-oriented approach to the existence CLs in CL languages. In the latter approach, “[T]he primary function of numeral classifiers is to serve as dummy nouns that those numerals which are affixes can attach to.” (*Ibid.* p. 5) However, numerals in Mandarin Chinese, regardless how long they are, always require the occurrence of a CL when counting. In (418), the numeral *yibaiwushisan* ‘one hundred and fifty-three’ has five syllables. It does not look like an affix, but the CL *zhang* is obligatory.

- (418) *yibaiwushisan* *(*zhang*) *zhuozi*
 153 CL table
 ‘153 tables’

Second, as shown in 2.7.1, when a numeral occurs in a verbal expression in English, a CL is required. If numerals do not need CLs in nominals in English, they should not require the occurrence of CLs in verbal expressions as well. One should not expect the same numerals to behave differently morphologically in the same language.

5.7. Chapter summary

In this chapter, I have argued for two new projections between DP and NP: UnitP and DelP, in addition to NumP and QuantP. The two projections represent Numerability and Delimitability, the two features identified in Chapter 2. Numerals are argued to be base-generated at Spec of Unit and a unit word such as a CL heads UnitP. Thus UnitP is projected if a numeral occurs, regardless of whether there is any overt form for the head of this projection. Delimitive adjectives are argued to be hosted at Spec of DelP.

Plural markers, including reduplicate unit words in Mandarin Chinese, are hosted in NumP. UnitP and NumP are different functional projections. Thus, the occurrence of a plural marker does not correlate with the projection of UnitP.

In the proposed analysis, countability is represented by functional structures, rather than substantive properties of nouns. In this aspect, the analysis is compatible with Borer’s (2005) syntactic approach to countability, although the details of our functional structures are different.

Using the two new labels, UnitP and DelP, I have also presented the derivations of the left- and right-branching structures of Chinese numeral expressions, established in Chapter 4.

⁶¹ The word *one* in (416) is different from the pronominal use of *one* in data like (i) or (32a). In (i), the word *one* cannot be followed by a noun such as *car*.

(i) John bought a big car and Mary bought a small *one* (**car*).

Then, based on the selections of the two features, Numerability and Delimitability, I have represented various realizations of the head of UnitP in different types of languages, and within the same language. The null Unit in Yudja is a covert counterpart of either an individual or individuating CL in Chinese. The null Unit in Dëne is a covert counterpart of individual CL in Chinese. While identifying the differences in the realizations of the function head of Unit, I have argued against numeral-oriented analyses of cross-linguistic variations of the presence of individual and individuating CLs. In this analysis, language variations are represented by fine, yet discrete, gradations of properties of overt and covert functional elements.

Chapter 6 Noun-Classifier Compounds and Place-Holder Classifiers

6.1. Introduction

In Chinese, a compound can be made of a noun and a CL, as shown by the underlined part in the examples in (419). I will call the compound-internal CL lower CL, and the one out of the compound higher CL, in a numeral expression. In (419b), for instance, *qun* is the lower CL and *ge* is the higher one.

- (419)a. yi di shui-di b. yi ge yang-qun c. yi zu xian-tiao
one CL water-CL one CL sheep-CL one CL line-CL
'one drop of water' 'one flock of sheep' 'one group of lines'

One goal of this chapter is to show that even for a nominal that has a built-in element to denote unit, another unit word is still required to link the nominal to a numeral in Chinese. Thus the occurrence of a CL between a numeral and a nominal in Chinese is clearly a syntactic issue. It reflects a syntagmatic relation between a numeral and a nominal in the language, as claimed in Chapter 2. In this respect, the language system has a consistent syntactic pattern, not affected by semantics.

Another goal of the chapter is to show how CLs exhibit different syntactic properties in different syntactic positions. The lower CLs are identified as a realization of Del, if they are not kind CLs. If CLs can be a realization of Del, in addition to the realization of Unit and Num (Chapter 5), we see how the syntactic context decides the syntactic status of linguistic formatives. The higher CLs in cases such as (419a) and (419b) are a place-holder of Unit, without semantic contents. I argue that a construction with a place-holder CL may have a different structure from the corresponding construction in which the same CL is not a place-holder.

Identifying the possible place-holder function of the higher CL in numeral expressions is significant in at least two aspects. First, the surface position of a unit word in a numeral expression must be the position of a functional head. Second, CLs provide one more instance of evidence for the parallelism between the syntax of nominals and the syntax of verbal or clausal constructions: both may have X^0 place-holders. The English auxiliary *do* in the so-called *do*-support is a place-holder of a functional head in the verbal domain, regardless of how one analyzes the condition for its occurrence (see Bruening 2010). Japanese also has a similar empty verb, *suru* 'do', functioning as a place-holder (Kishimoto 2011). We now find similar place-holders in the nominal domain (See Aboh et al. 2010: 782 and the references thereof for a summary of more parallelisms between nominal and clausal constructions, with respect to the structural makeup and syntactic operations).

The chapter is organized as follows. Section 6.2 presents new data to show the syntactic similarities and differences between N-CL compounds and bare nouns in Mandarin Chinese. Section 6.3 reports, on the one hand, how the lower CL decides the Delimitability of the compound, and plays a role in the non-mass status of the compound when the noun root is a mass noun; and on the other hand, how the lower CL has no influence on the non-count status of the compound. These two properties lead us to see that, while the higher CL heads Unit, the lower CL never does so. Instead, it can be a realization of Del. In Section 6.4, various relations between the higher CL and the lower CL are discussed. The section shows that if there is no place-holder CL, although there are two CLs, only the lower one can be an individuating CL, and only the higher one encodes a counting unit. The two CLs also interact with respect to delimitive modifiers. In Section 6.5, I present the semantic emptiness of the higher CL, if it is *ge* or a copy of the lower CL, arguing for their place-holder status. In Section 6.6, I present the syntactic derivations of different numeral expressions that contain

an N-CL compound, including those containing a place-holder. Section 6.7 is a brief summary.

6.2. Basic properties of N-CL compounds

6.2.1 The components of N-CL compounds

In some languages, one can find the so-called singulatives, as shown by the suffixes in (420b), (421b) (Acquaviva 2010: 7), and the right morpheme of the examples in (422) (Yi 2010: 94):

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|----|--|
| (420)a. | hteb
'fire wood' | b. | hteb-a
'piece of firewood' | | [Moroccan Arabic] |
| (421)a. | glao
'rain' | b. | glav-enn
'raindrop' | | [Breton] |
| (422)a. | mwul-pangwul
water-drop
'water drop' | b. | pis-pangwul
rain-drop
'rain drop' | c. | kilum-pangwul
oil-drop
'oil drop', |
| | | | | | [Korean] |

Similar complex words are found systematically in Mandarin Chinese, with the following characteristics. First, the counterparts of singularives are just CLs. Any type of CL may follow a noun, forming a compound, as seen in (423) (see Loke 1997 for a discussion of the historical origin of such compounds in Mandarin Chinese).

- | | | | | | |
|---------|---|--|--|--|--------------------|
| (423)a. | shui-di
water-CL
'water-drop' | zhi-zhang
paper-CL
'paper-piece' | tu-dui
earth-CL
'earth-pile' | | [Individuating CL] |
| b. | hua-duo
flower-CL
'flower' | shu-ben
book-CL
'book' | ma-pi
horse-CL
'horse' | | [Individual CL] |
| c. | huluobo-pian
carrot-CL
'carrot-slice' | pingguo-kuai
apple-CL
'apple-chunk' | hua-ban
flower-CL
'flower-petal' | | [Partitive CL] |
| d. | yang-qun
sheep-CL
'sheep-flock' | yaoshi-chuan
key-CL
'key-bunch' | shu-dui
book-CL
'book-pile' | | [Collective CL] |
| e. | shu-zhong
tree-kind
'tree-type' | dongwu-lei
animal-kind
'animal-type' | shipin-lei
food-kind
'food-type' | | [Kind CL] |

CLs are thus systematically able to occur in an N-CL compound. Although accidental gaps occur (e.g., the CL *ge* may not occur in such a compound), the pattern of the compound is an attested construction in the language, and its generality should not be ignored in analyzing the formal properties of CLs (cf. Cheng 2012: 202 fn. 3). This is parallel to the situation that one does not deny the availability of the consonant-vowel combination in Mandarin Chinese, even though the combinations such as /k'u²/, /ku²/, and /su³/ do not exist in the language.

Second, not only all types of CLs, but also all types of nouns may occur in an N-CL compound. The noun root *shui* 'water' in (423a) is a mass noun, and the noun root *hua* 'flower' in (423b) is a non-mass noun. As for abstract nouns, *kuan* 'money' in the N-CL compound in (424a) is a mass noun, whereas *shi* 'event' in the N-CL compound in (424b) is a non-mass noun

- | | | | |
|---------|--|-----|--|
| (424)a. | liang ge kuan-xiang
two CL money-CL
'two units of money' | a'. | liang xiang zhuan kuan
two CL special money
'two units of special money' |
| b. | liang ge shi-jian
two CL event-CL
'two events' | b'. | liang jian shi
two CL event
'two events' |

Third, the selection of the Delimitability of a CL in an N-CL compound is identical to that of the corresponding free form CL. The individual CL *zhi* occurs with the non-mass noun *qiang* 'gun' in (425a), but not the mass noun *you* 'oil' in (425b). In contrast, the individuating CL *di* occurs with the mass noun *shui* 'water' in (426a), but not the non-mass noun *putao* 'grape' in (426b).

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|----|-----------------------|
| (425)a. | qiang-zhi
gun-CL
'gun' | b. | *you-zhi
oil-CL |
| (426)a. | shui-di
water-CL
'water drop' | b. | *putao-di
grape-CL |

The unacceptability of data like (425b) and (426b) indicates that a CL has its consistent selection pattern, regardless of whether it is in a compound or not.

Fourth, compound-internal CLs have a consistent position: they always surface at the end of a word in Chinese. The underlined morphemes in (427), which are not the last morphemes of the words, are lexical roots, not CLs, although they share forms with the nominal or verbal CLs in (428).

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--|----|---|----|--|
| (427)a. | <u>ge</u> -zi
height-suffix
'height (of a person)' | b. | <u>ben</u> -zi
book-suffix
'writing book' | c. | yi- <u>xia</u> -zi
one-down-suffix
'immediately' |
| (428)a. | san ge haizi
three CL kid
'three kids' | b. | san ben shu
three CL book
'three books' | c. | Pai wo san xia!
pat I three CL
'Pat me three times!' |

All CLs in Chinese have been developed from other substantive categories such as nouns and verbs (e.g., Li 1924; Peyraube 1998). Thus the form-sharing is not surprising.

This fixed final position of CLs in the compounds makes them different from regular nominal components of a compound, which have no constraint on their positions:

- | | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------|---|---------------|----|------------------|---|----------------------|
| (429)a. | dao-di | ~ | di-dao | b. | ren-qing | ~ | qing-ren |
| | road-earth | | earth-road | | person-love | | love-person |
| | 'real' | | 'real' | | 'human relation' | | 'lover' |
| c. | cha-hua | ~ | hua-cha | d. | he-fan | ~ | fan-he ⁶² |
| | tea-flower | | flower-tea | | box-meal | | meal-box |
| | 'tea flower' | | 'scented tea' | | 'meal in boxes' | | 'meal box' |

⁶² The two forms *he-fan* 'box-meal' and *fan-he* 'meal box' are Beijing Mandarin. Their Taiwan Mandarin counterparts are *he-can* 'box-meal' and *can-he* 'meal box', respectively.

6.2.2 The distributions and readings of N-CL compounds

The distributions of N-CL compounds are similar to those of bare nouns. Like a bare noun, an N-CL compound can occur in an argument position, as in (430a), and a predicate position, as in (430b):

- (430)a. Kefei kanjian-le hua-duo. b. Zhe shi hua-duo.
Kefei see-PRF flower-CL DEM be flower-CL
'Kefei saw (the) flowers.'
'Kefei saw {the/a} flower.' 'This is a flower.'
'These are flowers.'

Like a bare noun, the interpretation of an N-CL compound can be definite, or indefinite, as seen in (431a), generic, as seen (431b), or kind, as seen in (432). Also like a bare noun, such a compound does not have to denote plural or collective entities (contra Li & Thompson 1981: 82). Singular readings of (431a) and (431b) are possible.

- (431)a. Ta xiang yao hua-duo.
he want want flower-CL
'He want to have flowers.'
'He want to have the flower(s).'
- b. Hua-duo hui diaoxie.
'Flowers can wither.'
'{That flower/Those flowers/Flowers} can wither.'
- (432)a. Zhang Zhongjing faxian-le shancha hua-duo.
Zhang Zhongjing discover-PRF camellia flower-CL
'Zhang Zhongjing discovered camellia.'
- b. Zai zhe ge dao-shang, ma-pi yijing miejue-le.
at this CL island-on horse-CL already extinct-PRF
'On this island, horses have become extinct.'

But, as noted in X. P. Li (2011: 53), if the compound-internal CL is a kind CL, the compound is different from a bare noun. Such a compound shows properties of kind-denoting nominals only, whereas a bare noun can be ambiguous in kind and non-kind reading. I use (433) to show that such a compound may not be the argument of the presentational *fei-zhe* 'fly-PRG', whereas a bare noun can.

- (433) Tian-shang fei-zhe {niao/*niao-lei}.
sky-on fly-PRG bird/bird-kind
'Birds are flying in the sky.'

If the kind meaning of the compound-internal kind CL is projected to the whole compound, the exclusive kind reading of such a compound is expected.

6.3. Delimitability, Numerability and N-CL compounds

6.3.1 Compound-internal CL as a realization of Del

In 2.4.3, we have seen that kind CLs may not be modified by a delimitive adjective, whereas all other types of CLs may. This contrast remains for N-CL compounds. If the lower CL is a kind CL, the whole compound may not be modified by a delimitive adjective, as seen in (434b) and (435b). Again, as we stated above, if the properties of the compound-internal kind CL are projected to the whole compound, the constraint on the compound is expected.

- (434)a. hua-lei b. *da hua-lei
 flower-type big flower-type
 ‘flower type’
- (435)a. shu-zhong b. *da shu-zhong
 tree-type big tree-type
 ‘tree type’

However, if the lower CL is not a kind one, the whole compound may be modified by a delimitive adjective, regardless of whether the noun itself may be modified by such an adjective if it occurs alone. In (436a), *hua* ‘flower’ is modified by *da* ‘big’, and thus there is no surprise to see that in (436b) *da* occurs with the compound *hua-duo* ‘flower-CL’. In (437a), however, *xue* ‘blood’ may not be modified by *da* ‘big’, but the compound *xue-di* ‘blood-CL’ can be modified by *da* in (437b).

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|----|---|----|--|
| (436)a. | da hua
big flower
‘big flower’ | b. | da hua-duo
big flower-CL
‘big flower’ | c. | yi da duo hua
one big CL flower
‘one big flower’ |
| (437)a. | *da xue
big blood | b. | da xue-di
big blood-CL
‘big blood-drop’ | c. | yi da di xue
one big CL blood
‘big blood-drop’ |

In (437b), the values of Delimitability of the two elements of the compound are conflicted: *xue* ‘blood’ has [-Delimitable], as seen in (437a), and *di* has [+Delimitable], as seen in (437c). But the whole compound can be modified by a delimitive adjective and thus has [+Delimitable].

The effect of the compound-internal CL is seen not only in modification, but also in predication. In (438a) and (438b), the mass noun may not be the subject of the delimitable predicate *hen da* ‘very big’. In (439a) and (439b), however, the corresponding N-CL compound, which has the same mass noun root as in (438), can be the subject of the delimitable predicate.

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (438)a. | *You hen da.
oil very big | b. | *Qi hen da.
air very big |
| (439)a. | You-di hen da.
oil-CL very big
‘The oil drop is big.’ | b. | Qi-tuan hen da.
air-CL very big
‘The (ball-like) air-unit is big.’ |

Like a diminutive marker, a compound-internal CL itself may not be modified, but it makes the whole compound able to be modified by a delimitive adjective, or to be the subject of a delimitive adjective. I conclude that a compound-internal CL contributes the feature [+Delimitable] to the whole compound, if it is not a kind CL. In other words, it is the compound-internal CL that contributes the non-mass status of the compound, when the noun root is a mass noun.

Syntactically, I thus claim that a compound-internal CL, if it is not a kind CL, is a realization of the head of DelP. The whole compound is thus a non-mass one. It thus always has the feature [+Delimitable]. If the compound-internal CL is a kind CL, it should be base-generated at N, with the feature [-Delimitable]. I will present the syntactic derivations of an N-CL compound in 6.6.1.

So far, we have identified three functional positions of CLs: first, as a realization of Unit (5.2.1) when it is in a simple free form; second, as a realization of Num (5.2.4), when it is in a

RUWN or a SUWN; and third, as a realization of Del, when it is in a compound. So the syntactic status of a CL is context-dependent.

6.3.2 The non-count status of an N-CL compound

Like other nouns in Chinese, N-CL compounds may not combine with a numeral directly, as seen in (440). A unit word is required for such a combination, as in (441). So N-CL compounds are also non-count nouns.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (440)a. *san shui-di
three water-CL | b. *san hua-duo
three flower-CL |
| (441)a. liang ge shui-di
two CL water-CL
‘two drops of water’ | b. liang chuan shui-di
two CL water-CL
‘two rows of water-drops’ |

As expected, when quantifiers that need to occur with a unit word (see 2.5) combine with such compounds, a unit word must occur, as seen in (442a); and when quantifiers that reject a unit word combine with such compounds, no unit word may occur, as seen in (442b).

- (442)a. Nali you ji *(ge) shui-di?
 there have how.many CL water-CL
 ‘How many water drops are there?’
- b. Yusan-shang juran mei-you (yi)-dian (*ge) shui-di.
 umbrella-on even not-have some CL water-CL
 ‘There is not even any water drop on the umbrella.’

Therefore N-CL compounds behave the same as regular nouns in the language, when they occur with numerals and various quantifiers. Such a compound is a non-count noun, with the feature [-Numerable].

With the two features, [+Delimitable] and [-Numerable], clearly, compounds like *shui-di* ‘water-CL’ are non-mass and non-count nouns, similar to *pingguo* ‘apple’ and the English word *furniture*. However, an N-CL compound contains a CL, a unit-denoting element. It expresses atomicity morphologically. But still, it requires the help of a unit word in order to show up with a numeral. Moreover, like simple nouns in the language, such compounds also reject the shifts of Universal Packager and Universal Sorter (2.2.5), since in no context may they combine with a numeral directly. This is in contrast to languages such as Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011) and Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006). In the latter type of languages, any noun can combine with a numeral directly (5.6.2). N-CL compounds tell us that even for a nominal that has a built-in element to denote unit, another unit word is still required to link the nominal to a numeral in Chinese. Thus the occurrence of a CL between a numeral and a nominal in Chinese must be a syntactic issue.

6.4. The relations between the higher and the lower CLs

6.4.1 No multiple individuating

If an N-CL compound has [+Delimitable], it is a non-mass noun. Non-mass nouns do not occur with individuating CLs. Thus if the lower CL is an individuating CL, the higher one cannot be another different individuating CL. Both *di* and *tan* are unambiguously individuating CLs, as seen in (443a) and (443b). The examples in (443c) and (443d) show that they cannot co-occur in the same numeral expression. So, semantically, only one individuating CL is allowed for one mass noun.

- (443)a. yi di shui
one CL water
'one drop of water'
c. *yi di shui-tan
one CL water-CL
- b. yi tan shui
one CL water
'one puddle of water'
d. *yi tan shui-di
one CL water-CL

Other CLs such as *tiao*, *zhang*, *pian* can be ambiguous. *Tiao* is an individual CL when it occurs with *yu* 'fish', but an individuating CL when it occurs with *bu* 'cloth'; *zhang* is an individual CL when it occurs with *zhuozi* 'table', but an individuating CL when it occurs with *zhi* 'paper'; *pian* is an individual CL when it occurs with *shuye* 'leaf', but an individuating CL when it occurs with *bing* 'ice'. If such a CL occurs as a higher CL, as in (444), one cannot exclude the possibility that the CL is an individual CL, representing the unit established by the lower CL. Thus, there is no case in which one mass noun occur with two individuating CLs.

- (444)a. san tiao mu-pian
three CL wood-CL
'three pieces of wood strips'
c. san zhang xiao zhi-pian
three CL small paper-CL
'three small pieces of paper'
- b. san pian mu-tiao
three CL wood-CL
'three pieces of wood strips'

6.4.2 No multiple counting-units

If the two CLs of a numeral expression have different forms, and the higher one is not *ge*, it is the higher one that encodes the counting unit. In (445a), there is only one CL, *juan*, which denotes a counting unit in a roll shape. In (445b), the lower CL is the same as the one in (445a), but the counting unit is the higher CL, *dui*, which is a collective CL. One uses this expression to count piles of luggage, rather than individual luggage rolls. The examples in (446) show the same point.

- (445)a. san juan xingli
three CL luggage
'three rolls of luggage'
- b. san dui xingli-juan
three CL luggage-CL
'three piles of luggage-rolls'
Not: 'three rolls of luggage'
- (446)a. si duo hua
four CL flower
'four flowers'
- b. si pai hua-duo
four CL flower-CL
'four rows of flowers'
Not: 'four flowers'
- c. si zhong hua-duo
four kind flower-CL
'four kinds of flowers'
Not: 'four flowers'

Since each counting operation allows only one counting unit, based on the readings of the examples in (445) and (446), we conclude that it is the CL that is local to the numeral that denotes the counting unit. So the higher one is consistently a realization of Unit, as claimed in Chapter 5. The lower one, as claimed in 6.3 above, is a realization of Del, rather than that of Unit.

6.4.3 The semantic interactions between the two CLs

A higher CL and a lower CL may interact in different ways, semantically.

The shape meaning of the whole numeral expression can be either the sum of the meanings of the two CLs, or the hierarchical combination of the meanings of the two CLs. In (447a) and (447b), for instance, both the flat-thin shape denoted by the CL *pian* and the

(447)a. san pian mu-tiao b. san tiao mu-pian
three CL wood-CL three CL wood-CL
Both: ‘three wood units that are flat-thin and narrow’

(448)a. *san li mu-tiao b. *san tiao mi-li
three CL wood-CL three CL rice-CL

(449) *san da pian xiao mu-tiao
three big CL small wood-CL

In (450a), however, the higher CL is the collective CL *dui* ‘pile’. In this case, the shape of a pile is composed of wood pieces that are in the shape of strips, a hierarchical relation between the two shapes. Conflict modifications are possible, as seen in (450b), since the modifiers have different scopes. Recall that collective CL constructions are left-branching, and thus the two modifiers are not in the same domain (Chapter 4).

(450)a. san dui mu-tiao
three CL wood-CL
'three piles of wood-strips'

b. san da dui xiao mu-tiao
three big CL small wood-CL
'three big piles of small wood-strips'

6.5. The place-holder CLs

167

functions as a place-holder of a syntactic position. This means that the upper CL in such constructions has no semantics.

6.5.1 Ge as the higher CL

If the higher CL is *ge*, the meaning of the lower CL is projected. First, the real counting unit is the lower one, rather than *ge*. In both (451a) and (451b), the higher CL is *ge*, but the encoded water-units are different. In (451a), the lower CL denotes a unit in a drop shape, and the counting unit denoted by the whole numeral expression is also in a drop shape, identical to the one denoted by the lower CL. In (451b), the lower CL denotes a unit in a puddle shape, and the counting unit denoted by the whole numeral expression is also in a puddle shape, identical to the one denoted by the lower CL.

- | | | | |
|---------|---|----|--|
| (451)a. | san ge shui-di
three CL water-CL
'three drops of water' | b. | san ge shui-tan
three CL water-CL
'three puddles of water' |
|---------|---|----|--|

Moreover, in the following three groups of examples, although *ge* follows the numeral immediately in all of the cases, the reading of the a-forms is decided by the lower CL, and is thus different from the meaning of the b-forms, where *ge* is the only CL (the b-forms are typically found in the northern Mandarin).

- | | | | | |
|---------|--|---|----|--|
| (452)a. | san ge luobo-pian
three CL carrot-CL
'three carrot-slices' | ≠ | b. | san ge luobo
three CL carrot
'three carrots' |
| (453)a. | san ge yang-qun
three CL sheep-CL
'three flocks of sheep' | ≠ | b. | san ge yang
three CL sheep
'three sheep' |
| (454)a. | san ge shu-zhong
three CL tree-type
'three kinds of trees' | ≠ | b. | san ge shu
three CL tree
'three trees' |

We know that if there is only one CL in a numeral expression, the unique CL encodes the counting unit. This is the case for the b-forms of (452), (453), and (454). We have also just seen in 6.4.2 that the higher CL denotes the counting unit. We now see that when an N-CL compound is preceded by the CL *ge*, it is the compound-internal CL that denotes the counting unit.

Second, if *ge* is the higher CL, it has no effect on the s-selection of the verb that takes the numeral expression as its argument. In (455a), the CL *juan*, which denotes a unit in a roll-shape, satisfies the s-selection of the complex verb *ya-bian* 'press-flat', whereas the CL *pian*, which denotes a unit in a flat shape, does not. In (455b), although the higher CL is *ge*, we see the same s-selection pattern. In this example, the selection is satisfied by the lower CL, a non-local element. The examples in (456) show the same point.

- | | |
|---------|---|
| (455)a. | Daiyu ya-bian-le yi xiao { *pian/juan } zhi.
Daiyu press-flat-PRF one small CL/CL paper
'Daiyu pressed a small { *piece/roll } of paper flat.' |
| b. | Daiyu ya-bian-le yi ge xiao zhi- { *pian/juan }.
Daiyu press-flat-PRF one CL small paper-CL/CL
'Daiyu pressed a small { *piece/roll } of paper flat.' |

- (456)a. Lu-shang ji-le yi { *di/tan } shui.
road-on accumulate-PRF one CL/CL water
'A { *drop/puddle } of water has accumulated on the road.'
- b. Lu-shang ji-le yi ge shui- { *di/tan }.
road-on accumulate-PRF one CL water-CL/CL
'A { *drop/puddle } of water has accumulated on the road.'

Therefore, the higher CL *ge* has no semantic function, behaving like a place-holder of certain syntactic position, in a numeral expression that contains a N-CL compound.

6.5.2 The CL copying constructions

If the higher CL has the same form as the lower CL, it is also semantically vacuous. For instance, if it is a copy of a collective CL, it does not behave like a collective CL. This can be seen in two aspects.

First, the scope of a left-peripheral modifier is changed. If there is only one collective CL, the left-peripheral modifier may be incompatible with the modifier of the NP, as in (457) (4.2.1). In (457b), the left-peripheral modifier is *dada* 'big', which is in conflict with the adjective preceding the NP, *xiao* 'small'. However, if the higher CL is a copy of the lower collective CL, the left-peripheral modifier may not be incompatible with the modifier of the compound. In (458b), the left-peripheral modifier is still *dada* 'big', and the adjective preceding the compound is *xiao* 'small'. This example is not acceptable.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (457)a. san qun yang
three CL sheep
'three flocks of sheep' | b. dada de san qun xiao yang
big DE three CL small sheep
'three big flocks of small sheep' |
| (458)a. san qun yang-qun
three CL sheep-CL
'three flocks of sheep' | b. *dada de san qun xiao yang-qun
big DE three CL small sheep-CL |

In Chapter 4, I use the acceptability of data like (457b) to argue for the grouping of the numeral with the CL, and thus for the left-branching structure of a collective CL construction. The acceptability contrast between (457b) and (458b) indicates that if the higher CL is a copy of a collective CL, it does not behave like a collective CL. Instead, since the scope of the left-peripheral modifier interacts with the NP in the CL copying construction, a right-branching structure is possible.

Second, the syntactic dependency of modifiers is also changed. In 3.2.2, I have shown that if a CL is a collective CL, there is no correlation between the different positions of the same modifier: immediately before the noun and immediately before the CL, as seen in (459a) and (459b), respectively. The two examples do not mean the same.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| (459)a. san qun <u>da</u> yang
three CL big sheep
'three flocks of big sheep' | ≠ | b. san <u>da</u> qun yang
three big CL sheep
'three big flocks of sheep' |
|---|---|--|

However, if the higher CL is a copy of the lower CL, a correlation between the different positions of the same modifier emerges. In (460a) the adjective *da* 'big' immediately precedes the compound, whereas in (460b), the same adjective immediately precedes the higher CL *qun*. The two examples mean the same.

- (460)a. san qun da yang-qun b. san da qun yang-qun
 three CL big sheep-CL three big CL sheep-CL
 ‘three big flocks of sheep’ = ‘three big flocks of sheep’

Thus, the higher copy of a collective CL does not behave like a collective CL any more. The correlation is similar to the semantic correlation between (461a) and (461b), discussed in 4.2.2. Crucially, the CLs in (460) are collective and the ones in (461) are individual.

- (461)a. san tou da niu b. san da tou niu
 three CL big cow three big CL cow
 ‘three big cows’ = ‘three big cows’

The above two points show that if the higher CL is a copy of the lower one, it behaves like an individual CL, which is base-generated at Unit and C-Commands the NP, and the structure of the whole contig construction is right-branching.

6.5.3 The alternation possibility

The above two subsections show that if the higher CL is *ge* or a copy of the lower one, it has no semantics, behaving like a place-holder of certain syntactic position. In this subsection, we provide further evidence for the place-holder status of such CLs, i.e., if they are exchangeable, they must be place-holders of the same syntactic position.

In (462), the forms in the three columns mean the same for each row. The higher CL is *ge* in column A, and a copy of the lower CL in column B. The forms in column C have only one CL each, which is identical to the lower CL in the other two columns.

- | (462) | A | B | C |
|-------|---|---|--|
| a. | san ge shui-di
three CL water-CL
A/B/C: ‘three drops of water’ | san di shui-di
three CL water-CL | san di shui [Individuating CL]
three CL water |
| b. | san ge hua-duo
three CL flower-CL
A/B/C: ‘three flowers’ | san duo hua-duo
three CL flower-CL | san duo hua [Individual CL]
three CL flower |
| c. | san ge luobo-pian
three CL carrot-CL
A/B/C: ‘three carrot-slices’ | san pian luobo-pian
three CL carrot-CL | san pian luobo [Partitive CL]
three CL carrot |
| d. | san ge yang-qun
three CL sheep-CL
A/B/C: ‘three flocks of sheep’ | san qun yang-qun
three CL sheep-CL | san qun yang [Collective CL]
three CL sheep |
| e. | san ge shu-zhong
three CL tree-kind
A/B/C: ‘three kinds of trees’ | san zhong shu-zhong
three kind tree-type | san zhong shu [Kind CL]
three kind tree |

The alternation between the forms in column A and the forms in column B is always possible. If the higher CLs in both columns are semantically vacuous, the alternation is expected.

Moreover, either group may always be changed into the corresponding simple forms in column C. If the higher CLs in column A and column B are all place-holders, this possibility of change is also expected. The semantics of a place-holder construction can be expressed by

The alternation among the three constructions is not found in other kinds of compounds, such as *xizhao-jian* ‘bath-room’, *you-tiao* ‘oil-stick (a kind of fried food)’, *ruan-jian* ‘soft-ware’ and *jiu-bei* ‘wine-cup’. For instance, the CL *ge* in (463a) may not be replaced by a copy of the second morpheme of the compound, as in (463b); and (463a) has a different reading from (463c).

- [illegible]

The contrast between the possible alternation of N-CL compound constructions and the impossible parallel alternation of other types of compounds supports a syntactic analysis of N-CL compounds.

I have shown that if the higher CL is *ge* or a copy of the lower one, it is a place-holder of certain syntactic position. We have seen that in (462), a place-holder CL may occur with all possible types of CLs. This consistency indicates that the occurrence of place-holder CLs is systematic in the language.

Moreover, the possibility to have a place-holder to occur in the position of a regular CL of a numeral expression means the position must be a functional head position. I have argued that the syntactic position for a CL that occurs between a numeral and a nominal is Unit (Chapter 4). Now we see that Unit can be realized by a place-holder.

A well-known place-holder of a functional head position is the English auxiliary *do*, which occurs in a clausal structure. The finding of the place-holders in nominal constructions supports the cross-categorial symmetry in syntax (Chomsky 1970).

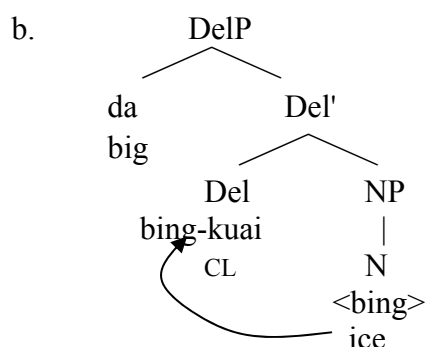
6.6.1 The constructions without a place-holder CL

According to our conclusion reached in 6.3.1, the lower CL, if it is not a kind CL, is a realization of Del. In order to derive a possible N-CL compound, I claim that the N head of an NP moves to the head of DelP. The derivation of (464a) is (464b):

- (464)a. da bing-kuai
big ice-CL
'big ice-chunk'

⁶³ The change in the opposite direction is not always possible. Not all single CL constructions may be changed into a double CL construction, due to the gap mentioned in 6.2.1 before. For instance, (ia) may not be changed into either (ib) or (ic).

- (i) a. san du qiang
three CL wall
'three walls'
- b. *san ge qiang-du
three CL wall-CL
- c. *san du qiang-du
three CL wall-CL



Since the NP lands to the left of the lower CL, the latter always shows up at the right-edge of the compound. This captures the position consistency of the lower CL, mentioned in 6.2.1.

After the N-to-Del movement, the noun alone may not have a syntactic dependency with another element anymore. The N-CL *hua-duo* ‘flower-CL’ in (465a) is derived by the raising of *hua* at N to *duo* at Del. After the raising, *hua* alone may not be related to the topic *hua* at the sentence-initial position, as shown in (465b). However, the whole compound *hua-duo* may be topicalized, as seen in (465c). The topicalization in (465c) is parallel to that in (466b), where the noun *hua* ‘flower’ alone does not undergo any head movement. The restriction follows the well-recognized constraint on head movement, which Platzack (2010: 8) formalizes as “If a head β moves to α , the $\{\alpha + \beta\}$ acts as one constituent.” Of course, the effect of this constraint is the same effect as that of the traditional Lexical Integrity (e.g., Di Sciullo & Williams 1987).

- (465)a. Shufen mai-le san ge hua-duo.
 Shufen buy-PRF three CL flower-CL
 ‘Shufen bought three flowers.’
- b. *Hua, Shufen mai-le san ge <hua>-duo.
 flower Shufen buy-PRF three CL flower-CL
- c. Hua-duo, Shufen mai-le san ge <hua-duo>.
 flower Shufen buy-PRF three CL flower-CL
 ‘Flowers, Shufen bought three.’
- (466)a. Shufen mai-le san ge hua.
 Shufen buy-PRF three CL flower
 ‘Shufen bought three flowers.’
- b. Hua, Shufen mai-le san ge.
 flower Shufen buy-PRF three CL
 ‘Flowers, Shufen bought three.’

If the lower CL is a kind CL, since it does not project a Delimitability feature, it is base-generated simply at N, instead of Del. Presumably, (467a), for instance, is derived by a direct merger of two N roots, as illustrated in (467b). As we discussed in 6.2.2, the kind meaning of the kind CL is projected to the whole compound.

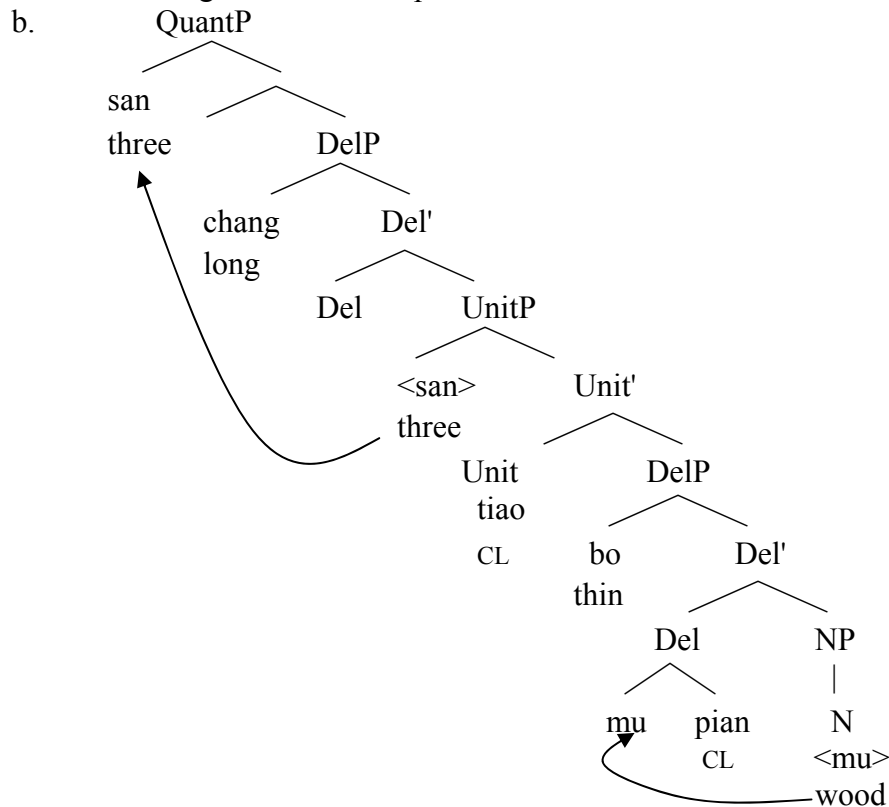
- (467)a. shu-zhong
 tree-kind
 ‘tree types’
- b.
-
- ```

graph TD
 N1[N] --> N2[N]
 N1 --> N3[N]
 N2 --> shu_tree[shu tree]
 N3 --> zhong_kind[zhong kind]

```

Now let us see the structure of a numeral expression that contains an N-CL compound. We have argued that the higher CL heads UnitP and the lower one, if it is not a kind CL, heads DelP. It is possible that both the higher CL and the compound each have a delimitive adjective, as seen in (468a). The derivation of (468a) is (468b). Note that the two CLs are different in this example and the higher one is not *ge*. Thus there is no place-holder CL in the structure. The higher CL *tiao* is the counting unit. Also recall that a pre-CL adjective may occur with another delimitive adjective that follows the CL, as in (374c,d), and thus the projections of two DelPs have been independently attested.

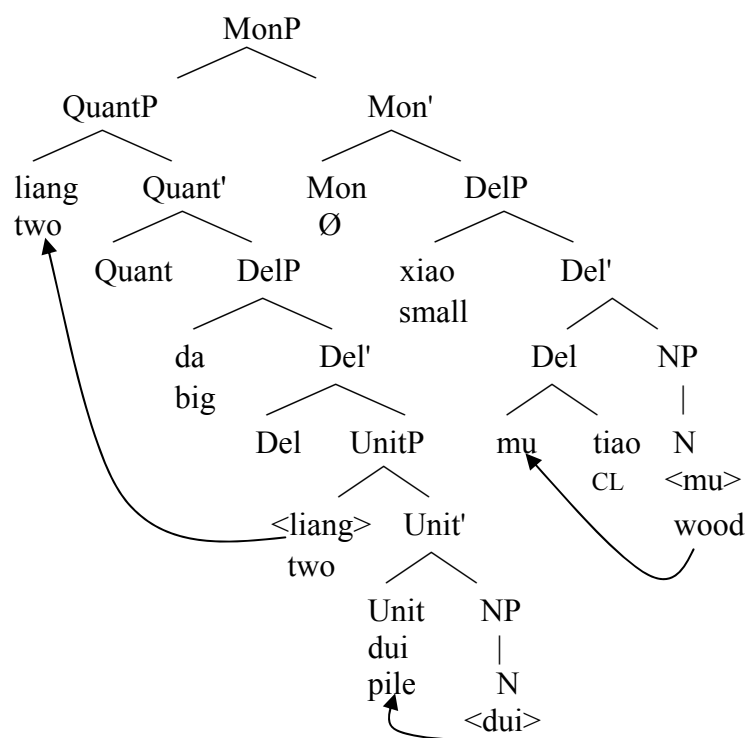
- (468)a. san chang tiao bo mu-pian  
 three long CL thin wood-CL  
 ‘three long and thin wood pieces’



If the higher CL is a collective CL, as we argued in Chapter 3, the construction has a left-branching structure. (469b) is the structure of (469a). The higher CL *dui* is the counting unit.

- (469)a. liang da dui xiao mu-tiao  
 two big CL small wood-CL  
 ‘two big piles of small wood strips’

b.

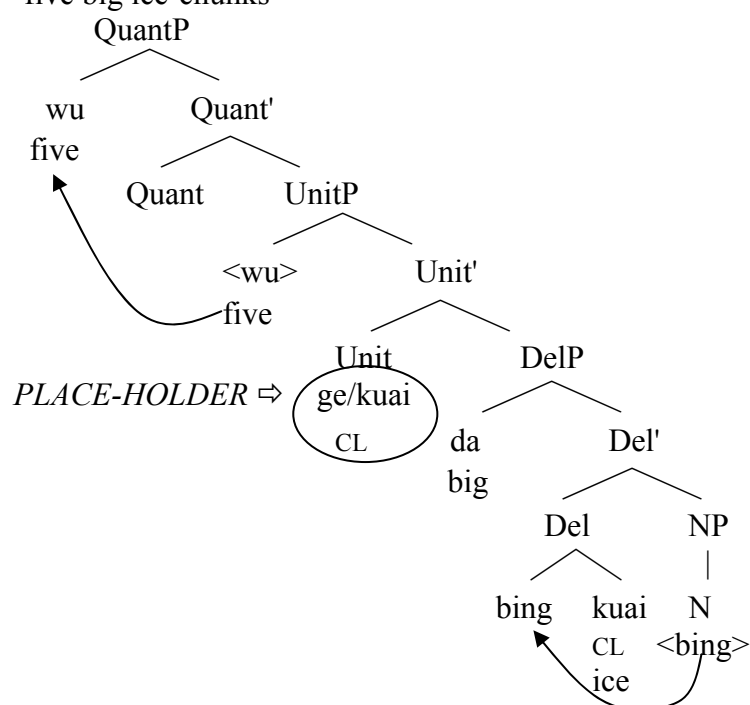


### 6.6.2 The constructions with a place-holder CL

One property of the place-holder CL constructions is that the higher CL is either *ge* or a copy of the lower CL (5.5). In (470a), *ge* may alternate with *kuai*. The structure of (470a) is (470b).

- (470)a. wu {ge/kuai} da bing-kuai  
 five CL/CL big ice-CL  
 'five big ice-chunks'

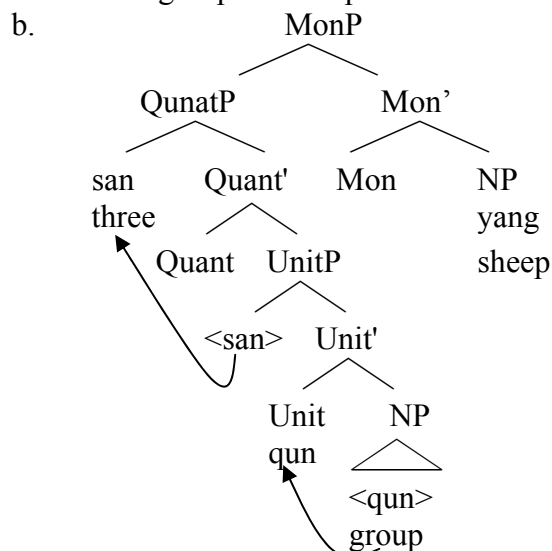
b.



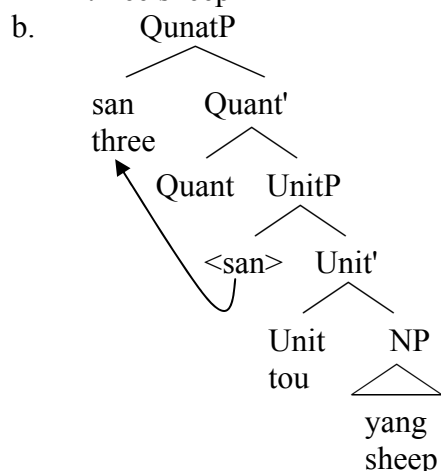
Another property of the place-holder CL constructions is that they have a consistent right-branching structure. Recall that constructions of collective CLs have a left-branching structure, and the constructions of individual CLs have a right-branching structure (Chapter

4). (471b) is the structure of (471a), where the collective CL *qun* occurs. (472b) is the structure of (472a), where the individual CL *tou* occurs. There is no place-holder CL in the two structures.

(471)a. san qun yang  
three CL sheep  
'three groups of sheep'

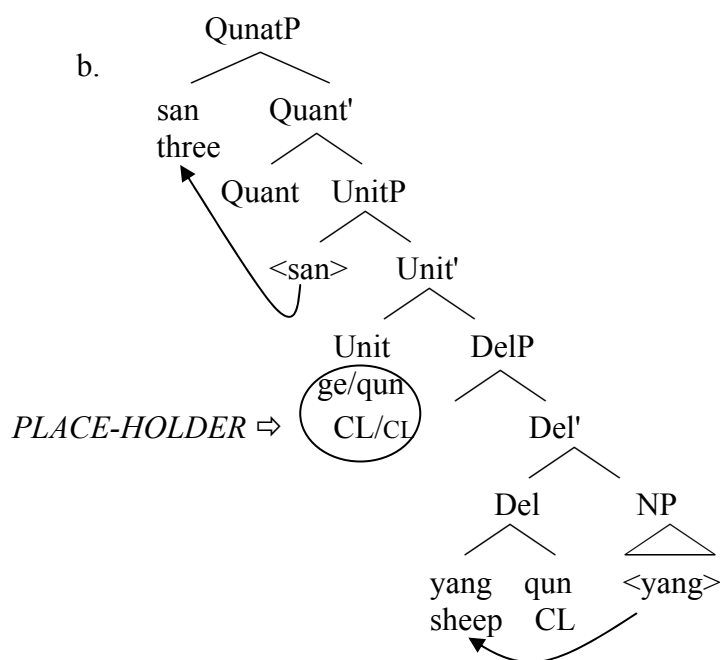


(472)a. san tou yang  
three CL sheep  
'three sheep'



In 6.5.2 above, we conclude that if the higher CL is a copy of the lower CL, the structure of the whole numeral expression is always right-branching, regardless of the type of the CL. (473b) is the structure of (473a) (= (458a)), in which the higher CL is a copy of the a collective CL, and the structure is right-branching.

(473)a. san {ge/qun} yang-qun  
three CL/CL sheep-CL  
'three groups of sheep'



Since numeral expressions with a place-holder CL have a consistent right-branching structure, we see the similarity in configuration between (473b) and (468b). The consistent right-branching structures are expected if place-holders must C-Command their associates. In (473b), the place-holder CL *ge/qun* C-Commands the lower CL *qun*.

The above structures capture the fact that CLs display different syntactic properties in different syntactic contexts. It is common for the same form of a formative to play different roles in different syntactic contexts, a phenomenon of syncretism (e.g., *that* is D or C; *for* is preposition and C). In addition to the three possible functional head positions for CLs identified before, Unit, Num, and Del, the structures may also vary with the status of the higher CL. If a CL is a place-holder, the structure of the numeral expression can be different from that of the corresponding construction in which the same CL is not a place-holder.

## 6.7 Chapter summary

In this chapter, I have shown that even for a nominal that has an internal element to denote unit, another unit word is still required to link the nominal to a numeral in Chinese. Thus the presence of a CL with a numeral and a nominal in Chinese is clearly syntactic, rather than semantic.

I have also shown how the presence of a lower CL decides the Delimitability of the compound on the one hand, and the presence of the unit word does not make a non-count nominal a count one, on the other hand. These two properties have led us to see that a lower CL is a realization of Del, rather than Unit. Therefore, in addition to Unit and Num, the two syntactic positions identified before, there is a third functional position for CLs: Del.

I have also shown that if the higher CL is *ge* or a copy of the lower CL, it is a place-holder of Unit, without semantic contents. In this case, the structure of the construction may be different from that of the corresponding construction in which the same CL is not a place-holder. N-CL constructions thus tell us more about the syntactic nature of CLs, the syntactic positions of various types of CLs, and the cross-categorical availability of place-holders for functional heads.



## Chapter 7 Conclusions

This book has aimed to clarify three major empirical issues with respect to the syntax of CL languages, compared with non-CL languages:

- I. The countability issue, i.e., the relationship between CLs and the count-mass contrast;
- II. The number issue, i.e., how a CL language expresses the contrast between singularity and plurality;
- III. The structure issue, i.e., the constituency and thus the syntactic structures of numeral constructions in CL languages.

I. The countability issue has been investigated from the following three aspects (A-C).

A. The relation between count and mass, from a syntagmatic perspective.

We have concluded that the contrast between count and mass is not a dichotomous contrast. Instead, there are two features to make the relevant distinctions: Numerability and Delimitability. [+Numerable] means that a noun may combine with a numeral directly, and [+Delimitable] means that a noun may be modified by a size (e.g., *big*), or shape (e.g., *round*), or boundary (e.g., *whole*) modifier. Like agentivity of VPs (i.e., whether an agent-oriented adverb is allowed) and gradability of APs (i.e., whether a degree word is allowed), Numerability and Delimitability are defined syntagmatically. The two newly identified features can be attested in the co-occurrence restrictions of articles, quantifiers, adverbs, prepositions, and CLs, in pronominalization, and in the input or output of the Universal Grinder, Universal Packager, and Universal Sorter.

I have claimed that a count noun is defined exclusively by [+Numerable]. It is generally recognized that such a combination possibility is the most reliable grammatical property of count nouns (e.g., Chierchia 2010: 104). This book has further argued that this is the only defining grammatical property of a count noun, cross-linguistically. The syntagmatic property of count nouns is clearly linguistic, rather than extra-linguistic. It is thus not surprising that countability is expressed in various ways, cross-linguistically. For example, in Chinese, no noun may combine with a numeral directly, and therefore, no noun is a count noun (e.g., *san ba shanzi* ‘three CL fan’ vs. \**san shanzi*). Numerability of the language is instead represented exclusively by unit words, including CLs and measure words. In languages such as Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011), Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 64), and Hopi (Whorf 1956 [1941]: 141), every noun can combine with a numeral directly, and thus every noun is a count noun. Between these two patterns, in languages such as English, in an unmarked situation, words like *cat* and *belief* are [+Numerable], and words like *oil* and *furniture* are [-Numerable].

On the other hand, the notion of mass is not the direct negation of count. I claim that it is the combination of two syntagmatic properties that defines mass: [-Numerable] and [-Delimitable]. Words such as *oil* in English and their counterparts in Chinese are mass nouns. This refined analysis makes it possible to precisely identify elements that may not combine with a numeral directly but allow a delimitive adjective, e.g., *furniture* in English, and *shanzi* ‘fan’ in Chinese. They are non-count and non-mass nouns. Since such words may have size information but still non-count, this book argues against de Belder’s (2011a,b) claim that size features entail the count status.

Assuming numerals and delimitive modifiers are universally available, we are able to identify count and mass elements in any language, with the same criteria.

- (474)
- |    |                 |                            |
|----|-----------------|----------------------------|
| a. | count elements: | [+Numerable]               |
| b. | mass elements:  | [-Numerable, -Delimitable] |

This book also shows that in Chinese, even for a nominal that has a built-in

unit-denoting element, i.e., a noun-CL compound, an independent unit word is still required to link the nominal to a numeral (*san ge hua-duo* ‘three CL flower-CL’ vs. \**san hua-duo*). Thus countability is clearly a syntagmatic relation between a numeral and a nominal in the language, rather than a semantic property.

B. The distinctive property of CL languages, compared to non-CL languages.

The obligatory presence of a CL in a numeral expression in Chinese means that all nouns are non-count ones in the language. CLs are thus Numerability bearers in the language.

With the two newly identified features, and thus the recognition that not all nouns in Chinese are mass nouns, I have argued that the function of individual CLs, which distinguish numeral CL languages from other languages, is not dividing or individuating. The popular belief that it is the individuating (discreet set-creating) function of CLs that is special in CL languages (e.g., Greenberg 1972: 26; Senft 2000: 27, Grinevald 2000: 79, Krifka 2008: Sec. 6.3) needs reconsideration. Instead, numeral CL languages are different from other languages in that they have overt forms to represent the natural units of the elements denoted by non-mass nouns. Like other types of unit words, individual CLs tell us what counts as one in counting. English verbal numeral expressions also require the presence of an individual CL (*Bill traveled to Paris three \*(times)*; see Krifka 2007: 39). Thus the presence of individual CLs has syntactic foundations.

C. The cross-linguistic patterns of the null versions of individual and individuating CLs.

This book presents a new study of language variation with respect to CLs. Although five types of unit words are universally available: standard measures (e.g., *kilo* in *five kilos of apples*), container measures (e.g., *bottle* in *three bottles of milk*), kind CL (*kind* in *three kinds of chocolate*), partitive CLs (e.g., *section* in *three sections of orange*), and collective CLs (e.g., *group* in *three groups of students*), individuating CLs and individual CLs are not found in every language. I have proposed that the functional projection UnitP is universal, and all types of unit words surface at the head of UnitP. In the presence of a numeral, the head of UnitP can be null. This book has presented various patterns of the null forms of Unit, based on the newly identified two features. In languages such as Chinese, the head of UnitP is always realized by an overt element such as a CL, in regular productive phrasal nominals. In languages such as Karitiana (Müller et al. 2006), Yudja (Lima 2010, 2011), Halkomelem Salish (Wilhelm *ibid.*: 64), Dëne (Wilhelm *ibid.*), and Haitian Creole (Deprez 2005: 861), the head of UnitP is not realized by an overt element other than the above five types of unit words. However, the silent Unit in Yudja and Halkomelem Salish selects a nominal with either [+Delimitable] or [-Delimitable]. So it is a covert counterpart of either an individual CL or individuating CL in Chinese. In contrast, the silent head of UnitP in Dëne selects only nominals with [+Delimitable]. Thus, the silent Unit in Dëne is a covert counterpart of a Chinese individual CL, but not that of an individuating CL. In languages such as English, generally speaking, the silent Unit selects nominals with [+Numerable], whereas the overt Unit selects nominals with [-Numerable]. In *three books*, where *books* is [+Numerable], Unit is silent. In contrast, in *three pieces of paper* or *three pieces of furniture*, where *paper* or *furniture* is [-Numerable], Unit is realized by *pieces*. This book also argues against numeral-oriented theories of the cross-linguistic variation.

II. The number issue has been probed from the following three aspects (D-F).

D. The relation between the count-mass contrast and morphological number.

Numerability, which is one of the two features responsible for the mass-count contrast, is different from morphological number, which is concerned with the contrast between singularity and plurality. In this new perspective, nouns that have plural markers but reject

numerals, such as *clothes*, *oats*, *grits*, and *masses* (McClawley 1979 [1975]: 172; Huddleston & Pullum 2002: 342), are [+Plural, -Numerable], and nouns that reject both plural markers and numerals, such as *furniture* and *school* in *at school* are [-Plural, -Numerable]. The new theory also covers various possible interactions between countability and number, cross-linguistically.

#### E. Encoding of the notion of number in CL languages.

We have reported that all types of CLs and other types of unit words in Mandarin Chinese can be reduplicated to express unit-plurality, such as *duo-duo* in (475).

- (475) Tian-shang piao-zhe duo-duo bai yun.  
 sky-on fly-PRG CL-RED white cloud  
 ‘Many pieces of white cloud are flying in the sky.’

Such plural markers are not specified with definiteness or specificity. The semantic type of the encoded plural is abundant plural. The optionality of the plural markers is predicted because the language has general number, in the sense of Corbett (2000). General number is expressed by bare nouns in the language.

F. The reduplicate unit words reject numerals in Mandarin Chinese, as shown in (476a). Thus plural markers in the language behave like the plural markers in many languages such as Hungarian and Bangla. The plural markers in these languages exhibit [-Numerable]. Accordingly, no UniP is projected above NumP in these languages, unlike in other languages such as English. This basic syntactic property of number markers in Mandarin Chinese is also exhibited in singular markers, which are simple forms of unit words, in the absence of a numeral, such as *duo* in (476b).

- (476)a. Tian-shang piao-zhe (\*san) duo-duo bai yun. PL marker: [-Numerable]  
 sky-on fly-PRG three CL-RED white cloud  
 ‘Many pieces of white cloud are flying in the sky.’  
 b. Tian-shang fei-zhe duo bai yun. SG marker: [-Numerable]  
 sky-on fly-PRG CL white cloud  
 ‘A piece of white cloud is flying in the sky.’

### III. The structure issue has been studied from the following two aspects (G and H).

#### G. The constituency of numeral expressions.

This book has examined the constituency of a numeral expression, which contains three basic elements: a numeral, a unit word, and an NP in Mandarin Chinese. It identifies two structures: a right-branching structure for constructions of individual, individuating, and kind CLs; a left-branching structure for constructions of partitive and collective CLs, and for container and standard measures. In the former structure, the unit word C-Commands the NP, whereas in the latter structure, the unit word does not C-Command the NP. The identification of the two structures is based on the investigation of four issues: the scope of a left-peripheral modifier; the effect of adjective-association; the independent syntactic function of the combination of a numeral and a unit word; and the semantic selection of a unit word on a noun.

#### H. The different syntactic properties of CLs in different syntactic contexts.

Two new functional projections are argued for in this book: UnitP and DelimitP (DeLP). The arguments for the functional categories come from the licensing of ellipsis and stranding,

and the licensing of certain types of modifiers. This book argues that CLs are base-generated at different syntactic positions in different syntactic contexts.

First, in a numeral expression, the CL heads UnitP. The numeral and the CL hold a Spec-Head relation in their base-positions and thus UnitP is projected if a numeral occurs, regardless of whether there is any overt form for the head of this projection. But the occurrence of a plural marker does not correlate with the projection of UnitP.

We have shown that in a numeral expression, individual, individuating, and kind CLs are base-generated at the head of the functional projection UnitP, and thus behave like auxiliaries in nominals.

In the structure of mass nominals, there is neither UnitP nor DelP.

Identifying the two functional projections in addition to NumP and QuantP, this approach is different from Borer (2005) in the base-position of numerals, in the syntactic relation between number markers and CLs in numeral expressions, and in the functional projections to encode mass nominals.

Second, a CL in a reduplicate form, as in (475) above, or in a nominal in the absence of a numeral or *yi* ‘one’, as in (476b), it heads a functional projection that is responsible for number, NumP.

Third, if a non-kind CL surfaces in a compound, such as *di* in (477), it heads DelP. In (477), it is the compound-internal CL *di* that licenses the delimitive modifier *xiao* ‘small’.

- (477)    Zhuo-shang you    xiao shui-di.  
          table-on        have small water-CL  
          ‘There are small drops of water on the table.’

Fourth, if the CL preceding a noun-CL compound is *ge*, as in (478a), or a copy of the compound-internal CL, as in (478b), it is a place-holder of Unit. The structure of a place-holder CL construction is always right-branching, regardless of the type of the CL in the noun-CL compound. In other words, the place-holder CL always C-Commands the compound.

- (478)a.    Zhuo-shang you    san ge xiao    shui-di.  
          table-on        have three CL small water-CL  
          ‘There are three small drops of water on the table.’  
      b.    Zhuo-shang you    san di xiao    shui-di.  
          table-on        have three CL small water-CL  
          ‘There are three small drops of water on the table.’

Fifth, in a NEYC (2.4.4), the CL and the preceding *yi* form an existential quantifier, as in (479). In this case, the whole cluster *yi*-CL occurs at Spec of QuantP.

- (479)    Baoyu gandao yi-pian mangran.  
          Baoyu feel    one-CL confusion  
          ‘Baoyu felt confused.’

Thus the syntactic positions of CLs in Mandarin Chinese vary with the syntactic contexts. They may head UnitP (in a numeral expression), NumP (as a number marker), and DelP (in a N-CL compound), and occur within Spec of QuantP (in a NEYC).

The new understandings of the linguistic notions of countability, number, and nominal-internal functional elements all enrich our knowledge of the syntactic computation system of language.

## References

- Aboh, Enoch O, Norbert Cover, Marina Dyakonova, and Marjo van Koppen. 2010. DP-internal information structure: Some introductory remarks. *Lingua* 120: 782-801.
- Aboh, Enoch, Leston Buell, and Lisa Cheng. 2011. Deriving the word order difference in the nominal domain: Gungbe vs. Mandarin. Paper presented at the Workshop on Analyticity, the University of Hong Kong, July 20, 2011.
- Acquaviva, Paolo. 2008. *Lexical plurals: a morphosemantic approach*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Acquaviva, Paolo. 2010. Countability and part structure in grammar cognition. Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Acquaviva, Paolo & Phoevos Panagiotidis 2012. Lexical decomposition meets conceptual atomism. *LingBuzz*/001558.
- Agrillo, Christian, Laura Piffer, and Angelo Bisazza. 2011. Number versus continuous quantity in numerosity judgments by fish. *Cognition* 119: 281-287
- Ahrens, Kathleen. 1994. Classifier production in normals and aphasics. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 22: 203-247.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra Y. 2003. *Classifiers: a typology of noun categorization devices*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra Y. 2006. Classifiers and noun classes: semantics. In Keith Brown (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Vol. 1, 463-70, Oxford: Elsevier.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra Y. & Robert M.W. Dixon. 2011. *Language at Large*. Leiden, Boston: Brill.
- Akmajian, Adrian & Adrienne Lehrer. 1976. NP-like quantifiers and the problem of determining the head of an NP. *Linguistic Analysis* 2 (4): 395-413.
- Alexiadou, Artemis. 2011. Plural mass nouns and the morphosyntax of Number. In Mary Byram Washburn et al. (eds.) *Proceedings of the 28<sup>th</sup> West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics*, 33-41, Somerville, MA: Cascadia Proceedings Project.
- Allan, Keith. 1977. Classifiers. *Language* 53.2: 285-311.
- Allan, Keith. 1980. Nouns and Countability. *Language* 56, 541-567.
- Bach, Emmon. 1986. The algebra of events. *Linguistics & Philosophy* 9: 5-16.
- Bale, Alan & David Barner. 2009. The interpretation of functional heads: Using comparatives to explore the mass/count distinction. *Journal of Semantics* 26: 217-252.
- Bale, Alan & David Barner. 2012. Semantic Triggers, Linguistic Variation and the Mass-Count Distinction. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 238-260.
- Bale, Alan, Michel Gagnon, & Hrayr Khanjian. 2011a. On the relationship between morphological and semantic markedness. *Morphology* 21: 197-221.
- Bale, Alan, Michel Gagnon, & Hrayr Khanjian. 2011b. Cross-linguistic representations of numerals and number marking. *Proceedings of SALT 20*, pp. 582-598.
- Bale, Alan, & Hrayr Khanjian. 2008. Classifiers and number marking. *Proceedings of SALT 18*, pp. 73-89.
- Barbiers, Sjef. 2005. Variation in the morphosyntax of ONE. *The Journal of Comparative Germanic Linguistics* 8: 159-183.
- Barbiers, Sjef. 2007. Indefinite numerals one and many and the cause of ordinal suppletion. *Lingua* 117 (5): 859-880.
- Barner, David & Jesse Snedeker. 2005. Quantity judgments and individuation: evidence that mass nouns count, *Cognition* 97: 41-66.
- Barner, David & Jesse Snedeker. 2006. Children's early understanding of mass-count syntax:

- Individuation, lexical content, and the number asymmetry hypothesis. *Language Learning and Development* 2;3: 163-194.
- Barner, David, Shunji Inagaki, & Peggy Li. 2009. Language, thought, and real nouns. *Cognition* 111: 329-344.
- Bartos, Huba. 2011. Book review: The Chinese Syntax, C.-T.J. Huang, Y.H.A. Li, Y. Li, Cambridge University Press (2009). *Lingua* 121: 313-319.
- Bender, Andrea & Sieghard Beller. 2006. Numeral classifiers and counting systems in Polynesian and Micronesian languages: common roots and cultural adaptations. *Oceanic Linguistics* 45 (2): 380-403.
- Bisang, Walter. 1993. Classifiers, quantifiers and class nouns in Hmong. *Studies in Language* 17 (1): 1-51.
- Bisang, Walter. 1999. Classifiers in East and Southeast Asian languages: counting and beyond. In Jadranka Gvozdanović (ed.) *Numeral Types and Changes Worldwide*, 113-185, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Bisang, Walter. 2011. Nominal and verbal classification – why the former is far more widespread than the latter. Association of Linguistic Typology 9, Hong Kong, July 21-24, 2011.
- Bisang, Walter. 2012a. Numeral classifiers with plural marking. A challenge to Greenberg. In *Plurality and Classifiers across Languages of China*, Dan Xu (ed.). Berlin: De Gruyter. [In press].
- Bisang, Walter. 2012b. Chinese from a typological perspective. Paper presented at the 4<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Sinology, Taipei, June 20-22, 2012.
- Bloomfield, Leonard. 1933. *Language*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston.
- Blühdorn, Hardarik. 2006. Zur Semantik von Numerus und Zählbarkeit im Deutschen. In Grammatische Untersuchungen. Analysen und Reflexionen, Studien zur deutschen Sprache, vol 36, eds. Eva Breindl, Lutz Gunkel, and Bruno Strecker, 53–77. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- Bobyleva, Ekaterina. 2011. Variable plural marking in Jamaican Patwa and Tok Pisin: A linguistic perspective. *Canadian Journal of Linguistics* 56 (1): 37-60.
- Bolinger, D. 1972. *Degree words*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Booij, Geert. 2007. *The Grammar of Words: an Introduction to Morphology*. Oxford, New York: Oxford University Press.
- Borer, Hagit. 1984. *Parametric syntax: Case studies in semitic and Romance languages*. Dordrecht: Foris.
- Borer, Hagit. 1999. Deconstructing the construct. In: Kyle Johnson and Ian Roberts (eds.), *Beyond Principles and Parameters*. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Borer, Hagit. 2005. *In Name Only*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Borer, Hagit. 2009. Syntax for Kinds? Paper presented at Mass/Count Workshop, University of Toronto, Feb. 7-8, 2009.
- Borer, Hagit & Sarah Ouwayda. 2010. Playing your Cardinals Right. Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Bošković, Željko. 2012. On the NP/DP parameter, word order, binding relations, and plurality within Chinese NPs. Talk given at the 13th of the Chinese Languages and Linguistics Symposium, Taipei, June 1-3, 2012.
- Bowers, John. 1991. The syntax and semantics of nominals. In *Cornell University Working Papers in Linguistics* 10, 1-30. (Proceedings of the First Semantics and Linguistic Theory Conference.) Department of Modern Languages and Linguistics, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY.
- Branigan, Phil. 2011. *Provocative Syntax*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

- Brattico, P. 2010. One-part and two-part models of nominal case: Evidence from case distribution. *Journal of Linguistics* 46: 47–81.
- Brooks, Neon, Amanda Pogue, and David Barner. 2010. Piecing together numerical language: Children's use of default units in quantification. *Developmental Science* 13(2): 1–14.
- Bruening, Benjamin. 2010. Language-particular syntactic rules and constraints: English locative inversion and *do*-support. *Language* 86: 43–84.
- Bouchard, Denis. 2002. *Adjectives, Number and Interfaces: Why Languages Vary*. Oxford: Elsevier Science.
- Bunt, Harry C. 1985. *Mass Terms and Model-Theoretic Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cable, Seth. 2012. Distance distributivity and plurationality in Tlingit (and beyond). Ms. University of Massachusetts, Amherst.
- Cardinaletti, Anna & Giuliana Giusti. 2006. The syntax of quantified phrases and quantitative clitics. In M. Everaert & H. v. Riemsdijk (eds.) *The Blackwell Companion to Syntax*, V. 5, 23–93.
- Carstens, Vicki May. 1991. The morphology and syntax of determiner phrases in Kiswahili. PhD dissertation, University of California, Los Angeles.
- Chao, Wynn. 1988. *On ellipsis*. New York: Garland Publishing, Inc.
- Chao, Yuen-Ren. 1948. *Mandarin Primer*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Chao, Yuen-Ren. 1968. *A grammar of spoken Chinese*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Chen, Ping. 2003. Indefinite determiner introducing definite referent: a special use of 'yi' 'one'+classifier' in Chinese. *Lingua* 113: 1169–1184.
- Cheng, Chung-Ying. 1973. Comments on Moravcsik's paper. In Jaakko Hintikka, Julius Moravcsik, and Patrick Suppes (eds.), *Approaches to Natural Language*, Dordrecht: Reidel, 286–288.
- Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen. 2009. On *every* type of quantificational expression in Chinese. In: Monika Rathert and Anastasia Giannakidou (eds.) *Quantification, Definiteness, and Nominalization*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. 53–75.
- Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen. 2012. Counting and classifiers. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 199–219.
- Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen & Rint Sybesma. 1998. *Yi-wan tang, yi-ge tang*: Classifiers and massifiers. *Tsing-Hua Journal of Chinese Studies* 28 (3): 385–412.
- Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen & Rint Sybesma. 1999. Bare and not so bare nouns and the structure of NP. *Linguistic Inquiry* 30 (4): 509–542.
- Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen, Jenny Doetjes & Rint Sybesma. 2008. How universal is the universal grinder? In: M. van Koppen & B. Botma (eds.). *Linguistics in the Netherlands 2008*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, 50–62.
- Cheung, Candice Chi Hang. 2003. An Investigation of the Jingpo Nominal Structure. MPhil. Thesis, The Chinese University of Hong Kong.
- Cheung, Pierina, Peggy Li, and David Barner. 2010. Individuation and quantification: do bare nouns in Mandarin Chinese individuate? *Proceedings of the 22nd North American Conference on Chinese Linguistics (NACCL-22) & the 18th International Conference on Chinese Linguistics (IACL-18)*. 2010. Vol 1. Clemens, L.E. & C.-M. L. Liu, eds. Harvard University, Cambridge, MA. 395–412.
- Cheung, Pierina, Peggy Li, and David Barner. 2012. *Proceedings of the 34<sup>th</sup> Annual Cognitive Science Conference*, Sapporo, 210–215.
- Chien Yu-Chi Barbara Lust, and Chi-Ping Chiang. 2003. Chinese children's comprehension of count-classifiers and mass-classifiers. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 12: 91–120.
- Chierchia, Gennaro. 1998. Plurality of mass nouns and the notion of semantic parameter, in S.

- Rothstein (ed.) *Events and Grammar*, Dordrecht: Kluwer, 53-103.
- Chierchia, Gennaro. 2010. Mass nouns, vagueness and semantic variation, *Synthese* 174: 99–149.
- Childs, Tucker. 1995. A grammar of Kisi: a southern Atalantic language. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1965. Aspects of the Theory of Syntax. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1968. *Language and Mind*. New York: Harcourt, Brace, and World.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1970. Remarks on nominalization. In: R. A. Jacobs and P. S. Rosenbaum (eds.), *Readings in English Transformational Grammar*. Waltham, MA: Ginn-Blaisdell.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1994. Bare Phrase Structure. *MIT Occasional Papers in Linguistics* 5. Also in G. Webelhuth (ed.), (1995) *Government and Binding Theory and the Minimalist Program*, Oxford: Blackwell.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1995. *The Minimalist Program*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Chomsky, Noam. 2000. Minimalist inquiries: The framework, in Roger Martin, David Michaels, and Juan Uriagereka (eds.), *Step by step: Essays on minimalist syntax in honor of Howard Lasnik*, Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, pp. 89-155.
- Chomsky, Noam. 2001. Derivation by phase. In *Ken Hale: A Life in Language*, Michael Kenstowicz (ed.), 1–52. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Cinque, Guglielmo. 1994. On the evidence for partial N-movement in Romance DP. In *Paths towards Universal Grammar*, ed. G. Cinque, J. Koster, J.-Y. Pollock, L. Rizzi & R. Zanuttini. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.
- Cinque, Guglielmo. 1999. *Adverbs and Functional Heads: A Cross-linguistic Perspective*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Cinque, Guglielmo. 2011. A (partial) map of nominal functional structure. Paper presented at the Mini-Workshop on Syntax, National Tsing Hua University, Hsinchu, June 20, 2011.
- Colunga, Eliana, & Linda B. Smith. 2005. From the lexicon to expectations about kinds: A role for associative learning. *Psychological Review*, 112(2).
- Constantinescu, Camelia. 2011. Gradability in the Nominal Domain. PhD thesis, Leiden University.
- Corbett, Greville G. 2000. *Number*. Cambridge Textbooks in Linguistics. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cornilescu, Alexandra. 2009. Measure phrases and the syntax of Romanian nouns and adjectives. *Bucharest Working Papers in Linguistics* XI (1): 35-66.
- Corver, Norbert. 1998. Predicative movement in pseudopartitive constructions. In Artemis Alexiadou and Chris Wilder (eds.), *Possessors, predicates and movement in the Determiner Phrase*, volume 22 of *Linguistik Aktuell/Linguistics Today*. Amsterdam: John Benjamin, 215-257.
- Corver, Norbert. 2009. Getting the (syntactic) measure of Measure Phrases. *The Linguistic Review* 26: 67-134.
- Corver, Norbert, Jenny Doetjes, Joost Zwarts. 2007. Linguistic perspectives on numerical expressions: Introduction. *Lingua* 117 (5): 751-757.
- Corver, Norbert & Marjo van Koppen. 2011. NP-ellipsis with adjectival remnants: a micro-comparative perspective. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 29 (2): 371-421.
- Corver, Norbert & Henk van Riemsdijk (eds.). 2001. *Semi-lexical Categories: the Function of Content Words and the Content of Function Words*, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Corver, Norbert & Joost Zwarts. 2006. Prepositional Numerals. *Lingua* 116 (6): 811-835.
- Cowper, Elizabeth & Daniel Hall. 2012. Aspects of individuation. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 27-53.
- Croft, William. 1994. Semantic universals in classifier systems. *Word* 45: 145-171.



- Csirmaz, Aniko & Éva Dékány. 2010. Hungarian classifiers. Unpublished manuscript, University of Utah and University of Tromsø.
- Dai, Qingxia. 1991. Zangmian yuzu geti-liangci yanjiu. Paper presented at the International Yi-Burmese Conference, Sichuan.
- Daley, Karen Ann. 1998. *Vietnamese classifiers in narrative texts*. Publication 125. Arlington: Summer Institute of Linguistics and University of Texas.
- Dalrymple, Mary & Surriel Mofu. 2012. Plural semantics, reduplication, and numeral modification in Indonesian. *Journal of Semantics* 29 (2): 229-260.
- Danon, Gabi. 2009. Grammatical number in numeral-noun constructions. CGG-19, April 1-3, 2009.
- Danon, Gabi. 2011. Agreement and DP-internal feature distribution. *Syntax* 14: 297-317.
- Danon, Gabi. 2012. The two structures for numeral-noun constructions. *Lingua* 122: 1282-1307.
- Davis, Henry, and Lisa Matthewson. 1999. On the Functional Determination of Lexical Categories, *Revue Québécoise de Linguistique* 27, 30-69.
- Dayal, Veneeta. 2011. Bangla classifiers: mediating between kinds and objects. Paper presented at the International Workshop on Syntax-Semantics Interface, Academia Sinica, Taipei, June 17-18, 2011.
- De Belder, Marijke. 2010. Flavours of n? On the morphosyntax of collective nouns. Paper presented at WCCFL 28, Los Angeles (USC), Feb. 12-21, 2010.
- De Belder, Marijke. 2011a. *Roots and Affixes: Eliminating Lexical Categories from Syntax*. PhD dissertation, Utrecht University.
- De Belder, Marijke. 2011b. A morphosyntactic decomposition of countability in Germanic. *The Journal of Comparative Germanic Linguistics* 14 (3): 173-202.
- Déchaine, Rose-Marie & Meireille Tremblay. 2011. Functional categories: FLN or FLB? Paper presented at GLOW 34, Universität Wien, April 28-30, 2011.
- De Clercq, Karen. 2008. Proper names used as Common Nouns in Belgian Dutch and German. In: Marjo van Koppen & Bert Botma (eds.), *Linguistics in the Netherlands* 2008: 63-74.
- Delsing, Lars-Olof. 1993. The internal structure of noun phrases. PhD Diss., University of Lund.
- Deprez, Viviane. 2005. Morphological number, semantic number, and bare nouns. *Lingua* 115: 857-883.
- Deprez, Viviane. 2006. On the Conceptual Role of Number. In *New Perspectives on Romance Linguistics*, Nishida, Chiyo and Jean-Pierre Y. Montreuil (eds.), 67-83. John Benjamins.
- Di Sciullo, Anna Maria and Edwin Williams. 1987. *On the Definition of Word*, Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press.
- Dimmendaal, G. J. 1983. *The Turkana Language* (Publications in African Languages and Linguistics 2). Dordrecht: Foris.
- Dixon, R. M. W. 1982. *Where have all the adjectives gone? and other essays in semantics and syntax*. Berlin: Mouton.
- Doetjes, Jenny. 1996. Mass and count: syntax or semantics? In *Proceedings of Meaning on the HIL (HIL Occasional Papers in Linguistics 1)*, 34-52. HIL/Leiden University.
- Doetjes, Jenny. 1997. *Quantifiers and Selection*. PhD dissertation, Leiden University.
- Doetjes, Jenny. 2010. Count/mass mismatches in the lexicon. Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Doetjes, Jenny. 2012. Count/mass distinctions across languages. In Claudia Maienborn, Klaus von Heusinger and Paul Portner (eds.) *Semantics: an international handbook of natural*

- language meaning*, Vol. 3, Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Downing, Pamela. 1996. *Numeral Classifier Systems: The Case of Japanese*. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Dowty, David. 1979. *Word meaning and grammar*. Dordrecht: Reidel.
- Dowty, David. 1991. Thematic Proto-Roles and Argument Selection, *Language* 67 (3): 547-619.
- Dryer, Matthew. S. 2005. Coding of nominal plurality. In *The world atlas of language structures*, ed. M. Haspelmath, M. S. Dryer, D. Gil & B. Comrie, 138–141. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Du, Yongdao. 1993. Beijing-hua zhong de ‘yi+N’ [Yi+N in the Beijing Dialect]. *Zhongguo Yuwen* 233:142.
- Ducceschi, Luca. 2012. Bound variable and deictic pronouns in some languages of India. Console 20, Leipzig, Jan. 5-7, 2012.
- Duffield, Nigel. 1996. On structural invariance and lexical diversity in VSO languages: Arguments from Irish noun phrases. In: Ian Roberts and Robert Borsley (eds.), *The Syntax of the Celtic Languages*, 314–40. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Erbaugh, Mary S. 1986. Taking Stock: The Development of Chinese Noun Classifiers Historically and in Young Children, in Craig (ed.) *Noun Classes and Categorization: Proceedings of a Symposium on Categorization and Noun Classification. Eugene, Oregon, October 1983*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 399-436.
- Espinal, M. Teresa. 2010. Bare nominals in Catalan and Spanish. Their structure and meaning. *Lingua* 120: 984-1009.
- Espinal, M. Teresa and Louise McNally. 2011. Bare nominals and incorporating verbs in Spanish and Catalan. *Journal of Linguistics* 47:87-128.
- Fan, Jiyun. 1958. Xing ming zu he jian ‘de’ zi de yufa zuoyong [The Grammatical Function of *de* in the Adjective-Noun Combination], *Zhongguo Yuwen* 71, 213-217.
- Fang, Fuxi. 1985. 4–6 Sui Ertong Zhangwo Hanyu Liangci Shuiping De Shiyan Yanjiu (An Experiment on the Use of Classifiers by 4-to-6-Year-Olds), *Acta Psychologica Sinica* 17: 384–392.
- Farkas, Donka and Henriëtte de Swart. 2003. *The Semantics of Incorporation: From Argument Structure to Discourse Transparency*. Stanford, CA: CSLI Publications.
- Fodor, Janet & Ivan Sag. 1982. Referential and quantificational indefinites. *Linguistics and Philosophy* 5: 355-298.
- Fortin, Antonio. 2011. The morphology and semantics of expressive affixes. PhD dissertation, University of Oxford.
- Gao, Mingkai. 1948. *Hanyu Yufa Lun* [On Chinese Grammar], Shanghai: Shangwu Press.
- Gebhardt, Lewis. 2009. Numeral classifiers and the structure of DP. PhD. dissertation, Northwestern University.
- Gebhardt, Lewis. 2011. Classifiers are functional. *Linguistic Inquiry* 42 (1): 125-130.
- Gerner, Matthias. 2003. Demonstratives, articles and topic markers in the Yi group. *Journal of Pragmatics* 35(7): 947-998.
- Gerner, Matthias. 2006. Noun classifiers in Kam and Chinese Kam-Tai languages: their morphosyntax, semantics and history. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 34 (2): 237-305.
- Gerner, Matthias. 2010. Compositional and constructional reduplication in Kam-Tai languages. *Folia Linguistica* 44 (2): 267-337.
- Gerner, Matthias & Walter Bisang. 2008. Inflectional speaker-role classifiers in Weining Ahmao. *Journal of Pragmatics* 40: 719–732.
- Gerner, Matthias & Walter Bisang. 2010. Classifier declinations in an isolating language: on a rarity in Weining Ahmao. *Language and Linguistics* 11: 579-623.
- Ghaniabadi, Saeed. 2012. Plural marking beyond count nouns. In *Count and Mass Across*

- Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 112-128.
- Ghomeshi, Jila. 2003. Plural marking, indefiniteness, and the noun phrase. *Studia Linguistica*, 57(2), 47-74.
- Gil, David. 2008. Numeral Classifiers. In Martin Haspelmath Matthew S. Dryer, David Gil, and Bernard Comrie (eds.), *The World Atlas of Language Structures Online*, Max Planck Digital Library, Munich, Chapter 55.
- Goodman, Nelson. 1966. *The Structure of Appearance* (2<sup>nd</sup> edi.). Indianapolis; Bobbs-Merrill.
- Göksel, Asli & Celia Kerslake. 2005. *Turkish: A comprehensive grammar*. London, New York: Routledge.
- Görgülü, Emrah. 2010. Nominals and the count/mass distinction in Turkish. In *the Proceedings of the 26th Northwest Linguistics Conference*. Simon Fraser University. Vancouver, British Columbia, May 8-9 2010.
- Graham, Angus Charles. 1989. *Disputers of the Tao*. Open Court, La Salle, Ill.
- Greenberg, Joseph, 1974. Numeral classifiers and substantival number: Problems in the genesis of a linguistic type. In: Proceedings of the 11th International Congress of Linguists, Bologna/Florence, August–September 1972, pp. 17–37.
- Greenberg, Joseph. 1990a [1972]. Numeral classifiers and substantival number: problems in the genesis of a linguistic type. In Keith Denning & Suzanne Kemmer (eds.) *On Language: selected writings of Johseph Greenberg*, Stanford: Stanford University Press, pp. 166-193, [first published in 1972 *Working Papers on Language Universals* 9: 2-39].
- Greenberg, Joseph. 1990b [1975]. Dynamic aspects of word order in the numeral classifier. In *On language. Selected writings of Joseph H. Greenberg*, K. Denning and S. Kemmer (eds.), 227–240. Stanford: Stanford University Press [First published in *Word order and word order change*, C. Li (ed.), 27–43. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1975].
- Grimshaw, Jane. 2007. Boxes and Piles and What's in Them: Two Extended Projections or One? In Annie Zaenen, Jane Simpson, Tracy Holloway King, Jane Grlmshaw, Joan Mallng, and Chris Manning (eds.), *Architectures, Rules, and Preferences: Variations on Themes by Joan Bresnan*, Center for the Study of Language and Information Publications, 199-206.
- Grinevald, Colette. 2000. A morphosyntactic typology of classifiers. In G. Senft (ed.) *Systems of Nominal Classification*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 50-92.
- Grinevald, Colette. 2002. Making sense of nominal classification systems: noun classifiers and grammaticalization variable. In Ilse Wischer & Gabriele Diewald (eds.) *New Reflections on Grammaticalization*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins, pp. 259-275.
- Guo, Jimao. 1999. Zai tan liangci chongdie xingshi de yufa yiyi [Revisit the grammatical meaning of classifier reduplication], *Hanyu Xuexi* 1999, Vol. 8 (4): 6-9.
- Guthrie, Malcolm. 1948. Gender, number and person in Bantu languages. *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, University of London 12: 847-56.
- Hankamer, Jorge. 1971. *Constraints on deletion in syntax*. New York: Garland Publishing, Inc.
- Hankamer, Jorge. 1973. Unacceptable ambiguity. *Linguistic Inquiry* 4: 17-68.
- Hansen, Chad. 1972. *Philosophy of language and logic in ancient China*. Doctoral dissertation, University of Michigan.
- Harbour, Daniel. 2007. *Morphosemantic number: from Kiowa noun classes to UG number features*. Dordrecht: Springer.
- Harbour, Daniel. 2008. Mass, non-singularity, and augmentation. *MIT Working Papers in Linguistics* 49: 239-266.
- Haas, Mary R. 1942. The use of numeral classifiers in Thai. *Language* 18: 201-205.
- Hartman, Jeremy. 2011. The semantics uniformity of traces: evidence form ellipsis parallelism.

- Linguistic Inquiry* 42: 367-388.
- Her, One-Soon. 2011. Classifiers: The Many Ways To Profile 'one'. Paper presented at Chinese Lexical Semantics Workshop 2011, Taipei, May 3 ~ 5, 2011.
- Her, One-Soon & Chen-Tien Hsieh. 2010. On the semantic distinction between classifiers and measure words in Chinese. *Language and Linguistics* 11.3: 527-551.
- Higginbotham, James. 1985. On semantics. *Linguistic Inquiry* 16: 647-593.
- Hsieh, Miao-Ling. 2008. *The internal structure of noun phrases in Chinese*. Taipei: Crane Publishing Co.
- Hu, Qian. 1993. *The Acquisition of Chinese Classifiers by Young Mandarin-Speaking Children*, Ph.D. dissertation, Boston University.
- Huang, Aijun. 2009. Count-mass distinction and the acquisition of classifiers in Mandarin-speaking children. Masters thesis, Chinese University of Hong Kong.
- Huang, Aijun and Thomas Hun-tak, Lee. 2009. Quantification and individuation in the acquisition of Chinese classifiers. In Proceedings of the Tenth Tokyo Conference on Psycholinguistics, ed. Yukio Otsu. Tokyo: Hituzi.
- Huang, Cheng-Teh James. 1987. Existential sentences in Chinese and (in)definiteness. In Reuland, Eric & Alice ter Meulen (eds.) *The Representation of (In)definiteness*, Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, pp. 226-253.
- Huang, Cheng-Teh James. 2009. Lexical decomposition, silent categories, and the localizer phrase, *Yuyanxue Luncong* 39, Beijing: Shangwu Press, 86-122.
- Huang, Cheng-Teh James, Yen-hui Audrey Li, and Yafei Li. 2009. *The Chinese Syntax*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Huang, Chu-Ren. 1989. *Mandarin Chinese NP de -A Comparative Study of Current Grammatical Theories*. Nankang, Taipei (PhD thesis, Cornell University 1987).
- Huang, Chu-Ren & Kathleen Aherens. 2003. Individuals, kinds and events: classifier coercion of nouns. *Language Sciences* 25: 353-373.
- Huang, Hansheng. 1981. *Xiandai Hanyu* [Modern Chinese], Shumu Wenxian Press.
- Huang, Zaijun. 1964. 從甲文金文量詞的應用考察漢語量詞的起源與發展 *Cong jiawen jinwen liangci de yingyong kaocha hanyu liangci de qiyuan yu fazhan* (A study of the origin and development of classifiers in Chinese from the perspectives of the use of classifiers in oracle bones and bronze inscriptions). *Zhongguo Yuwen* 1964.6: 432-441.
- Huddleston, Rodney and Geoffrey Pullum. 2002. *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hundius, Harald and Ulrike Kölver. 1983. Syntax and semantics of numeral classifiers in Thai. *Studies in Language* 7 (2): 165-214.
- Huntley-Fenner, Gavin, Susan Carey, & Andrea Solimando. 2002. Objects are individuals but stuff doesn't count: Perceived rigidity and cohesiveness influence infants' representations of small groups of discrete entities. *Cognition* 85: 203-221.
- Iida, Takashi. 1998. Professor Quine on Japanese Classifiers. *The Annals of the Japan Association for Philosophy of Science*. Vol. 9, No. 3: 111-118.
- Ikoro, Suanu M. 1994. Numeral classifiers in Kana. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 15: 7-28.
- Ikoro, Suanu M. 1996. *The Kana language*. Leiden: Research School CNWS.
- Iljik, Robert. 1994. Quantification in Mandarin Chinese: two markers of plurality. *Linguistics* 32: 91-116.
- Iljik, Robert. 2001. The problem of the suffix -men in Chinese grammar. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 29 (1): 11-68.
- Inagaki, Shunji & David Barner. 2009. Countability in absence of count syntax: Evidence from Japanese quantity judgments, in Makiko Hirakawa et al. (eds.), *Studies in Language Sciences (8): Papers from the Eighth Annual Conference of the Japanese*

- Society for Language Sciences*. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1977. *X-bar syntax: a study of phrase structure*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1991. Parts and boundaries. *Cognition* 41: 9-45.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1997. *The architecture of the language faculty*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Jenks, Peter. 2011. *The Hidden Structure of Thai Noun Phrases*, PhD dissertation, Harvard University.
- Jespersen, Otto. 1961 [1909]. *A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles*. John Dickens and Company, Northampton, England. Seven Volumes. (originally published in 1909).
- Jespersen, Otto. 1924. *The philosophy of grammar*, London: Allen and Unwin.
- Jiang, Li Julie & Suhua Hu. 2010. On bare classifier phrases. *Proceedings of the 18th meeting of the International Association of Chinese Linguistics and the 22rd meeting of the North American Conference on Chinese Linguistics*, 230-241.
- Jin, Youjing. 1979. Putonghua “yi” zi shengdiao de dufa [the tone variations of yi in Mandarin], *Zhongguo Yuwen* 1979.5: 356-358.
- Jing, Song. 1995. Beijing kouyu zhong liangci de tuoluo [the drop of classifiers in Beijing dialect], *Xue Hanyu* 1998.8: 13-14.
- Joosten, Frank. 2003. Accounts of the Count-Mass Distinction: A Critical Survey. *Nordlyd* 31.1: 216-229.
- Kao, Yuju. 2012. Yi ‘one’ in the reduplicated classifier structures in Mandarin Chinese. Ms. National Chung Cheng University.
- Kayne, Richard. 2005a. *Movement and Silence*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Kayne, Richard. 2005b. Some notes on comparative syntax, with special reference to English and French. In Guglielmo Cinque and Richard S. Kayne (eds.), *The Oxford Handbook of Comparative Syntax*, 3-69, New York: Oxford University Press.
- Kayne, Richard. 2009. The English indefinite article *one*. Talk handout, University of Cambridge, June 23, 2009.
- Kayne, Richard. 2012a. A Note on *Grand* and its Silent Entourage. *Studies in Chinese Linguistics* 33 (2): 71-85.
- Kayne, Richard. 2012b. Comparative syntax. *Lingua* (to appear).
- Kennedy, Chris. 1997. *Projecting the adjective: the syntax and semantics of gradability and comparison*. New York: Garland.
- Kennedy, Chris. 2011. Incremental themes: “measuring out” is measuring change. Paper presented at the Representation of Gradability, University of Leiden, June 6-7, 2011.
- Khachaturyan, Maria. 2012. Plurals in Mano: from nominal number to counter-expectation meaning. The 45th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, University of Stockholm, Aug. 29 - Sept. 1, 2012.
- Kim, Jaeshil. 2005. Plurality in classifier languages. PhD dissertation, University of California, Irvine.
- Kishimoto, Hideki. 2011. Empty verb support as a morphological adjustment rule. *Snippets* 23: 7-8.
- Kiss, Tibor. 2010. Introduction to the Conference, Presented at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Kobuchi-Philip, Mana. 2007. Individual-denoting classifiers. *Natural Language Semantics* 15: 95-130.
- Kobuchi-Philip, Mana. 2011. The mass hypothesis and Japanese. In Young-Wha Kim (ed.) *Plurality in Classifier Languages: Plurality, Mass/Kind, Classifiers and the DPs*, Seoul: Hankukmunhwasa, pp. 283-321.

- Koptjevskaja-Tamm, Maria. 2009. "A lot of grammar with a good portion of lexicon": towards a typology of partitive and pseudo-partitive nominal constructions. In Johannes Helmbrecht, Yoko Nishina, Yong-Min Shin, Stavros Skopeteas, and Elizabeth Verhoeven (eds.) *Form and Function in Language Research*, Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter, 329-346.
- Krifka, Manfred. 1989. Nominalreferenz und Zeitkonstitution. Zur Semantik von Massentermen, Pluraltermen und Aspektklassen, Wilhelm Fink, München.
- Krifka, Manfred. 1995. Common nouns: a contrastive analysis of Chinese and English. In G. N. Carlson & F. J. Pelletier (eds.), *The Generic Book*, Chicago: Chicago University Press, 398-411.
- Krifka, Manfred. 1998. Introduction to Semantics. Lecture handouts, the University of Texas at Austin.
- Krifka, Manfred. 2007. Masses and countables. Paper presented at the workshop "The Syntax and Semantics of Measurement", University of Tromsø, Sept. 17-18, 2007.
- Krifka, Manfred. 2008. Different kinds of count nouns and plurals. Handout distributed at Syntax in the World's Languages III, Freie Universität Berlin, Sept. 25-28, 2008.
- Kuo, Yi-chun & Jiun-Shiung Wu. 2010. Countability in English and Mandarin. In Dingfang Shu & Ken Turner (eds.) *Contrasting Meaning in Language of the East and West*. Pieterlen: Peter Lang, pp. 493-515.
- Kung, Susan. 2007. Numeral Classifiers in Lhiimaqalhqama'. *Texas Linguistics Society 9: Morphosyntax of Underrepresented Languages*, Frederick Hoyt, Nikki Seifert, Alexandra Teodorescu, and Jessica White (vol. eds.) and Stephen Wechsler (series ed.). CSLI Publications. 185-201.
- Landman, Fred. 2004. *Indefinites and the types of sets*. Malden: Blackwell.
- Law, Paul. 2012. Silent nouns in English, Chinese and Naxi. *Studies in Chinese Linguistics* 33 (2): 103-122.
- Lee, Thomas Hun-tak. 2012. Quantificational structures in three-year-old Chinese-speaking children. In *Plurality and Classifiers across Languages of China*, Dan Xu (ed.). Berlin: De Gruyter. [In press]
- Lehmann, Christian. 2008. On the function of numeral classifiers. In Floricic, Franck (ed.), *Essais de linguistique générale et de typologie linguistique*. Paris: Presses de l'École Normale Supérieure, 1-9.
- Lehrer, Adrienne. 1986. English classifier constructions. *Lingua* 68: 109-148.
- Levinson, Lisa. 2010. Arguments for pseudo-resultative predicates. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 28 (1): 135-182.
- Li, Bingzhen. 2009. Liangzhong biao fei-yuqi jieguo-yi jigou de bijiao [Comparison between two constructions referring to unexpected results], *Yuyan Kexue*, 8 (2): 188-196.
- Li, Charles and Sandra Thompson. 1981. *Mandarin Chinese: A functional reference grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Li, Jinxi. 1924 [1955/1992]. *Xin Zhu Guo Yu Wen Fa* (A New Chinese Grammar) Beijing: The Commercial Press.
- Li, Jinxi and Shiru Liu. 1978. *Lun xiandai Hanyu zhong de liangci* [On classifiers in Modern Chinese]. Beijing: Commercial Press.
- Li, Peggy, David Barner, Becky Huang. 2008. Classifiers as count syntax: Individuation and measurement in the acquisition of Mandarin Chinese. *Language Learning and Development*, 4(4), 249-290.
- Li, Peggy, Yarrow Dunham, and Susan Caray. 2009a. Of substance: the nature of language effects on entity construal. *Cognitive Psychology* 58: 487-524.
- Li, Peggy, Tamiko Ogura, David Barner, Shu-Ju Yang, and Susan Carey. 2009b. Does the

- conceptual distinction between singular and plural sets depend on language? *Developmental Psychology* 45: 1644-1653.
- Li, Peggy, Becky Huang, and Yaling Hsiao. 2010. Learning that classifiers count: Mandarin-speaking children's acquisition of sortal and mensural classifiers. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 19: 207-230.
- Li, XuPing. 2011. *On the semantics of classifiers in Chinese*. PhD thesis, Bar-Ilan University.
- Li, XuPing. 2011b. A phrasal-level diminutive marker /tsiʔ/ in Gan Chinese. Paper presented at the 7<sup>th</sup> Conference of the European Association of Chinese Linguistics (EACL-7), Venice, Sept. 13-15, 2011.
- Li, XuPing and Walter Bisang. 2012. Classifiers in Sinitic languages: From individuation to definiteness marking. *Lingua* 122: 335-355.
- Li, Yen-hui Audrey. 1998. Argument Determiner Phrases and Number Phrases, *Linguistic Inquiry* 29: 693-702.
- Li, Yen-hui Audrey. 1999. Plurality in a classifier language. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 8:75-99.
- Li, Yen-hui Audrey. 2012. *de* in Mandarin <-> *e* in Taiwanese. *Studies in Chinese Linguistics* 33 (1): 17-40.
- Li, Yu-ming. 2000. Lianchi yu shuci, mingci de nujie [the interactions among classifiers, numerals, and nouns], *Yuyan jiaoxue yu yanjiu* 2000.3: 50-58.
- Liao, Wei-wen Roger. 2010. Indefinites in Chinese and the theory of D-V merge. To appear in *NELS* 40.
- Liao, Wei-wen Roger and Yuyun Iris Wang. 2011. Multiple-Classifiers Construction and Nominal Expressions in Chinese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 20: 145-168.
- Lichtenberk, Frantisek. 1983. *A Grammar of Manam* (Oceanic Linguistics Special Publication 18). Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press.
- Lien, Chinfa. 2011. Paucal quantifiers in Southern Min: *Kua*<sup>2</sup> and its congeners. Paper presented at the 7<sup>th</sup> Conference of the European Association of Chinese Linguistics (EACL-7), Venice, Sept. 13-15, 2011.
- Lima, Suzi. 2010. Bare nouns and plurality in Yudja: mass nouns and the signature property. Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Lima, Suzi. 2011. Numeral and the universal packager in Yudja (Tupi). Invited talk at SULA 6, Manchester, May 5-7, 2011.
- Lin, Jo-wang. 1997. Noun phrase structure in Mandarin Chinese: DP or NP? *Chinese Languages and Linguistics* 3, 401-434.
- Lin, Jo-wang & Niina Ning Zhang. 2006. The Syntax of the Non-Referential TA 'it' in Mandarin Chinese. *Language and Linguistics* 7 (4): 991-1016.
- Link, Godehard. 1983. The logical analysis of plural and mass terms: A lattice theoretic approach. In R. Bäuerle, C. Schwarze, & A. von Stechow (Eds.), *Meaning, use and interpretation of language*, pp. 302-323. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Link, Godehard. 1991. Quantity and Number. In D. Zaefferer (ed.), *Semantic Universals and Universal Semantics*, pp. 133-149. Foris.
- Liu, Charles. 1980. Measure for verb. *Journal of Chinese Teachers Association* 15 (1): 2-40.
- Liu, Chensheng. 2012. Amount classifiers in Chinese and the part-related reading. Ms. National Chiao Tung University.
- Liu, Feng-hsi. 2010. Quantification and the count-mass distinction. Paper presented at IACL-18 & NACCL-22, Harvard University, May 20-22, 2010.
- Liu, Hongyong. 2006. The Structure of Complex Nominals: Classifiers, Possessives and Relatives. PhD thesis, the Chinese University of Hong Kong.
- Liu, Shiru. 1965. *Wei-Jin Nanbei-chao Liangci Yanjiu* [A Study of Classifiers of the Weijin

- and Northern and Southern Dynasties], Zhonghua Shuju, Beijing.
- Lobeck, Anne. 1987. *Syntactic constraints on VP ellipsis*. Doctoral dissertation, University of Washington, Seattle.
- Lobeck, Anne. 1995. Ellipsis: functional heads, licensing, and identification. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Loke, Kit-ken. 1994. Is *GE* merely a general classifier? *Journal of Chinese Language Teachers' Association* 29(3): 35-50.
- Loke, Kit-ken. 1997. The grammaticalization and regrammaticalization of Chinese numeral classifier morphemes. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 25: 1-20.
- Long, Tao & Qingzhu Ma. 2008. Duliang-hengliang ci de yuyi gongneng yanjiu [A study of the semantic functions of measure words]. *Zhongguo Yuyanxue Bao* 13: 32-43.
- Longobardi, Giuseppe. 1994. Proper names and the theory of N-movement in syntax and logical form, *Linguistic Inquiry* 25: 609-65.
- Lu, Jianming. 1987. Shuliangci zhongjian charu xingrongci qingkuang kaocha. [A survey of the insertion of adjectives between numerals and classifiers]. *Yuyan jiaoxue yu yanjiu*. 1987(4): 53-72.
- Lü, Shuxiang. 1942. *Zhongguo Wenfa Yaolue* [Outling of Chinese Grammar], Shanghai: Shangwu Press.
- Lü, Shuxiang. 1983. *Lü Shuxiang Lunwenji* [Lü Shuxiang's Works], Shangwu Press.
- Lü, Shuxiang. 1990 [1944]. Ge zi de yingyong fanwei, fu lun danweici qian yi zi de tuoluo [Scope of the uses of *ge* and omission of *yi* in front of classifiers]. In: *Lü Shuxiang Wenji* [Collected Works of Lü Shuxiang], Vol. 2. Shangwu Press, Beijing, pp. 144-175.
- Lü, Shuxiang et al. 1999. *Xiandai Hanyu Babai Ci* [800 Words in Chinese]. Beijing: Shangwu Press (1<sup>st</sup> edition, 1980).
- Lu, Zhiwei. 1951. *Beijingshua danyinci cihui* [Monosyllabic words in Beijing dialect]. Beijing: Renmin Chubanshe.
- Luo, Yuanlin. 1988. Guanyu shuliang ci zhongjian charu xingrongci qingkuang de buchong kaocha. [A supplement study of the insertion of adjectives before classifiers]. *Hanyu xuexi* 1988(4): 7-12.
- Lyons, Christopher. 1999. *Definiteness*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lyons, John. 1977. *Semantics*. Vol. 2. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Massam, Diane. 2001. Pseudo noun incorporation in Niuean. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 19:153-197.
- Massam, Diane. 2009. On the separation and relatedness of classifiers, number, and individuation in Niuean. *Language and Linguistics* 10.4: 669-699.
- Mathieu, Eric. 2012. On the mass/count distinction in Ojibwe. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 172-198.
- Matushansky, Ora. 2006. Head Movement in Linguistic Theory, *Linguistic Inquiry* 37: 69-109.
- McCawley, James D. 1968. The role of semantics in a grammar. *Universals in Linguistic Theory*, E. Bach and R. Harms, eds. New York: Holt, Rinehard and Winston. pp. 125-70.
- McCawley, James D. 1979 [1975]. Lexicography and the mass-count distinction, 1975 *Berkeley Linguistics Society*, 1: 314-21; reprinted in McCawley, J. D. 1979. *Adverbs, Vowels, and Other Objects of Wonder*, Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, pp. 165-173.
- McCawley, James D. 1998. *The Syntactic Phenomena of English*, second edition, the University of Chicago Press, Chicago [1988, 1<sup>st</sup> edition].
- McKinney-Bock, Katy. 2010. Adjective Ordering Restrictions: Exploring Relevant Semantic Notions for Syntactic Ordering. In *Proceedings of the Arizona Linguistics Circle* 3.



- Merchant, Jason. 2001. *The syntax of silence: sluicing, islands, and identity in ellipsis*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Miao, Xiaochun, and Manshu Zhu. 1992. Language development in Chinese children. *Language Processing in Chinese*, ed. by H. C. Chen and O. J. L. Tzeng, 237-276. Amsterdam and New York: North-Holland.
- Mizuguchi, Shinobu. 2004. *Individuation in numeral classifier languages*. Tokyo: Shohakusha.
- Moltmann, Friederike. 1997. *Parts and Wholes in Semantics*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Morzycki, Marcin. 2009. Degree modification of gradable nouns: size adjectives and adnominal degree morphemes. *Natural Language Semantics* 17(2), 175–203.
- Müller, Ana, Luciana Storto, and Thiago Coutinho-Silva. 2006. Number and the mass/count distinction in Karitiana. In Workshop on Structure and Constituency in Languages of the Americas, vol. 11: 122–135. Vancouver: *UBC Working Papers in Linguistics*.
- Munn, Alan and Cristina Schmitt. 2005. Number and indefinites. *Lingua* 115, 821–855.
- Muromatsu, Keiko. 2003. Classifiers and the count/mass distinction. In Y.-H. Audrey Li & Andrew Simpson (eds.) *Functional structure(s), form and interpretation*. London: RoutledgeCurzon, pp. 65-128.
- Myers, James. 2000. Rules vs. analogy in Mandarin classifier selection. *Language and Linguistics*, 1 (2), 187-209.
- Myers, James & Jane Tsay. 2000. The Acquisition of the default classifier in Taiwanese, *Proceedings of the International Symposium on Chinese Languages and Linguistics 7*: 87-106.
- Ndayiragije, Juvenal & Emmanuel Nikema. 2011. Why classifiers are not determiners: from Chinese to Bantu. Paper presented at the Fifth International Conference on Formal Linguistics, Guangzhou, Dec. 10-12, 2011.
- Ngai, Sing Sing. 2011. Classifier or numeral? 个 [kəi<sup>213</sup>] of the Shaowu dialect (Min-Gan) in Fujian, China, paper presented at the 7<sup>th</sup> Conference of the European Association of Chinese Linguistics (EACL-7), Venice, Sept. 13-15, 2011.
- Ojeda, Almerindo E. 2005. The paradox of mass plurals. In *Polymorphous linguistics*, eds. Salikok Mufwene and et al., 389-410. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Ōta, Tatsuo. 1958. *Chūgokugo rekishi bunpo* [A historical grammar of modern Chinese, Tokyo: Konan shoin], [Chinese translation by S. Jiang and C. Xu, *zhōngguóyǔ lìshǐ wénfǎ*, 2003. Beijing University Press: Beijing].
- Ott, Dennis. 2011. Diminutive-formation in German: Spelling out the classifier analysis. *Journal of Comparative Germanic Linguistics* 14: 1-46.
- Paris, Marie-Claude. 1981. *Problèmes de syntaxe et de sémantique en linguistique chinoise*. Paris: Collège de France.
- Paris, Marie-Claude. 2007. Un aperçu de la reduplication nominale et verbale en Mandarin. *Faits de langues*, 29: 63-76.
- Paul, Waltraud. 2010. Adjectives in Mandarin Chinese: The rehabilitation of a much ostracized category. In: Patricia Cabredo-Hofherr & Ora Matushansky (eds.). *Adjectives. Formal analyses in syntax and semantics*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, pp. 115–152.
- Pearce, Elizabeth. 2007. Number within the DP: the view from Oceanic. Manuscript. Wellington: Victoria University of Wellington.
- Pelletier, Francis Jeffry. 1975. Non-singular reference: some preliminaries. *Philosophia* 5(4): 451–465. Reprinted in F. J. Pelletier (ed.), *Mass terms: some philosophical problems*. Dordrecht: Reidel, 1979, pp. 1–14.
- Pelletier, Francis Jeffry. 1979. Non-singular reference. In F. J. Pelletier (ed.) *Mass Terms: Some Philosophical Problems*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1-14.

- Pelletier, Jeffry. 2012. Lexical Nouns are Both +mass and +count, but they are Neither +mass nor +count. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 9-26.
- Peyraube, Alain. 1998. On history of classifiers in Archaic and Medieval Chinese. In Benjamin K. T'sou (ed.) *Studia Linguistica Serica*, Kowloon Tong: City University of Hong Kong, 39-68.
- Pi, Tony. 1995. The structure of English iteratives. *Canadian Linguistics Association Proceedings*.
- Piriyawiboon, Nattaya. 2010. Classifiers and determiner-less languages: the case of Thai. PhD thesis, University of Toronto.
- Platzack, Christer. 2010. Head Movement as a Phonological Operation, LingBuzz/001111.
- Polio, Charlene. 1994. Non-native speakers' use of nominal classifiers in Mandarin Chinese. *Journal of the Chinese Language Teachers Association* 29:51-66.
- Pollock, Jean-Yves. 1989. Verb movement, Universal Grammar and the structure of IP, *Linguistic Inquiry* 20: 365-424.
- Portner, Paul. 2005. *What is Meaning? Fundamentals of Formal Semantics*. MA: Blackwell Publishing.
- Postal, Paul. 2002. The structure of one type of American English vulgar minimizer. In *Skeptical linguistic essays*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Quine, Willard Van Orman. 1960. *Word and Object*, Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Quine, Willard Van Orman. 1969. *Ontological relativity and other essays*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Ratliff, Martha. 1991. Cov, the underspecified noun, and syntactic flexibility in Hmong. *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, Vol. 111, No. 4: 694-703.
- Rijkhoff, Jan. 2002. *The Noun Phrase*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Rijkhoff, Jan. 2012. A functional-typological account of NP-clause parallels. The 45th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, University of Stockholm, Aug. 29 - Sept. 1, 2012.
- Ritter, Elizabeth. 1991. Two functional categories in Noun Phrases: evidence from Modern Hebrew. *Perspectives on Phrase Structure*. (ed.) Susan Rothstein (*Syntax and Semantics* 25). New York: Academic Press. 37-62.
- Ritter, Elizabeth. 1995. On the syntactic category of pronouns and agreement. *Natural Language & Linguistic Theory* 13 (3): 405-443.
- Roberts, Ian. 2010. *Agreement and Head Movement: Clitics, Incorporation, and Defective Goals*, Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Rothstein, Susan. 2009. Individuating and measure readings of classifier constructions: Evidence from Modern Hebrew. *Brill's Annual of Afroasiatic Languages and Linguistics* 1:106-145.
- Rothstein, Susan. 2010a. Counting and the Mass-Count Distinction. *Journal of Semantics* 27 (3): 343-397.
- Rothstein, Susan. 2010b. The semantics of count nouns. In Maria Aloni and Katrin Schulz (eds.) *Logic Language and Meaning: LNAI 6042*, pp. 395-404. Heidelberg: Springer.
- Rouveret, Alain. 1991. Functional categories and agreement, *Linguistic Review* 8: 353-87.
- Rullmann, Hotze and Aili You. 2006. General number and the semantics and pragmatics of indefinite bare nouns in Mandarin Chinese, in K. von Stechow and K. Turner (eds.), *Where semantics meets pragmatics*, 175-196. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Sag, Ivan. 1980. *Deletion and logical form*. New York: Garland Publishing, Inc.
- Saito, Mamoru, T.-H. Jonah Lin, Keiko Murasugi. 2008. N'-ellipsis and the structure of noun phrases in Chinese and Japanese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 17: 247-271.
- Saka, Paul. 1991. Lexical decomposition in cognitive semantics. PhD dissertation, The

- University of Arizona.
- Salvesen, Christine Meklenborg. 2011. Challenging clitics. *Linguist List*, Vol-22-2892.
- Sanches, Mary. 1973. Numeral classifiers and plural marking: an implicational universal. *Working Papers on Language Universals* 11: 1–22.
- Sandhofer, C., Smith, L., & Luo, J. 2000. Counting nouns and verbs in the input: Differential frequencies, different kinds of learning? *Journal of Child Language*, 27, 561–585.
- Sandler, Wendy & Diane Lillo-Martin. 2006. *Sign language and linguistic universals*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Sapir, Edward: 1944, Grading: A study in semantics. In *Philosophy of Science* 11: 93-116.
- Sato, Yosuke. 2009. Radical Underspecification, General Number, and Nominal Denotation in Indonesian, *LingBuzz*/000831.
- Sato, Yosuke. 2010. Complementizer deletion in Kansai Japanese revisited: a prosodic account. *Snippets* 22: 9-10.
- Saussure, Ferdinand de. 1916. *Cours de linguistique générale*, C. Bally and A. Sechehaye (eds.). Paris: Payot. [*Course in general linguistics*, trans. R. Harris. London, 1983].
- Schaden, Gerhard. 2010. Problematic feature mapping in number. Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Schütze, Carson. 2001. Semantically empty lexical heads as last resorts. In Norbert Corver & Henk van Riemsdijk (eds.) *Semi-lexical Categories: the Function of Content Words and the Content of Function Words*, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, 127-187.
- Schwarzschild, Roger. 2006. The role of dimensions in the syntax of noun phrases. *Syntax* 9: 67-110.
- Senft, Gunter. 2000. *Systems of nominal classification*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Sharvy, Richard 1978. Maybe English has no count nouns: notes on Chinese semantics. *Studies in Language* 2 (3), 345-365.
- Shi, Rujie & Danqing Liu. 1985. Suzhou fangyan liangci de dingzhi yongfa jiqi biandiao [the definite use of classifiers in Suzhou dialect and their tone sandhis], *Yuyan Yanjiu* 8: 160-166.
- Shu, Chih-hsiang. 2012. Towards a morphosyntactic analysis of Mandarin mood/aspect marker *ge*. *Language and Linguistics* 13 (4): 663-692.
- Simpson, Andrew, Hooi Ling Soh, and Hiroki Nomoto. 2011. Bare classifiers and definiteness. *Studies in Language* 35 (1): 168-193.
- Song, Yuzhu. 1978. Guanyu shuci 'yi' he liangci xiang-jiehe de chongdie wenti [on the issue of the combination of the numeral *yi* 'one' and reduplicate classifiers]. *Nankai Daxue Xuebao* 1978, Vol. 6.
- Song, Yuzhu. 1980. Guanyu liangci chongdie de yufa yi yi [on the grammatical meaning of classifier reduplication]. *Zhejiang Shiyuan Xuebao* 1980, Vol. 1.
- Spelke, E. S. 1985. Perception of unity, persistence and identity: Thoughts on infants' conception of objects, in J. Mehler & R. Fox, *Neonate cognition: Beyond the blooming and buzzing confusion*, Hillsdale, N.J, Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Sproat, Richard and Chinlin Shih. 1988. Prenominal adjective ordering in English and Mandarin. *Proceedings of NELS* 18: 465-489.
- Sproat, Richard and Chinlin Shih. 1991. The cross-linguistic distribution of adjective ordering restrictions. In *Interdisciplinary approaches to languages: essays in honor of S.-Y. Kuroda*, C. Georgopoulos and R. Ishihara (eds.), 565-592. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Stavrou, Melita & Arhonto Terzi. 2008. Types of Numerical Nouns. In *Proceedings of the 26th West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics*, ed. Charles B. Chang and Hannah J. Haynie, 429-437. Somerville, MA: Cascadia Proceedings Project.

- Steindl, Ulrike. 2010. Grammatical issues in the Chinese classifier system: the case of classifier reduplication. MA thesis, Universität Weien.
- Stowell, Tim. 1981. *Origins of Phrase Structure*. Doctoral Dissertation: MIT.
- Stowell, Tim. 1983. Subjects across categories. *The Linguistic Review* 2: 285-312.
- Stvan, Laurel Smith. 2009. Semantic incorporation as an account for some bare singular count uses in English. *Lingua* 119: 314-333.
- Svenonius, P. 2008. The position of adjectives and other phrasal modifiers in the decomposition of DP. *Adjectives and adverbs: syntax, semantics, and discourse*, ed. L. McNally and C. Kennedy, 16 – 42. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Swart, Henriette de, Bert Le Bruyn and Joost Zwarts. 2010. Bare PP - Monolingual, multilingual and comparative explorations in countability, Handout distributed at the Conference on Empirical, Theoretical and Computational Approaches to Countability in Natural Language, Bochum, Sept. 22-24, 2010.
- Szabolcsi, Anna. 2011. Compositionality in quantifier words. Paper presented at the International Workshop on Syntax-Semantics Interface, Academia Sinica, Taipei, June 17-18, 2011.
- Tai, James & Lianqing Wang. 1990. A semantic study of the classifier *tiao*. *Journal of the Chinese Language Teachers Association* 25:35–56.
- Tang, Chih-chen Jane. 1990a. A note on the DP analysis of Chinese noun phrases. *Linguistics* 28: 337-354.
- Tang, Chih-chen Jane. 1990b. *Chinese phrase structure and extended X'-theory*. PhD thesis, Cornell University.
- Tang, Chih-chen Jane. 2004. Two types of classifier languages: a typological study of classification markers in Paiwan Noun Phrases, *Language and Linguistics* 5: 377-407.
- Tang, Chih-chen Jane. 2005. Nouns or classifiers: a non-movement analysis of classifiers in Chinese. *Language and Linguistics* 6: 431-472.
- Tang, Chih-chen Jane. 2007. Modifier licensing and Chinese DP: a feature analysis. *Language and Linguistics* 8: 967-1024.
- Tang, Sze-Wing. 2010. *Formal Chinese Syntax*. Shanghai: Shanghai Educational Publishing House.
- Thompson, Laurence C. 1965. *A Vietnamese Grammar*, Washington: University of Washington Press.
- Travis, Lisa. 1999. A syntactician's view of reduplication. In AFLA VI, Carolyn Smallwood and Catherine Kitto (eds.). University of Toronto: *Toronto Working Papers in Linguistics* 16 (2): 313-331.
- Travis, Lisa. 2001. The syntax of reduplication. *NELS* 31, 455-469.
- Travis, Lisa & Greg Lamontagne. 1992. The case filter and licensing of empty K. *Canadian Journal of Linguistics* 37(2): 157-174.
- Tsai, Wei-Tien Dylan. 2003. Three types of existential quantification in Chinese. In Y.-H. Audrey Li & Andrew Simpson (eds.) *Functional structure(s), form and interpretation*. London: RoutledgeCurzon, pp. 161-179.
- Tsai, Wei-Tien Dylan. 2010. On the syntax-semantics correlations of Chinese modals. *Zhongguo Yuwen* 2010, Vol. 3: 208-221.
- Tsai, Wei-Tien Dylan. 2011. On modifier projections within Chinese DPs. Paper presented at the Mini-Workshop on Syntax, National Tsing Hua University, Hsinchu, June 20, 2011.
- Tsao, Feng-Fu. 1977. *A Functional Study of Topic in Chinese: the First Step Towards Discourse Analysis*. Taipei: Student Book Co., Ltd.
- Tzeng, Ovid, Sylvia Chen, and Daisy L. Hung. 1991. The classifier problem in Chinese aphasia. *Brain and Language* 41:184-202.
- Tsoulas, George. 2006. Plurality of mass nouns and the grammar of number. Paper presented

- at the 29<sup>th</sup> glow meeting, Barcelona.
- T'sou, Benjamin K. 1976. The structure of nominal classifier systems. In *Austroasiatic studies II*, edited by Philip N. Jenner, Laurence C. Thompson, and Stanley Starosta, Oceanic Linguistics Special Publication No. 13, pp. 1215–1247. The University Press of Hawaii, Honolulu.
- Ueda, Yasuki. 2009. Number in Japanese and Chinese. *Nanzan Linguistics* 5, 105-130.
- Van Riemsdijk, Henk. 2005. Silent nouns and the spurious indefinite article in Dutch. In: Mila Vulchanova et al. (eds.) *Grammar and beyond*. Essays in honour of Lars Hellan, Oslo: Novus Press.
- Vangsnes, Øystein Alexander. 2008. What kind of Scandinavian? On interrogative noun phrases across North-Germanic. *Nordic Journal of Linguistics* 31: 227-251.
- Velupillai, Viveka. 2012. *An introduction to linguistic typology*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Vendler, Zeno. 1968. *Adjectives and nominalizations*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Vos, Henerika Margaretha. 1999. A grammar of partitive constructions. Ph.D. dissertation, Tilburg University, the Netherlands.
- Wang, Deguang. 1986. Weining Miaoyu huayu cailiao [Language material in the Weining dialect of the Miao language]. *Minzu Yuwen* 1986.3: 69-80.
- Wang, Lianqing. 1994. Origin and development of classifiers in Chinese. Ph.D. Dissertation, the Ohio State University.
- Wang, Shaoxin. 1989. Liangci ge zai Tangdai qianhou de fazhan [the development of the classifier ge around the Tang Dynasty]. *Yuyan Jiaoxue yu Yanjiu*. Vol. 2: 98-119.
- Wang, Zhirong. 1995. Adjective-Noun Construction in Modern Chinese. In T.-F. Cheng, Y. Li, and H. Zhang (eds.), *Proceedings of the 7th North American Conference on Chinese Linguistics/5<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Chinese Linguistics*. Vol.1. 303-316. Department of Linguistics, University of Southern California: GSIL Publications.
- Watanabe, Akira. 2006. Functional properties of nominals in Japanese: Syntax of classifiers. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 24: 241-306.
- Watanabe, Akira. 2010. Notes on nominal ellipsis and the nature of no and classifiers in Japanese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 19: 61-74.
- Watanabe, Akira. 2012. Measure words as nouns: a perspective from silent years. *Studia Linguistica* 66 (2): 181-205.
- Watters, John Roberts. 1981. A phonology and morphology of Ejagham—with notes on dialect variation. Ph.D thesis, University of California, Los Angeles.
- Wei, Ting-Chi. 2011. Island repair effects of the Left Branch Condition in Mandarin Chinese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 20: 255-289.
- Whorf, Benjamin Lee. 1941. The relation of habitual thought and behavior to language. In Leslie Spier (ed.) *Language, culture, and personality, essays in memory of Edward Sapir*, Menasha, Wis.: Sapir Memorial Publication Fund. Reprinted in John B. Carroll (ed.). 1956. *Language, Thought, and Reality: Selected Writings of Benjamin Lee Whorf*, Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, pp. 134-159.
- Wiebusch, Thekla. 1995. Quantification and qualification: two competing functions of numeral classifiers in the light of the radical system of the Chinese script. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 23(2): 1-41.
- Wierzbicka, Anna. 1985. “Oats” and “wheat”: the fallacy of arbitrariness. In John Haiman (ed.) *Iconicity in Syntax*, Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins, pp. 311-342.
- Wiese, Heike. 2003. *Numbers, Language, and the Human Mind*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Wiese, Heike. 2012. Collectives in the intersection of mass and count nouns: a cross-linguistic account. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam

- (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 54-74.
- Wiese, Heike & Joan Maling. 2005. Beers, kaffi, and Schnaps – Different grammatical options for ‘restaurant talk’ coercions in three Germanic languages. *Journal of Germanic Linguistics* 17 (1): 1-38.
- Wilder, Chris. 1997. Some properties of ellipsis in coordination. In Artemis Alexiadou and T. Alan Hall (eds.), *Studies on Universal Grammar and Typological Variation*, 59-107, Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Wilhelm, Andrea. 2008. Bare nouns and number in Dëne Suliné, *Natural Language Semantics* 16:39–68.
- Wiltschko, Martina. 2005. Why should diminutives count? In H. Broekhuis, N. Corver, R. Huybregts, U. Kleinherz, and J. Koster (eds.), *Organizing grammar: Studies in honor of Henk van Riemsdijk*, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, 669–678.
- Wiltschko, Martina. 2009. What’s in a determiner and how did it get there? In J. Ghomeshi, I. Paul, & M. Wiltschko (Eds.), *Determiners: Variation and universals*, 35–66. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Wiltschko, Martina. 2012. Decomposing the mass/count distinction: evidence from languages that lack it. In *Count and Mass Across Languages*, Diane Massam (ed.), Oxford: Oxford University Press. 146-171.
- Wu, Fuxiang. 2006. Wei-Jin-Nanbeichao shiqi hanyu mingliangci fanchou de yufahua chengdu [The degree of grammaticalization of nominal classifiers during the Wei-Jin-Nanbeichao periods]. In *Linguistic Studies in Chinese and Neighboring Languages: Festschrift in Honor of Professor Pang-Hsin Ting on His 70th Birthday*. Language and Linguistics Monograph Series, Vol. 6: 553–571.
- Wu, Mary. 2006. Can Numerals Really Block Definite Readings in Mandarin Chinese? In Raung-fu Chung, Hsien-Chin Liou, Jia-ling Hsu, and Dah-an Ho (eds.) *On and Off Work*, 127-142.
- Wu, Yicheng & Adams Bodomo. 2009. Classifiers ≠ Determiners. *Linguistic Inquiry* 40: 487-503.
- Wyngaerd, Guido Vanden. 2009. Semantic Shifts. lingBuzz/001392.
- Wyngaerd, Guido Vanden. 2012. The boundedness distinction in adjectives. The 45th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, University of Stockholm, Aug. 29 - Sept. 1, 2012.
- Xiang, Ming. 2005. Some topics in comparative constructions. PhD thesis, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI.
- Xing, Fuyi. 1997. *Hanyu Yufaxue* [Chinese Syntax], Dongbei Normal University Press.
- Xu, Fei. 2007. Sortal concepts, object individuation, and language. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences* 11: 400–406.
- Yang, Defeng. 1996. Liangci-qian shuci yi de yinxian wenti [The issue of the overtness of *yi* before a classifier], In *Selected papers of the fifth conference of the Association of Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language*, Beijing: Yuyan Xueyuan Press.
- Yang, Henrietta Shu-Fen. 2005. Plurality and Modification in Mandarin Nominal Phrases, PhD dissertation. University of Texas at Austin.
- Yang, Rong. 2001. Common nouns, classifiers, and quantification in Chinese. PhD. Dissertation, Newark: The State University of New Jersey.
- Yang, Xuemei. 2002. “ge-ge”, “mei-ge” he “yi-ge(yi)ge” de yufa yuyi fenxi [The Grammatical and Semantic Analysis of *ge-ge*, *mei ge* and *yi-ge(yi)ge*]. *Hanyu Xuexi*, 4: 26-31.
- Yi, Byeong-uk. 2010. Numeral Classifiers and the Mass/Count Distinction. Ms. University of Toronto, Oct. 6, 2010.
- Yi, Byeong-uk. 2012. Numeral classifiers and bare nominals. In Yung-O Biq and Lindsey Chen (eds.) *Proceedings of the 13th International Symposium on Chinese Language*

- and *Linguistics (IsCLL-13)*, Taipei: National Taiwan Normal University, 138-153.
- Yu, Guangzhong. 1999. *Jiewang yu shifeng* [connecting and the style of poems]. Taipei: Chiuko Press.
- Zagona, Karen. 1988. *Verb phrase syntax: a parametric study of English and Spanish*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Zhang, Chengcai. 2007. Shangzhou fangyan kouyu-zhong de shuliang lianyin bianhua [Sandhis between a numeral and a classifier in Shangzhou dialect], *Zhongguo Yuwen* 317: 159.
- Zhang, Hong. 2007. Numeral classifiers in Mandarin Chinese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 16: 43-59.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 1999. Chinese *de* and the *de*-construction. *Syntax* 2, 27-49.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2002. Counting and Classifying Eventualities in Chinese. Ms. ZAS-Berlin. Downloadable at <http://www.usc.edu/schools/college/ealc/chinling/NiinaZhang.htm>.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2006. Representing Specificity by the Internal Order of Indefinites. *Linguistics* 44 (1): 1-21.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2008. Existential Coda Constructions as Internally Headed Relative Clause Constructions. *The Linguistics Journal* 3 (3): 8-54
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2009a. The Syntax of Relational-Nominal Second Constructions in Chinese. *Yuyanxue Luncong* 39: 257-301, Beijing: Peking University Press.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2009b. *Coordination in Syntax*. Cambridge Studies in Linguistics Series 123, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2012a. Projecting semantic features. *Studia Linguistica* 66 (1): 58-74.
- Zhang, Niina Ning. 2012b. *De* and the functional expansion of classifiers. *Language and Linguistics* 13 (3): 569-582.
- Zhang, Qingwen. 2009. The grammatical status of *ge* in the V+*ge*+XP construction. *Xiandai Waiyu* [Modern Foreign Languages] 32 (1): 13-22.
- Zhang, Wanqi. 1991. Shi Lun Xiandai Hanyu Fuhe-Liangci [On Compound Classifiers of Modern Chinese], *Zhongguo Yuwen*, 1991(4), 262-268.
- Zhang, Xiaofei. 2008. Chinese *-men* and associative plurals. *Toronto Working Papers in Linguistics* 28: 407-425. University of Toronto.
- Zhu, Dexi. 1982. *Yufa Jiangyi* [Lectures on grammar], Beijing, Shangwu Press.
- Zweig, Eytan. 2006. Nouns and adjectives in numeral NPs. In Leah Bateman & Cherlon Ussery (eds.) *Proceedings of NELS* 35, 663–675. Amherst, Mass.: GLSA Publications.